



ENGLISH
ENGLISH
ENGLISH

NEW HELLO! 2023

ENGLISH

1st Secondary

first term first term first term 1

Treasure Island

Contents

Unit 1



Getting away

Objectives

- **Reading** : An article about ecotourism; two blogs about the summer holidays
- **Writing** : An essay on ecotourism
- **Listening** : A story about travelling and what happened when something went wrong
- **Speaking** : Describe an event
- **Language** : Past simple and past continuous
- **Life Skills** : Collaboration





Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

conservationist (n)	الشخص المحافظ على البيئة
ecotourism (n)	السياحة البيئية
endangered (adj)	مهدد بالانقراض
environment (n)	البيئة
impact (n)	تأثير
isolated (adj)	معزول
lean (v) – ed	يميل/يتكأ
materials (n)	مواد (خام)
spicy (adj)	حريف/حار المذاق
sustainable (adj)	مستدام
swell up (v) – ed	يتورم
trek (v) – ked (n)	يترجل/رحلة سيرًا على الأقدام
unique (adj)	مميز/فريد من نوعه

Write the word for several times to memorise it.

Vocabulary on Reading

along (adv)	بمحاذاة
avoid (v) – ed	يتجنب
beach (n)	شاطئ (بلاج)
coast (n)	ساحل
coral reefs (n)	شعاب مرجانية
damage (v) – d (n)	يتلف/تلف/ضرر
design (v) – ed (n)	يصمم/تصميم
destination (n)	جهة الوصول/وجهة السفر
develop (v) – ed	ينمي/يطور
dive (v) – d	يغطس
dragon (n)	تنين (حيوان أسطورى)
ecosystem (n)	نظام بيئى
educate (v) – d	يعلم/يدرس
exist (v) – ed	يوجد/يتواجد
fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ
giant (adj) (n)	عملاق
hill (n)	تل/هضبة
including (prep)	مشتملًا على
island (n)	جزيرة
lemur (n)	الليمور (حيوان يشبه القرود)

Word	Meaning
limited (adj)	مُقيَّد/محدود
local (adj)	محلى
natural (adj)	طبيعى
path (n)	مسار/ممر/طريق
pink (adj)	وردى اللون
protect (v) – ed	يحمى
provide (v) – d	يمد/يزود
rebuild (v)	يعيد بناء
remote (adj)	بعيد
safe (adj)	آمن
souvenir (n)	هدية تذكارية
summarise (v) – d	يلخص
teach (v)	يُدرس
tourism (n)	سياحة
turtle (n)	سلحفاة بحرية
volunteer (n) (v) – ed	متطوع/يتطوع
wall (n)	سور/حائط
wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية

Vocabulary on Listening

Word	Meaning
alone (adj) (adv)	وحيد/وحيدًا
annoyed (adj)	مضجر/منزعج
biologist (n)	عالم أحياء
biology (n)	علم الأحياء
bite (v)	يلدغ
book (v) – ed	يحجز
centre (n)	مركز
cook (n)	طباخ
disaster (n)	كارثة
drop (v) – ped	يُسقط
feed (v)	يطعم
fussy eater (n)	شخص صعب الإرضاء فى الأكل
guide (n)	مرشد (سياحى)
insects (n)	حشرات
luggage (n)	أمتعة السفر
internal flight (n)	رحلة طيران داخلية
mainly (adv)	بشكل رئيسى/أساسى
observe (v) – d	يراقب/يرصد
orangutan (n)	إنسان الغاب
pet (n)	حيوان أليف
properly (adv)	بشكل مناسب
rainforests (n)	الغابات المطيرة
sound (v) – ed	يبدو
spider (n)	عنكبوت

Workbook Vocabulary

activity (n)	نشاط
attractions (n)	عوامل/مناطق جذب (سياحى)
carnival (n)	مهرجان/كرنفال
council (n)	مجلس
cruise ships (n)	سفن رحلات سياحية
effect (n)	تأثير
encourage (v) – d	يشجع
plaza (n)	ميدان/ساحة
population (n)	سكان
repeat (v) – ed	يكرر/يعيد
residents (n)	سكان/مقيمون
special (adj)	خاص/مخصوص
sunbathe (v) – d	يأخذ حمام شمس
type (n)	نوع/نمط
victim (n)	ضحية

★ When I go to the desert, I like to trek into the mountains.

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

environmentally friendly	محافظ على البيئة/صديق للبيئة
from all around the world	من كل أنحاء العالم
do something different	يقوم بعمل شيء مختلف
go diving	يغطس
at least	على الأقل
catch a flight to	يركب طائرة إلى
find out about	يعرف/يكتشف عن
get ... back	يستعيد/يعود
go back to	يعود إلى
get to	يصل إلى
introduce ... to	يقدم ... لـ
make notes	يدون ملاحظات
make dinner	يجهز العشاء
make sure	يتأكد
keep ... safe	يبقى ... آمنا
for example	على سبيل المثال
trek into★	يترجل إلى/يشق طريقه بصعوبة
go on holiday	يذهب فى إجازة
leaning out of	يميل إلى الخارج من
disappear from	يختفى من
educate ... about	يعلم ... عن
famous for	مشهور بـ

manage to	يتمكن من	give ... to	يعطى ... إلى
advantages of	مزايا لـ	important for/to	مهم لـ
blow ... off	يُطير (شيئًا)	number of	عدد من
keep ... as	يحتفظ بـ ... كـ	popular with	معروف/مشهور بـ
impact on	تأثير على	stay in	يبقى فى

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
conserve يحفظ	conservationism الحفاظ على البيئة conservationist الشخص المحافظ على البيئة	conservative محافظ/مقاوم للتغيير
design يصمم	design تصميم designer مُصَمِّم	designed مُصَمَّم
develop يطور/ينمى	development تطوير/تنمية	developed/developing متطور/نامٍ
educate يعلم	education تعليم educator معلم	educational تعليمى educated متعلم
endanger يعرض للخطر	endangerment التعريض للخطر	endangered معرض للانقراض
------------------------	environment بيئة environmentalist مناصر لحماية البيئة	environmental بيئى
isolate يعزل	isolation عزل	isolated معزول
limit يحد	limit حد	limited محدود
protect* يحمى	protection حماية/وقاية	protective واقٍ
spice يتبل	spice توابل/بهارات	spicy حريف/حار المذاق
sustain يحافظ على	sustainability استدامة	sustainable مستدام
swell يتورم	swelling تورم	swollen متورم
volunteer يتطوع	voluntourist/volunteer متطوع voluntarism العمل التطوعى	voluntary تطوعى

* - We should protect our country to stay strong.
  - The country needs our protection to stay strong.
  - We should think of all the protective methods for our country.

Can you put the words "avoid" and "avert" in sentences?

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
avoid*	يتجنب	avert/stay away from	face/seek يواجه
develop	يطور	promote/progress/ flourish/prosper	decline/decrease يتدهور/يقل
exist	يوجد/يتواجد	remain/stay	vanish/depart يختفى/يرحل
famous	مشهور	well-known/celebrated	unknown/ordinary غير معروف/عادى
fortunately	لحسن الحظ	luckily/happily	unfortunately/unluckily لسوء الحظ
giant	عملاق	colossal/gigantic	tiny/minute ضئيل الحجم
limited	محدود	restricted/definite	unrestricted/unlimited مطلق/بلا قيود
natural	طبيعى	normal/ordinary	abnormal/unnatural غير عادى
remote	بعيد	distant/faraway	near/close قريب
sustainable	مستدام	continual/lasting/ permanent	temporary/unsustainable مؤقت
unique	مميز/فريد من نوعه	exceptional/special	normal/ordinary عادى

I think number one is (c).

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We should all work together to .... our environment.
   a) predict b) endanger c) protect d) destroy
2. It is obvious that smoking has a very bad .... on our health.
   a) contact b) cause c) product d) impact
3. I like to go to Sharm El-Sheikh to see the .... of the Red Sea.
   a) coral reefs b) colour reefs c) coral beefs d) moral reefs
4. When I was in Khan El-Khalili, I was very .... as I lost my money and didn't buy any souvenirs.
   a) delighted b) excited c) annoyed d) annoying
5. We should encourage our children to know everything about our .... areas in the desert and Upper Egypt.
   a) clear b) isolated c) limited d) sustainable



Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading out loud can improve your reading skill.

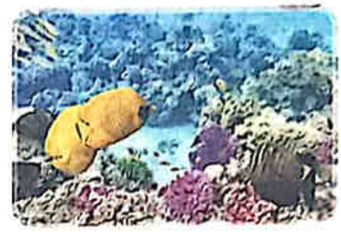
Reading Text

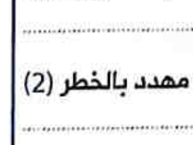
Before you start reading, why is tourism very important for a country?

Ecotourism(1) – is this the future?

What is ecotourism?

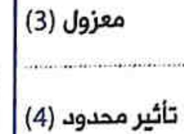
Ecotourism is about providing holidays to places which are often endangered(2) and isolated(3). The holidays are designed to have a limited impact(4) on the local environment and to educate tourists about conservation.

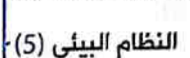


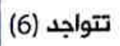


Egypt is developing ecotourism to protect the environments along the Red Sea coast. Tourists can stay in hotels built of environmentally friendly natural materials. When tourists go diving, they are taught how to avoid damaging the fish and keeping the special coral reefs safe.

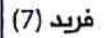


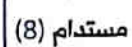




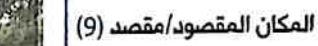


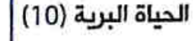
Madagascar is famous for its ecotourism and wants to protect its ecosystem(5) (the animals and plants in its environment). 80% of the animals, and 90% of the plants that live there don't exist(6) anywhere else in the world. Lemurs, for example, only live in Madagascar.











The Galapagos Islands in Ecuador are famous for the unique(7) animals, such as the giant turtles which live there. Ecuador makes sure that tourism is sustainable(8). Only a limited number of people can visit the islands each year, so the animals and their environment are safe.

The Komodo National Park in Indonesia is a popular ecotourism destination(9). Much of Indonesia's endangered wildlife(10), including the Komodo dragon, can only be found here. The National Park is also famous for its beach with pink sand.

How can you encourage ecotourism without harming the places people visit?

Don't forget to scan the QR to practise listening.

Listening Text

What do you know about orangutans?



Luca : Last summer, I decided not to go on holiday to Greece with my friends, but to do something different.

Klara : So, where did you go?

Luca : Well, as I am studying biology(1), I thought I'd go to Indonesia to find out more about the orangutans(2) there. So, I booked a holiday with an eco-tourism company and went to Borneo.

Klara : What was it like?

Luca : A bit of disaster although I did love the rainforests(3). When we got to Jakarta, we caught an internal flight to Borneo. But my luggage(4) never arrived, so I had to buy new clothes. The next morning, we took a boat up the river to the orangutan centre. And while I was leaning out of the boat to take photos, I dropped my camera!

Klara : Oh, no! Did you manage to get it back?

Luca : No way! The river is really deep, so I just had to leave it. But I was very annoyed(5). But at least, I had my phone. It took two days to get to the centre, so while we were sitting on the boat, the guide told us all about the orangutans and what the conservationists are doing there. It sounded really exciting. When we arrived, the guide introduced(6) us to the people working there. And then, we had dinner.

Klara : What was the food like?

Luca : It was mainly rice and vegetables, but they were very spicy. I don't like spicy food, so I only ate the rice. By the end of the week, I was eating the vegetables and fish, though. As I was so hungry.

Klara : Well, I am glad to hear you're not such a fussy eater anymore. What did you do every day?

Luca : We got up at about six every morning as that is when the sun rises, had breakfast and then trekked(7) into the forest to learn about orangutans from the people who were looking after them.

Klara: Did you feed them?

Luca : No, they're wild animals not pets. We just observe them, made notes and took photos. We also learnt about other animals, birds and insects in the rainforests. Unfortunately, at the end of the first week, a spider bit me while I was sleeping and my arm swelled up.

Klara: So, what happened?

Luca : I had to go to a hospital, but as the nearest hospital was 200 kilometres away, I had to go by a helicopter. I stayed there for a week all alone and then went back to the centre. But as soon as I got back, I was ill. One of the tourists was making the dinner that night and he wasn't a good cook, he didn't clean the fish properly(8) and everybody was sick. I am staying at home this summer.

علم الأحياء (1)

إنسان الغاب (2)

الغابات المطيرة (3)

أمتعة (4)

منزعج (5)

قدَّم (6)

ترجَّل (7)

بشكل مناسب (8)

What are the lessons learned from Luca's holiday?

Workbook Text

A popular problem!

Venice is famous for being a city with many canals[1], colourful carnivals[2], amazing plazas[3] and historic buildings. However, the city is a victim of its own beauty. Venice has a population of only 55,000 but the city is visited by twenty million tourists every year. This tourism creates[4] a lot of jobs for the local population, but also causes[5] many problems.

Many of the 59,000 tourists a day enjoy riding on boats along the canals, but the large cruise ships[6] can damage the historic buildings. The narrow[7] streets can be very crowded[8] and it is difficult for local people to move around the city.

The local council are trying to find a solution which keeps both the tourists and local residents[9] happy. They are also trying to encourage tourists to visit other beautiful sites around Venice.

(1) قنوات مائية
(2) كرنفالات
(3) ساحات عامة
(4) يخلق
(5) يسبب
(6) سفن سياحية
(7) ضيق
(8) مزدحم
(9) سكان

Let's check our memory!

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 What a .... contribution for Dr Zewail in the field of science and medicine!
a) familiar b) unique c) limited d) greed

2 We should book early as there are only a/an .... number of tickets available.
a) unlimited b) great c) limited d) huge

3 I'd like to study living things. I'd like to be a/an ....
a) biologist b) geologist c) archaeologist d) botanist

4 Father! Let me .... my friend Mohamed to you.
a) produce b) present c) conclude d) introduce

5 I couldn't get on the bus as it was very ....
a) narrow b) crowded c) empty d) sustainable



Check the answers at the end of the book.

Golden Question

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



– Successful people don't let failure limit their aspirations. The word "limit" here is a/an ....
a) noun b) verb c) adverb d) adjective

Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

conservation المحافظة على البيئة
- the protection of natural things such as animals, plants, forests, etc. to prevent them from being spoiled or destroyed

ecotourism السياحة البيئية
- the business of organising holidays to faraway natural areas, where people can visit and learn about the area in a way that will not hurt the environment

endangered مهدد بالانقراض/معرض للخطر
- an endangered animal, bird, etc. is one that may soon no longer exist because there are so few of them

environment بيئة
- the people and things that are around you in your life, for example the buildings you use, the people you live or work with, and the general situation you are in

impact تأثير
- the effect or influence that an event, situation, etc. has on someone or something

lean يميل/يتكأ
- to move or bend your body in a particular direction

materials مواد (خام)
- solid substances such as wood, plastic or metal

spicy حار
- the spicy food that is spicy and has a pleasantly strong taste, and gives you a pleasant burning feeling in your mouth

sustainable مستدام

- able to continue without causing damage to the environment

swell up يتورم

- to become larger and rounder than normal – usually related to parts of the body

trek يترجل/يشق طريقه بصعوبة

- to go on a difficult journey especially on foot

unique مميز/فريد من نوعه

- being the only one of its kind

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning

1

beach	البلاج (الجزء الرملى عند حافة البحر)	By nine o'clock, the beach was already crowded with people.
shore	شاطئ البحر أو البحيرة	The boat was about a mile from the shore when the engine suddenly stopped.
coast	ساحل	Marina is located on the North Coast of Egypt.
bank	ضفة النهر أو القناة	They walked home along the river bank.

2

souvenir	هدية تذكارية	I bought a model of the Eiffel Tower as a souvenir of Paris.
present	هدية (فى عيد ميلاد أو مناسبة)	I gave her a very special present for her birthday.
prize	جائزة	Scientists from Oxford shared the Nobel Prize for Medicine in 1945.
reward	مكافأة	Some parents give their children rewards for passing exams.

3

Word	Meaning	Example
include	يشمل/يتضمن (بعض المكونات) وليس كل المكونات - يأتي قبلها الكل وبعدها الجزء.	The room price includes breakfast.
contain	يحتوى على شيء بداخله	The thieves stole a purse containing banknotes.
consist of	يتكون من (كل المكونات الأساسية)	The buffet consisted of several different Indian dishes.

4

Word	Meaning	Example
teach	يعلم (شخص/شيء)	Mr. Reda teaches us English.
learn	يتعلم شيء	My son has learnt many languages abroad.
teach/learn (how) to + inf.		I have taught my children (how) to play the piano. My children learnt (how) to play the piano.

5

Word	Meaning	Example
endangered (adj.)	مهدد بالانقراض	Many rare animals are endangered nowadays.
in danger	فى خطر	Many animals are in danger nowadays.
endanger (v)	يعرض للخطر	Smoking endangers our health.

6

Word	Meaning	Example
sound (v) + adjective = appear/seem + adjective	يبدو	He sounds/appears/seems happy today.
sound (n)	صوت/ضجة/حس	I tried to open the door without sound as my father was asleep.
sound (adj.)	سليم/معقول	I was happy to see that my mother was in a sound state of health. He always gives me some sound advice.

7

Word	Meaning	Example
drop + object	- يسقط أو يرمى شيء	While I was walking, I dropped my mobile.
	- يخفض	The government should drop the prices.
	- ينزل من وسيلة مواصلات	Can you drop me off here, please?
	- يُسقط من قائمة/يحذف	It was not good to drop my name from the guest list.
fall	لا يأتى بعدها مفعول (يقع/يسقط)	While I was walking, I fell and broke my leg.

	Expression	Example
8	**In the end, ... = Finally, ...** فى النهاية	In the end, the problem was solved by our great teacher.
	At the end of + noun, ... فى نهاية شىء ...	At the end of the lesson, the teacher asked us some questions.
	By the end of + noun, ... قبل نهاية شىء ...	By the end of the year, we will have finished our study.
9	**everyday + noun** صفة بمعنى يومى (كلمة واحدة)	Everyone should work hard to provide his everyday needs.
	every day ظرف بمعنى كل يوم (كلمتين منفصلتين)	Students go to school every day except for Fridays.
10	**arrive in** يصل إلى مكان كبير (مدينة/دولة/قارة).	He arrived in Alexandria yesterday.
	arrive at يصل إلى مكان صغير/محدد	He arrived at Alexandria airport yesterday.
	reach + object يصل إلى (بدون حرف جر).	He reached the airport early yesterday.
	get to يصل إلى (مكان صغيرأو كبير).	They got to Cairo yesterday.
11	**alone (adj) (adv)** بمفرده/منفردًا (صفة/ظرف).	He carried the luggage alone.
	lonely (adj) وحيدًا (يشعر بالوحدة) (صفة).	Despite his friends, he feels lonely.
	lone وحيد	The lone survivor of the accident told us what happend.
12	**isolated** منعزل/معزول	The area is extremely isolated because of the hills that surround it.
	insulated معزول (حراريًا/عن الكهرباء)	Houses in very hot or cold areas should be well insulated.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- Tourists can stay in hotels built of environmentally friendly natural materials.

من الممكن حذف v. to be وضمير الوصل والإبقاء على التصريف الثالث من الفعل فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول. حيث إن أصل الجملة:

.... in hotels (which/that) are built of environmentally ....

- The plants that live there don't exist anywhere else in the world.

كلمة anywhere تأتى فى الجملة المنفية بدلًا من كلمة somewhere التى تأتى فى الجملة المثبتة.

- Much of Indonesia's endangered wildlife, ... can only be found here.

كلمة Much of تأتى قبل الكلمات غير المعدودة (اسماء الكمية) مثل wildlife.

- I decided not to go on holiday to Greece with my friends

الفعل decide يأتى بعده to + inf. فى حالة الإثبات أو not to + inf. فى حالة النفى.

- A bit of disaster

تستخدم كلمة a bit قبل الأسماء كجزء (partitive) بمعنى قليل أو بعض من.

- It took two days to get to the centre, ...

لاحظ استخدام take + time + to + inf. بمعنى يستغرق .... لكى ....

- It sounded really exciting.

كلمة sound تأتى كفعل بمعنى (يبدو) يتبعه صفة مثل الفعل look

- When we arrived, the guide introduced us to the people working there.

من الممكن حذف ضمير الوصل وإضافة ing .... للفعل فى حالة المبنى للمعلوم لأن أصل الجملة:

.... the people who work there.

▶ I am staying at home this summer.

يستخدم المضارع المستمر (am/is/are + v.+ ing) للتعبير عن أحداث تم الترتيب لها في المستقبل.

▶ They are taught how to avoid damaging the fish and keeping the special coral reefs safe.

الفعل avoid بمعنى يتجنب يتبع بـ v + ing.

- لاحظ هنا استخدام how to + inf. كيفية القيام بالفعل بعد كلمة teach

- لاحظ أيضا ان ما بعد and يكون نفس شكل ما قبلها

- لاحظ ايضا استخدام keep + object + adjective

▶ .... I did love the rainforests.

يمكن استخدام v. to do قبل الفعل الأصلي للجملة للتوكيد.

Let's check our new vocabulary!

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I like walking on the .... of the Nile with my friends when the sun sets.

a) shore b) beach c) coast d) bank

2 The list of the players doesn't .... my name. I am so disappointed.

a) contain b) include c) consist d) enclose

3 I took my son in my car and .... him in front of school and went to work.

a) fell b) threw c) bit d) dropped

4 The hole that we dug .... about 20 meters deep.

a) reached b) arrived c) got d) came

5 The police offered a/an .... for those who helped them to find the criminal.

a) prize b) award c) reward d) present

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 Good citizens are those who are ready to .... their country all their lives.
a) predict b) protect c) inspect d) prevent

2 There are many .... animals in the world, which we need to save.
إدارة الواسطى التعليمية ٢٠٢٢
a) endangered b) isolated c) insulated d) popular

3 I think this website will .... you with the information you want.
a) give b) agree c) provide d) endanger

4 Most scientists agree that much .... is affected by human activities.
a) work b) wildlife c) space life d) environment

5 Nowadays, most people only have a/an .... amount of free time as they work hard to live well.
a) unlimited b) limit c) lot of d) limited

6 It is very important for all of us to find .... solutions for the problems of our country.
a) sustainable b) terrible c) insulated d) leaning

7 My little brother is a .... eater. He doesn't like to eat many things.
a) voluntary b) protected c) fussy d) greedy

8 Because of COVID-19, many people were .... in hospitals and their homes.
a) insulated b) limited c) excited d) isolated

9 Each person's fingerprints are ....
كفر صقر بنات – الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
a) the same b) unique c) typical d) similar

10 One of the .... of the new job is having a respectable salary with many other benefits.
a) disadvantages b) demerits c) productions d) attractions

11 Luxor and Aswan have always been a .... for most tourists who visit Egypt.
a) destiny b) conservation c) location d) destination

12 Nahla was .... out of the window watching the crowd when she dropped her mobile.
a) leaning b) swelling c) getting d) making

13 Passengers traveling on the night .... should check in at the airport 2 hours earlier.
a) flight b) trek c) journey d) carnival

14 .... are protesting against the plan to destroy parts of the rainforests.
a) Conversations b) Conservationists c) Conservations d) Ecotourists

15 One of our generous friends .... to take us all in his car for free.
a) trekked b) swelled c) volunteered d) forced

16 .... is all the animals and plants that exist in a place. ادارة الحرم التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) Ecosystem b) Economics c) Biology d) Population

17 The president's speech made a great .... on all the attendants.

ادارة القناطر التعليمية - القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) act b) fact c) react d) impact

18 After her husband's death, she cried so much that her eyes .... with tears.

a) swelled b) swallowed c) extended d) refreshed

19 The explorers spent the day .... through forests and over mountains.

a) diving b) trekking c) developing d) racing

20 .... is a type of holiday that helps local people and doesn't damage the natural environment. ادارة نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٢

a) Ecosystem b) Ecotourism c) Conversation d) Education

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21 Finally, I managed to .... the airport to catch my plane to Aswan.

a) arrive in b) reach to c) get to d) get at

22 These statues are made of .... materials. We mustn't pollute our environment.

a) friendly environmentally b) environmentally friendly

c) unfriendly environmentally d) non-environmentally friendly

23 I was climbing to the top of a hill when the wind blew my hat ....

a) on b) of c) off d) out

24 The lesson .... me two hours to finish.

a) makes b) takes c) spends d) lasts

25 My mother is the best one to .... meals for us. She is my favourite cook.

a) have b) eat c) repair d) make

26 The .... checked the region well and decided that the wildlife there needed more attention.

a) conserve b) conservationism c) conservationist d) conservative

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

27 Many kids of animals are .... nowadays and we must protect them.

a) endangered b) dangerous c) danger d) in danger e) in dangerous

28 I had been taught .... pictures when I was young.

a) draw b) how to draw c) to drawing d) to drawing e) to draw

29 It was a unique achievement as no one has ever won the championship five times before. The synonyms of the word "unique" are .... and ....

a) close b) normal c) exceptional d) special e) restricted

30 The helicopter crashed in a remote desert area. The antonyms of the word "remote" are .... and ....

a) abnormal b) temporary c) unknown d) close e) near



Lessons 1 & 2



B Language

1 The Past Simple Tense

TIMELINE

Past | Present | Future

Form

Positive

Subject ▶ التصريف الثانى للفعل

- I/He/They attended the party yesterday.

Negative

Subject ▶ didn't ▶ inf.

- I/He/They didn't study their lessons well.

Question

Wh-word ▶ did ▶ subject ▶ inf.?

Did ▶ subject ▶ inf.?

- What did you buy yesterday?
- Did he buy a new car?

Passive

Object ▶ was/were ▶ P.P.

- The police arrested the criminal. (Active)
- The criminal was arrested. (Passive)

Usage الاستخدام

1. **For completed actions in the past:** أفعال اكتملت فى الماضى.
   - She studied all her lessons yesterday.
2. **For repeated actions or habits in the past:** أحداث متكررة أو عادات فى الماضى.
   - When he was in Alexandria, he went to the beach every day.
3. **For retelling situations or stories:** سرد مواقف أو قصص وقعت فى الماضى.
   - Yesterday, I went out to the café, then I ordered a cup of coffee.
4. **For actions which happened immediately one after the other:** للأحداث التى حدثت تباعًا واحدًا تلو الآخر (بدون فارق زمنى)
   - First, he paid the money, then he received his new mobile.



... ago	just now	last	yesterday
from (2000 to 2006)	How long ago	in the past	
once	the other day	in the ancient times	
in + (2000)		once upon a time	

- I ate ten minutes ago.

Important Notes



التعبير عن العادات فى الماضى

Subject + used to + inf. — اعتاد على فعل الشيء فى الماضى ولم يعد يفعله الآن.

- He used to smoke a lot, but now he doesn't.

Subject + no longer + present simple مضارع بسيط — لم يعد

- He no longer smokes a lot.

Subject + negative form + any longer/anymore — لم يعد

- He doesn't smoke a lot any longer/anymore.

It was + (someone's/ صفة ملكية) + habit to + inf. — لقد كانت عادة شخص ...

- It was his habit to smoke a lot.

Subject + (was/were) + in the habit of + (v-ing) — كانت لدى ... عادة ...

- He was in the habit of smoking a lot.

Subject + got into the habit of + (v-ing) — لقد انخرط فى عادة الـ ...

- He got into the habit of smoking a lot.

Subject + (was/were/got) + used to + (v-ing) — كان معتادًا على ...

- He was/got used to smoking a lot.

It was + habitual معتاد + for + (someone/ضمير مفعول) + to + inf. — كان من المعتاد لـ ... أن ...

- It was habitual for him to smoke a lot.

Subject + didn't use to + inf. لم يكن معتادًا على فعل شيء ولكنه يفعله الآن.

- He didn't use to get up early.

Subject + never used to + inf.

- He never used to sleep early.

Subject + (am/is/are) (get) (become) used to + (v-ing) OR (Noun) OR (Pronoun) معتاد على عمل شيء. (للتعبير عن عادة فى الحاضر)

- She (is/gets/becomes) used to cleaning her house alone.
- I am used to the noise in my street.
- It is very cold here, but I am used to it.

Got it

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- It was my father's habit .... the windows before sleeping.

a) to shutting b) shut c) to shut d) shutting

الإجابة هى (c) لأن بعد هذه العبارة يأتى .to + inf



- تأتى used بمعنى «يستخدم لـ» (فى المبنى للمجهول).

Object + (be) used to + inf. / used for + (v-ing)

- This camera is used to take photographs.
- This camera is used for taking photographs.

- صيغة السؤال فى used to

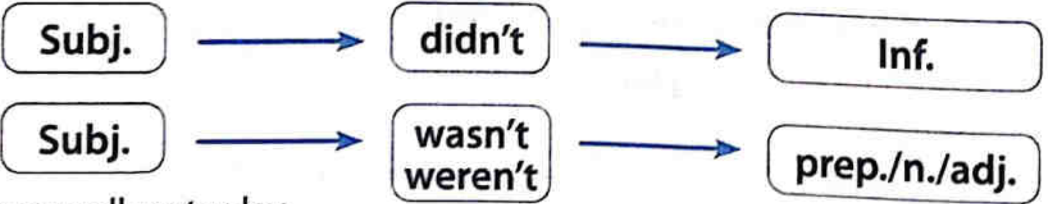
Did + Subj. + use to + inf.?

- Did you use to sleep early?

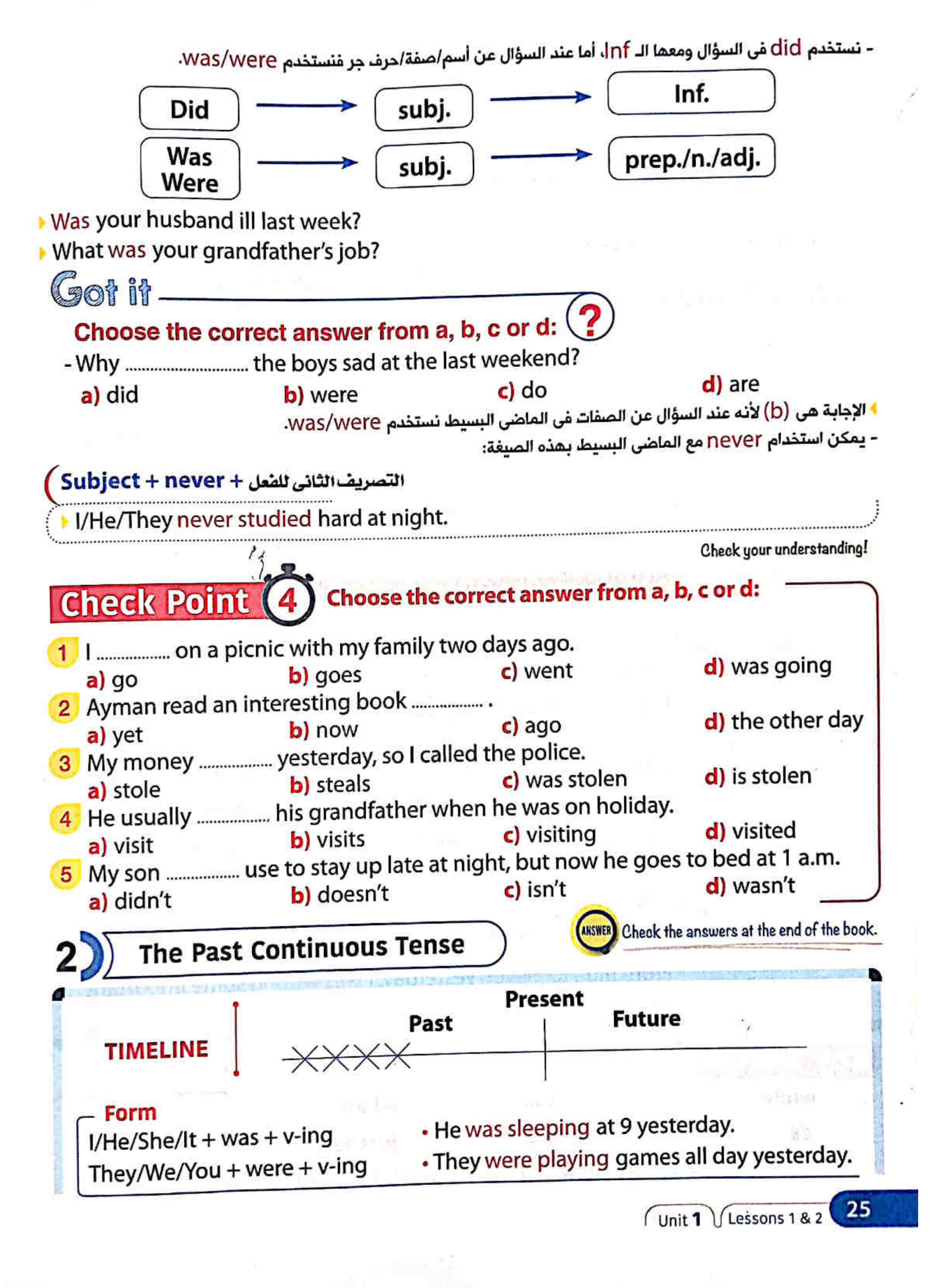
Question word + did + subj. + use to + inf.?

- Where did you use to live?

- تستخدم didn't لنفى الفعل ويأتى بعدها الـ .Inf، أما مع الاسم/صفة/حرف جر فنستخدم wasn't/weren't



- I didn't sleep well yesterday.
- We weren't tired, so we played again.



- نستخدم did في السؤال ومعها الـ Inf. أما عند السؤال عن أسم/صفة/حرف جر فنستخدم was/were.

Did	→	subj.	→	Inf.
Was Were	→	subj.	→	prep./n./adj.

- Was your husband ill last week?
- What was your grandfather's job?

Got it

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Why .... the boys sad at the last weekend?

a) did b) were c) do d) are

الإجابة هي (b) لأنه عند السؤال عن الصفات في الماضي البسيط نستخدم was/were.

- يمكن استخدام never مع الماضي البسيط بهذه الصيغة:

Subject + never + التصريف الثاني للفعل

- I/He/They never studied hard at night.

Check your understanding!

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... on a picnic with my family two days ago.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) was going
2. Ayman read an interesting book ....
   a) yet b) now c) ago d) the other day
3. My money .... yesterday, so I called the police.
   a) stole b) steals c) was stolen d) is stolen
4. He usually .... his grandfather when he was on holiday.
   a) visit b) visits c) visiting d) visited
5. My son .... use to stay up late at night, but now he goes to bed at 1 a.m.
   a) didn't b) doesn't c) isn't d) wasn't

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

2 The Past Continuous Tense

TIMELINE

Past | Present | Future

Form

I/He/She/It + was + v-ing
They/We/You + were + v-ing

- He was sleeping at 9 yesterday.
- They were playing games all day yesterday.

Negative

I/He/She/It + wasn't + v-ing

• I wasn't working when you phoned me.

They/We/You + weren't + v-ing

• My parents weren't watching TV when the light went out.

Interrogative

Was/Were + subject + v-ing?

• Was Samy having a shower when they came?

• Were you playing when it rained?

Wh-word + was/were + subject + v-ing?

• Where were you playing yesterday morning?

Passive

Object + was/were + being + P.P.

• He was watching a football match. (Active)

= A football match was being watched. (Passive)

Usage الاستخدام

1. **To show that an action was in progress at a certain time.** حدث كان مستمرًا فى وقت محدد.
   - At 6 o'clock yesterday, I was looking at the orangutans.
2. **To show that a shorter action happened during another longer action. (with the past simple)** حدث كان مستمرًا وقطعه حدث آخر.
   - I was leaning out of the boat when I dropped my camera.
3. **To describe two actions that were in progress at the same time.** للتعبير عن حدثين مستمرين فى نفس الوقت دون قاطع.
   - Just as I was sleeping, my father was doing his work.
4. **To describe the event in progress, at sometime between its beginning and its end.** حدث كان مستمرًا فى وقت ما بين بدايته ونهايته.
   - From nine to eleven yesterday, I was writing some important essays.

Key words

while	بينما	**when**	عندما
as	بينما	**just as**	(فى اللحظة التى)
all (day, night, ...)		طوال ...... (مدة زمنية فى الماضى)	

Now, do you know when we use the past continuous tense? And how do we link it with the past simple tense?

لاحظ استخدامات الروابط التالية:

- حدثان قطع أحدهما الآخر. (الأحدث قطع الحدث الأقدم الذى بدء أولاً).

While/As/Just as/When → Past continuous → Past simple

- While he was playing the game, it rained.

Past simple → while/as/just as/when → Past continuous

- The phone rang while he was studying his lessons.

- حدثان فى نفس الوقت بدون قاطع.

While/As/Just as/When → Past continuous → Past continuous

- While I was studying my lessons, my sister was watching TV.

Past continuous → while/as/just as/when → Past continuous

- He was eating his food while his mother was ironing his clothes.

Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father .... at 5 o'clock yesterday.
   a) sleeps b) sleeping c) was sleeping d) had slept
2. While Nabil was running, he .... to the ground.
   a) falls b) fell c) was falling d) fall
3. As I was watching TV, my wife .... our lunch.
   a) was cooked b) cooks c) is cooking d) was cooking
4. When Rana came home, her sister .... the dishes.
   a) was washed b) is washing c) was washing d) has washed
5. From 10 to 12 last Friday, an important match ....
   a) was watching b) had watched
   c) was watched d) was being watched

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Language Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 They studied the English Literature .... 2006.
a) since b) at c) in d) for

2 Sameer .... a call from his friend yesterday.
a) receives b) is received c) received d) was receiving

3 My mother never let my little brother play while food ....
مدرسة بنى محمد سلطان - المنيا ٢٠٢٢
a) is cooking b) is being cooked
c) was cooking d) was being cooked

4 I was having my lunch when the phone ....
a) ring b) had rung c) was rung d) rang

5 Ahmed was writing a letter while his brothers .... TV.
a) were watching b) watched c) were watched d) are watching

6 I used my brother's camera while mine ....
a) is repaired b) is being repaired
c) was repairing d) was being repaired

7 What .... you doing when the light went out last night?
a) was b) were c) are d) have

8 My son .... watch Egyptian movies, but now he does.
a) used to b) didn't use to c) wasn't used to d) used to not

9 The underground metro is used to .... people to their destinations.
a) carry b) carrying c) carries d) carried

10 Did your mother .... to cook the food well?
a) used b) use c) using d) usage

11 .... I was doing my homework, my brother was playing computer games.
a) Before b) After c) During d) While

12 My brother .... his lessons when he heard a cry in the street.
a) studied b) studying c) was studying d) had studied

13 Yousef .... sleeps early as he used to when he was young.
a) used to b) is used to c) no longer d) any longer

14 When I went to my friend's home, he .... lunch and asked me to share him.
a) had b) had had c) is having d) was having

15 While we .... TV, my cousin suddenly arrived.
إدارة شرق المحلة - الغربية ٢٠٢٢
a) watching b) are watching c) were watching d) watched

16 .... lunch at home yesterday?
مدرسة الكويت - إدارة المنتزه - الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
a) Had to b) Did you have c) You had d) Do you have

17 Nesma .... late when she was young. She is no longer now. إدارة القناطر - القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) usually sleeps
b) is used to sleeping
c) used to sleep
d) is usually sleeping

18 "He doesn't smoke heavily any longer." I mean that he .... مدرسة أسوان الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢

a) used to be a heavy smoker
b) smokes heavily
c) no longer smokes
d) didn't use to smoke

19 I became used .... up in the early morning.

a) get
b) to get
c) to getting
d) to be got

20 When I reached home, I immediately .... a shower.

a) was having
b) had had
c) had
d) have

21 **A:** Did you hear what she said?

B: No, I .... to do something else.

a) was planned
b) plan
c) have planned
d) was planning

22 Did you see that? The car .... by the helicopter.

a) was chasing
b) was being chased
c) will be chased
d) has been chased

23 The television was on, but nobody .... it.

a) is watching
b) was watching
c) has watched
d) was watched

24 He .... save money. Now, he has a lot of money in his bank account.

a) used to
b) didn't use to
c) uses to
d) is used to

25 Solyman didn't use to sleep early. This means ....

a) he sleeps early now
b) he doesn't sleep early now
c) he never sleeps now
d) he is sleeping now

26 During the football match, Hossam broke his leg. This means ....

a) his leg was broken after the match
b) he was a fan watching the match
c) he wasn't interested in the match
d) he was a player in the match

27 I was eating my lunch when my father rang the doorbell. This means that ringing the bell happened ....

a) after my lunch
b) during my lunch
c) before my lunch
d) as soon as my lunch

28 He used to eat spicy food. This means he ....

a) likes it now
b) doesn't like it now
c) no longer liked it
d) no longer like it

29 Which one of the following sentences is correct?

a) She didn't met her friends yesterday.
b) He didn't got my e-mail last week.
c) I used to going to the club on Fridays.
d) We didn't go out last night.

30 Which of the following isn't correct?

a) Did you use to sleep early?
b) I was watching the match when you called.
c) Did you liked my present?
d) I used to study my lessons at night.

Test Yourself





Unit 1
Lessons 1 & 2

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The .... of Egypt has increased to 120 million.
a) residents b) pollution c) population d) peoples

2 There were a lot of .... as a result of the terrible accident on the highway.
a) survivors b) victims c) criminals d) inhabitants

3 A lot of the buildings in our city had to be .... after the 1992 earthquake.
a) rebuilt b) damaged c) leaned d) reflected

4 We should protect the natural environment .... the Red Sea coast.
a) a long b) long c) along d) longer

5 We don't want to interfere in the .... affairs شئون of other countries.
a) personnel b) inside c) internal d) privacy

6 You don't have to pay for your flights; they're .... in the price of your holiday.
a) contained b) concluded c) enclosed d) included

7 I used to be clever at .... which made my teacher call me "The doctor of the class".
a) geology b) biology c) anthropology d) sociology

8 You must get up early if you want to .... your flight to London.
a) miss b) make c) catch d) lose

9 While my son was trying to catch the bus, he .... his phone.
a) was dropping b) dropped c) has dropped d) was dropped

10 Our lunch .... while I was doing my school homework.
a) was preparing b) is prepared
c) was being prepared d) has been prepared

11 While I was driving along this morning, I .... about what they had said.
a) was thinking b) thought c) had thought d) am thinking

12 I never .... to play any musical instrument as a child.
a) was learned b) learnt c) have learnt d) was learning

13 I last watched an Egyptian film .... I was 25 years old.
a) since b) while c) when d) after

14 I couldn't go out with my friends as I .... my mother with the housework.
a) helped b) was helping c) had helped d) help

15 Working till 10 p.m. isn't a problem. I .... late. I did it in my last job, too.
a) am used to finishing b) used to finish
c) used to be finishing d) have used to finish

16 I no longer sleep late as I .... when I was still a young man.
a) am used b) am used to c) used d) used to

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Motor cars are highly desirable for obvious reasons. We should recognise this and adjust ourselves to accept this as a must. It is no use complaining and attacking the motorists; most of us are motorists. It is nonsense[1] to say that the countryside is polluted and cities and towns are spoilt as a result of traffic. If cars were banned, the alternative[2] is the return to the isolated communities of the past. Also, motorists make possible huge industries all over the world and provide employment to millions of workers and employees. Making stricter[3] laws is not the best solution. The best solution is to provide better road facilities. One-way streets in big cities, towns and roads can better[4] conditions. There would be a world-wide network for motorways. The use of multi-storey and underground car parks can do wonders. Possible introduction of small electric cars for cities in the future and cars on rails is what designers are planning for tomorrow's world.

Again, exceeding[5] speed limits should be too severe[6] and more costly to reduce the annual toll of human life. Some governments are to blame because motorists pay vast sums on road tax, purchase tax, oil tax, etc. But it is a pity that only a small proportion[7] of the money paid is used to improve road conditions.

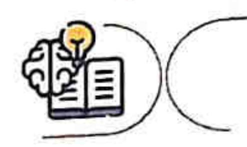
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Better road facilities ....
a) are of no use
b) have beneficial effect
c) are the result of strict laws
d) are undesirable for obvious reasons

2 Banning cars ....
a) is the only alternative
b) brings about primitive and isolated communities
c) will cost huge sums of money
d) needs stricter laws

3 It is inadvisable for motorists ....
a) to improve road conditions
b) to solve the accident problem
c) to exceed speed limits
d) to plan for tomorrow's world

4 Motor cars are highly desirable. This means ....
a) they have high desire
b) people very much like to have cars
c) people very much dislike cars
d) motor cars are to blame for the accident problem



(1) لا شيء
(2) بديل
(3) صارمة أكثر
(4) يحسن
(5) تجاوز
(6) شديد/قاس
(7) مبلغ/كمية

5 The underlined word "toll" in the passage means ....

a) the amount of money people pay
b) the number of accidents on roads
c) the number of people who are killed or injured
d) the amount of oil people use

6 One advantage of motorists is that they ....

a) provide job opportunities
b) reduce pollution
c) provide road facilities
d) plan for the future

7 Designers are planning to design .... for tomorrow's world.

a) electric cars
b) steam cars
c) cars on rails
d) a & c

8 A suitable title for the passage may be ....

a) Banning motor cars
b) Solving the problems of cars and roads
c) Speed limits
d) The return of isolated communities

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. All parents should have an effective role in pushing and encouraging their children to share in their country's progress.

....

....

2. There is no doubt that the reform[1] of education is a must[2] even if we spend billions of money on it.

....

....

3. We should consider money a means and not an end. That's why we shouldn't collect money only but invest[3] it in useful projects.

....

....

4. For children, parents provide a model for how disagreements should be resolved in close relationships.

....

....

5. Some adults and teachers may think young people want to spend all of their time using social media. But a recent survey[4] shows that may not be true.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- كل ما نحلم به ونتمنى الحصول عليه هو فرصة حقيقية للتعليم والعمل والرعاية الصحية حتى نحيا حياة سعيدة.

....

....

٢- نحن جميعا نعتبر الإنترنت معجزة[٥] هذا العصر حيث إنه أصبح ضرورة لا يمكن الاستغناء[٦] عنها فى كل مجالات الحياة سواء الشخصية أو العامة.

....

....

٣- يعتبر التعليم هو أساس التقدم[٧] والتنمية[٨] لشعوب ودول العالم سواء المتقدمة منها أو النامية؛ لأنه يساعدنا فى إعداد أجيال[٩] من المواطنين القادرين على إحداث التغيير.

....

....

٤- إن مستقبل أى أمة تريد التقدم والنهوض ومواكبة[١٠] الدول المتحضرة لن يتحقق إلا بأطفالها و شبابها حيث إن الأطفال هم الأمل و الشباب هم العمود الفقرى[١١] لأى دولة.

....

....

٥- لا شك[١٢] أننا جميعًا كمصريين نرفض كل أشكال الإرهاب[١٣] والعنف وقتل الأبرياء وكذلك تدمير البنية التحتية[١٤] للدولة ولذلك نقف جميعًا مع الحكومة فى حربها ضد الإرهابيين[١٥].

....

....

How to translate

١- ترجمة (هو – هى) إذا كان الغرض منها التعريف يكون v. to be.

٢- كلمة (حيث إنه) تعبر عن السبب و من هنا يتم ترجمتها إلى as – because.

٣- كلمة (كل) إذا جاء بعدها جمع تترجم إلى all ولكن إذا كان بعدها مفرد فتترجم إلى every.

٤- كلمة a must اسم و ترجمتها (ضرورة - شىء لازم) ولكن must فقط بمعنى (يجب).

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

1. Encouraging tourists to come to Egypt.
2. A place you dream to visit one day.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. .... | I used the right structure. .... | I used a topic sentence. .... | I wrote the conclusion. .... | I used the right punctuation. ....

(1) إصلاح (2) ضرورة (3) يستثمر (4) استطلاع رأى (5) miracle (6) do without (7) progress (8) development (9) generations (10) keep up with (11) backbone (12) no doubt (13) terrorism (14) infrastructure (15) terrorists



Lessons 3 & 4



A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

Word	Meaning
active (adj)	نشيط
ancient (adj)	قديم (أثري)
beautiful (adj)	جميل
boring (adj)	ممل
busy (adj)	مزدحم/مشغول
calm (adj)	هادئ
crowded (adj)	مزدحم
exotic (adj)	غريب
modern (adj)*	حديث/عصري
new (adj)	جديد
noisy (adj)	مزعج
old (adj)	قديم
peaceful (adj)	هادئ/آمن/سلمي
quiet (adj) (n)	هادئ/هدوء
relax (v) – ed	يسترخي/يستريح
relaxing (adj)	مريح

* Can you put the word "modern" in a sentence?

Vocabulary on Reading

Word	Meaning
actually (adv)	في الواقع
amazing (adj)	مدهش
away (adv)	بعيدًا
awful (adj)	فظيع
balcony (n)	بلكونة
brilliant (adj)	رائع
castle (n)	قلعة
cheap (adj)	رخيص
cry (v) (~~y~~ied)	يبكي
expect (v) – ed	يتوقع
fascinating (adj)	ساحر/خلاب
gardening (n)	أعمال الحديقة
glad (adj)	سعيد
grow (v)	يزرع
hobby (n)	هواية
lettuce (n)	نبات الخس

resort (n)	منتجع	tiny (adj)	صغير الحجم (ضئيل)
steal (v)	يسرق	try (v) (tried)	يحاول/يجرب
teenager (n)	مراهق	underwater (adj) (adv)	تحت الماء
temple (n)	معبد		

Workbook Vocabulary

adventure (n)	مغامرة	on board (adv)	على متن (سفينة أو طائرة)
break (n)	فسحة/نزهة	paradise (n)	جنة
distance (n)	مسافة	stressed (adj)	مضغوط/مجهد
eco-trip (n)	رحلة ميدانية بيئية	support (v) – ed	يدعم
explore (v) – d	يستكشف	unusual (adj)	غير معتاد

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

(be) stuck	عالق (غير قادر على الخروج)	tired of	متعب من
have a holiday	يأخذ إجازة	take photos	يلتقط صورًا فوتوغرافية
go away	يرحل	interested in	مهتم بـ
go down	ينخفض/تغرب (الشمس)	over the moon	سعيد جدًا
make good use of	يستغل	walk around	يتنزه
busy with	مشغول بـ	live in	يعيش فى
dive with	يغطس مع	loads of	كميات من
leave behind	يترك خلفه	on balcony	فى البلكونة

Just reading them may help!

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
awe	يهاب/يرهب	awfulness	فظاعة	awful	سيئ/فظيع
bore	يُضجر	boredom	ملل	boring	ممل
calm	يهدأ/يُهَدِّئ	calmness	هدوء	calm	هادئ
crowd	يحشد/يدفع	crowd	حشد/جمع من الناس	crowded	مزدحم
fascinate	يفتن/يسحر	fascination	جاذبية/افتتان	fascinating	ساحر
pacify	يهدأ/يسكن	peace peacefulness	سلام هدوء	peaceful	آمن
quieten	يهدأ	quiet/quietness	هدوء/سكينة	quiet	هادئ
stick	يُقحم/يلصق	sticker stickiness	ملصق لزوجة	stuck	عالق

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
active	نشيط	energetic/dynamic	inactive/lazy/idle	كسول/خامل
amazing	مدهش/مذهل	astonishing/fascinating	believable/ordinary	معقول/عادى
ancient	قديم	old/antique	modern/new	حديث/عصرى
beautiful	جميل	pretty/cute/handsome	ugly/awful	قبيح
boring	ممل	dull/uninteresting	exciting/interesting	مثير
busy	مزدحم	crowded/jammed	empty/free	فارغ/خال
calm	هادئ	peaceful/quiet	nervous/upset/noisy	متوتر/عصبى/مزعج
fascinating	ساحر/خلاب	charming/interesting	boring/dull	ممل
relaxing	مريح	comfortable/calm	noisy/worried	مزعج/صاخب/قلق

Let's check our new vocabulary!

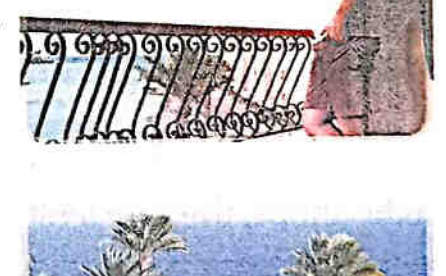
Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

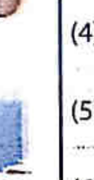
1. You have to .... to be able to think carefully about your problems.
   a) worry b) relax c) frighten d) fight
2. Our players were .... and we all were very proud of them.
   a) boring b) noisy c) awful d) amazing
3. Why don't we go to a .... to spend the summer holiday?
   a) resort b) boat c) bridge d) temple
4. Nader is interested .... doing exercise to be fit.
   a) on b) of c) with d) in
5. Computer and the Internet have become an essential part of our .... life.
   a) old b) modern c) antique d) crowded

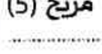
ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)









This is me on our hotel balcony[1] in Sharm El-Sheikh. It's brilliant[2] here and there are loads[3] of things to do. I'm over the moon visiting Egypt. The weather's really hot so we spend most of the time in the water.

My sister and I are learning to dive with some other teenagers[4] at the resort. I love diving; it's so relaxing[5] and you can see all these amazing fish in the sea. I want to get an underwater camera so I can take photos of them.

Last week, we were in Luxor and visited the ancient temples[6] there. I'm not usually interested in history, but I actually found them fascinating[7] and am really glad we went there.

(1) بلكونة

(2) رائع

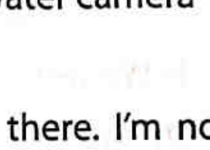
(3) كميات

(4) مراهقون

(5) مريح

(6) معابد

(7) ساحر/خلاب



Reading Text (2)



Day 10 of my summer holidays! I'm so bored[1] – all my friends are away or busy with their family and I'm stuck[2] here at home. The weather's awful[3] and there's nothing to do.

Last week, I went to stay with my grandparents for a few days, which was nice, but they live in a tiny village with no shops. I was helping Granddad in his garden most of the time. He grows all his own vegetables – he says it's cheaper than buying them.

Maybe I'll try and grow some lettuce[4] in our garden when it stops raining. I was watching a programme on TV this morning about gardening[5] – maybe I'll have a new hobby!

(1) شاعر بالملل
(2) عالق
(3) فظيع
(4) نبات الخس
(5) أعمال الحديقة

Reading Text (3)

a) As I was photographing[1] the castle, my little brother started crying.

b) We walked around Lisbon and I took lots of photos.

c) We went to the shops, they are a bit[2] expensive but my mum was happy.

d) My uncle met us at the airport and drove us to the old part of town. It's very quiet and peaceful.

e) We sailed[3] along the river to see the sun going down[4]. It was beautiful and very relaxing!

f) We went to Europe to visit my cousins in Portugal.

g) My uncle decided to take us to a restaurant for lunch.

h) He was eating an ice cream and a bird stole it! He was very upset[5].

(1) يصور
(2) قليل
(3) أبحر
(4) تغرب
(5) منزعج

Workbook Text

Holidays Adverts

A beach break

Do you want to relax in a quiet and peaceful[1] place? Escape from noisy streets and leave your busy city life behind[2]. Visit this amazing paradise[3]. Enjoy the sunshine[4] on isolated beaches and swim in clean, clear water.

Adventure time

Are you tired of the same old, boring places? Are you looking for an active holiday? Then this is the holiday for you. Day one starts with diving[5], then day two takes you climbing[6] in the beautiful Alpine mountains[7].

Eco-trip

Ecotourism is a new way to travel for a new kind of traveller[8]. You can go trekking through the Andes[9] and explore[10] ancient Machu Picchu with a local guide[11]. You can enjoy peace and quiet or you can meet the local people, all without damaging the environment.

A cruise to remember

Why not take a calm cruise around the Caribbean? On board our modern cruise ship, you can enjoy great food and forget your worries[12] in our relaxing restaurants. We stop at six different islands where you can visit the crowded markets and see many unusual sights[13].

(1) آمن/مسالم
(2) خلف
(3) جنة
(4) إشراق (نور) الشمس
(5) غوص
(6) تسلق
(7) جبال الألب
(8) مسافر
(9) جبال الأنديز
(10) يكتشف
(11) مرشد
(12) مخاوف
(13) مشاهد

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I have become so tired .... my daily routine.
   a) in b) of c) by d) on
2. It was a .... piece of cake. I felt as if I ate nothing.
   a) tiny b) huge c) big d) massive
3. I live in a very quiet and .... village. I am happy to live here.
   a) peaceful b) crowded c) noisy d) peace
4. The teacher was .... on hearing that his students got bad marks.
   a) happy b) pleaded c) excited d) upset
5. When we arrived in our new village, we began to .... it.
   a) pave b) explore c) expand d) adventure

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

isolated — معزول
- used to describe a place far away from any others

ancient — قديم/أثرى
- something that is very old

crowded — مزدحم
- when a place has lots of people

exotic — غريب
- this is unusual and often from a different country

modern — حديث/عصرى
- something which is new and connected to the present

peaceful — هادئ/آمن/سلمى
- feeling calm, quiet, without any problems

relaxing — مريح
- something that makes you feel relaxed and not stressed

exciting — مثير
- something that makes you feel excited

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

1

Word	Arabic	Example
child = kid	طفل صغير	The hotel is ideal for families with young children.
toddler	طفل يتعلم المشى	A toddler is a very young child who is just learning to walk.
teenager = adolescent	مراهق	A teenager is someone who is between 13 and 19 years old.
youth	شاب	The police had questioned three youths, but then later released them without charge.
adult	شخص بالغ	The cost of the trip is $60 for adults and $30 for children.

2

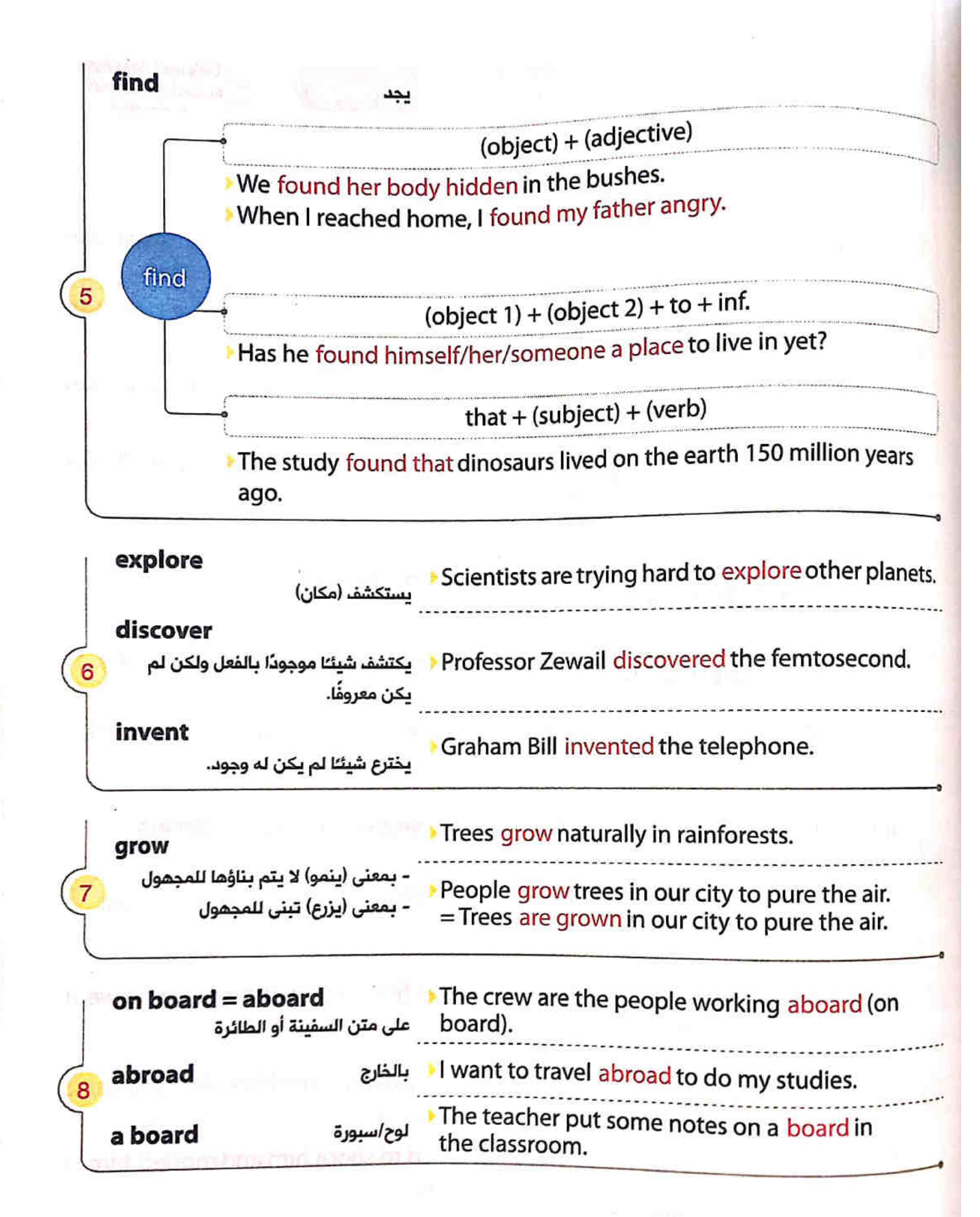
Word	Arabic	Example
weather	الطقس (حالة الجو لفترة قصيرة)	What's the weather like today?
climate	المناخ (حالة الجو لفترة طويلة)	The climate is cooler in the east of the country.
atmosphere	الغلاف الجوى (ما يحيط بالأرض)	These factories are releasing toxic gases into the atmosphere.

3

Word	Arabic	Example
underwater (adj) (adv)	- تحت المياه (صفة تأتى قبل اسم) - تحت المياه (حال أو ظرف)	I bought an expensive underwater camera yesterday. This is a camera specially designed to be used underwater.

4

Word	Arabic	Example
steal + (something)	يسرق (شيئًا)	He stole money from his neighbours, so he went to prison.
rob + (place)	يسرق (من مكان أو شخص)	They killed four policemen while robbing a bank.
rob + (somebody) of (something)	يسرق شيئًا (من شخص أو مكان)	They threatened to shoot him and robbed him of all his possessions.



find يجد

(object) + (adjective)

- We found her body hidden in the bushes.
- When I reached home, I found my father angry.

(object 1) + (object 2) + to + inf.

- Has he found himself/her/someone a place to live in yet?

that + (subject) + (verb)

- The study found that dinosaurs lived on the earth 150 million years ago.

explore يستكشف (مكان)

- Scientists are trying hard to explore other planets.

discover يكتشف شيئًا موجودًا بالفعل ولكن لم يكن معروفًا

- Professor Zewail discovered the femtosecond.

invent يخترع شيئًا لم يكن له وجود.

- Graham Bill invented the telephone.

grow
- بمعنى (ينمو) لا يتم بناؤها للمجهول
- بمعنى (يزرع) تبنى للمجهول

- Trees grow naturally in rainforests.
- People grow trees in our city to pure the air.
  = Trees are grown in our city to pure the air.

on board = aboard على متن السفينة أو الطائرة

- The crew are the people working aboard (on board).

abroad بالخارج

- I want to travel abroad to do my studies.

a board لوح/سبورة

- The teacher put some notes on a board in the classroom.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- The weather's really hot so we spend most of the time in the water.

كلمة water اسم لا يعد وفى الغالب لا يسبقها أداة التعريف the ولكن هنا تشير إلى مكان محدد مسبقًا.

- .... to see the sun going down.

تستخدم الصيغة see + obj. + v-ing عندما يقوم الفاعل برؤية جزء من الحدث.

- He was eating an ice cream ....

كلمة ice cream لا تكون معدودة إلا إذا أريد بها واحدة من الآيس كريم (an ice cream cone).

- I went to stay with my grandparents for a few days, which was nice.

كلمة which هنا تشير إلى الجملة الكاملة التى تسبقها.

- I was watching a programme on TV this morning about gardening.

الكلمات مثل: TV – radio – the internet – computer تأخذ حرف الجر on

I think number one is (b), what do you think?

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was very angry to .... the truth about his bad behaviour.
   a) invent b) discover c) explore d) found
2. Because of the bad storm, people on .... the ship were frightened.
   a) abroad b) broad c) aboard d) board
3. The bad boys .... their neighbour of his money.
   a) robbed b) stole c) took d) kidnapped
4. Most of our customers are .... who are at most 19 years old.
   a) adults b) kids c) toddlers d) teenagers
5. Many people prefer to live in countries where the .... is fine most of the year.
   a) weather b) climate c) atmosphere d) sun

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 On getting on the train, we found it so .... that we had to stand all way to our destination.
a) empty b) crowded c) relaxing d) noisy

2 We .... that our national team will be better in the future.
a) accept b) except c) prescript d) expect

3 Mr Adel is the best .... I have ever met. He has a very nice garden where he himself works.
a) gardening b) teacher c) director d) gardener

4 Sometimes I enjoy my English lessons, but at other times I find them really ....
a) modern b) calm c) busy d) boring

5 I can't believe that I am .... going to Mecca for pilgrimage الحج. It is my lifelong wish.
a) traditionally b) unfortunately c) actually d) impossibly

6 The actor got an award for giving a/an .... performance in his last film.
a) amazed b) boring c) needless d) amazing

7 My new flat has a .... where we can sit and look at a nice lake.
a) balcony b) ceiling c) floor d) stair

8 Tamer was happy to find some .... gold coins inside the pot from the time of the pharaohs.
a) quiet b) busy c) modern d) ancient

9 The thieves .... a huge sum of money from the bank.
a) robbed b) stole c) bought d) borrowed

10 The thieves .... the bank and took a huge sum of money.
a) robbed b) stole c) bought d) borrowed

11 The park was full with .... children who were all running around.
مدرسة الزنكلون الثانوية إدارة شرق الزقازيق ٢٠٢٢
a) noisy b) peaceful c) calm d) quiet

12 I felt .... when the other team scored a goal in the beginning of the match.
a) hungry b) pleased c) stressed d) grateful

13 Have you seen her perform fantastically on stage? She's absolutely ....
a) furious b) brilliant c) frightening d) ordinary

14 The .... in Egypt is not going to be nice this week.
a) weather b) climate c) atmosphere d) whether

15 The .... in Egypt is fine all the year around.
a) weather b) climate c) atmosphere d) whether

16 The true friend is the one who gives .... at both happy and difficult times.
a) frustration b) disappointment c) encourage d) support

17 The engineers .... the old area very well before they installed the equipment.
a) discovered b) explored c) scanned d) created

18 He spent the summer learning .... with his blindness.
a) coping b) to cope c) how to cope d) both b and c

19 It was .... to hear that our company was going to close because of its financial problems.
a) pleasant b) awful c) wonderful d) terrific

20 In some parts of the world, plants and some kinds of trees .... without man's interference.
a) are grown b) have been grown c) grow d) growing

21 Your handwriting is so .... I need a magnifying glass to read it.
الزنكلون الثانوية - الزقازيق ٢٠٢٢
a) fantastic b) tiny c) amazing d) beautiful

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

22 I went to the old company and took my rights in a .... way.
a) pacify b) peace c) peaceful d) peacefulness

23 My grandparents live in a small village .... no shops or places of interest.
a) with b) by c) from d) for

24 My hobby is .... photos of the natural views all over Egypt.
a) making b) doing c) producing d) taking

25 My parents took us on a nice trip .... the Nile in a wonderful boat.
a) a long b) by c) beneath d) along

26 We got a load .... complaints about the loud music.
a) from b) of c) by d) in

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

27 I liked the time I spent with the crew .... when I was travelling to Paris.
a) abroad b) on board c) on aboard d) broad e) aboard

28 Cairo is so beautiful. The antonyms of the word "beautiful" are .... and ....
مدرسة السيدة نفيسة الثانوية بنات - محافظة القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) ugly b) attractive c) wonderful d) awful e) pretty

29 I always take my young .... to the park every Friday.
a) adults b) grown-ups c) kids d) children e) youth

30 Luxor is one of the most fascinating cities in the world. The antonyms of the word "fascinating" are .... and ....
a) exciting b) dull c) charming d) boring e) astonishing





Lessons 3 & 4

B Language

Notes on the past simple and past continuous

- استخدام الزمن بعد so - because حسب معنى الجملة وليس لها زمن ثابت.

- I couldn't see him because I was studying.
- I didn't play the match because I hadn't trained enough.

While بينما When عندما	+	(v-ing) بدون فاعل	- While playing, he fell down. - When arriving, I had a shower.
During أثناء	+	(noun)	- During my stay in England, I learnt English.

- During my stay in Alexandria, I visited a lot of places. (While)
  = While I was staying in Alexandria, I visited a lot of places.

لابد أن يكون فاعل الجملة الأولى هو نفسه فاعل الجملة الثانية عند استخدام (while + v-ing)

(When + past simple = On + v-ing)

- When the thief saw the police, he ran away. (On)
  = On seeing the police, the thief ran away.

Got it — Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- During ...., we got hot and wanted to leave.

a) watching the play b) to watch c) the play d) being watching

الإجابة هي (c) لأن بعد During يأتي الاسم.



١) من الممكن استخدام الماضي المستمر مع تعبيرات all مع الماضي:
(all day/all night/all morning/all evening yesterday)
- I was watching television all day yesterday.

٢) بعض الأفعال لا تستخدم في الماضي المستمر ولكن تستخدم في الماضي البسيط حتى مع علامات الماضي المستمر وهي:
١- أفعال الحواس see – hear – smell – taste – touch – feel
٢- أفعال العاطفة love – like – hate – dislike – prefer
٣- أفعال التفكير understand – forget – remember – know – remind
٤- أفعال التملك owe – own – possess – have – belong – want
- When my teacher was illustrating the lesson, I understood it.

٣) من الممكن استخدام زمن الماضي البسيط للإشارة إلى حدث تم في الماضي لم يـذكر وقت وقوعه ولكن معروف (كمعلومة) أنه تم في الماضي (الماضي البديهي)
- The Chinese built the Great Wall of China to stop the enemies' attacks.

٤)

It's (high) time
'd rather
I wish
Suppose

+ (Subject) + (التصريف الثانى)

- It's time I travelled abroad.
- I wish I attended the party.

- أما إذا وجدنا كلمة دالة على الماضى مع أى من التعبيرات السابقة فنستخدم زمن الماضى التام.

- It's time I had travelled abroad two years ago.
- I wish I had attended the party yesterday.

- التعبيرات السابقة إذا لم يأت بعدها فاعل تصبح قاعدتها كالآتى:

- It's time + (to + inf.) - I'd rather + (inf.) - I wish + (to + inf.)

- It's time to travel abroad.
- I wish to attend the party.

٥)

While + (حرف جر)
= While + subject + v. to (be) + (حرف جر)

- While on holiday, I had a great time.
- While I was on holiday, I had a great time.

٦) يمكن استخدام did + inf. للدلالة على التأكيد.

- I visited him yesterday. = I did visit him yesterday.

٧) كلمة for أصلًا كلمة دالة على زمن المضارع التام ولكن من الممكن استخدامها فى الماضى البسيط عند وجود ما يدل على انتهاء الحدث.

- My father worked for this company for 20 years. Now, he has his own company.
- My father has worked for this company for 20 years.

٨) من الممكن استخدام الكلمات الدالة على العادة فى المضارع البسيط مع الماضى البسيط لتعبر عن عادة كانت تحدث فى الماضى.

Subj. + (always/often/usually/sometimes ...) + (التصريف الثانى)

- She always sleeps early on school days.
- She always slept early on school days when she was a student.

٩) لاحظ الجمل التالية :

- He used to be clever, but now he isn't.
- He used to study hard, but now he doesn't.

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... studying at Oxford, I visited many attractions in London.
   a) As b) While c) Just as d) During
2. I'd rather they .... us about the accident.
   a) tell b) have told c) told d) were telling
3. .... running down the road, I crashed into a tree.
   a) On b) As c) As soon as d) By

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 At a quarter to ten, I .... home with some of my friends.
a) walked b) was walked c) was walking d) had walked

2 Ameer .... all yesterday evening, so he didn't watch the match.
a) is sleeping b) had slept c) was sleeping d) was slept

3 .... hearing the bad news, I hurried to tell my family.
a) As b) While c) Having d) On

4 While ...., the baby smiled to the doctor. إدارة المقطم والخليفة - القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) examining b) was examining
c) being examined d) was being examined

5 Dalia couldn't see us passing her because she .... on her work.
a) concentrated b) had concentrated
c) was concentrating d) would concentrate

6 Mother .... angry because I entered the room while she was cleaning it.
a) is b) was being c) has been d) was

7 .... our journey to Aswan, we saw a lot of monuments.
a) During b) When c) While d) As

8 I was having a shower, so I .... the telephone.
a) didn't hear b) wasn't hearing
c) haven't heard d) hearing

9 During .... in Sharm, I swam in the sea every morning. مدرسة الفتح - الباجور - المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
a) staying b) stayed c) my stay d) being

10 When .... my old friend in the street, I was very pleased.
a) met b) was meeting c) meeting d) I meet

11 Last week, my favourite team .... the African championship.
a) was winning b) won c) did win d) b & c

12 For a long time yesterday, my father .... in his office.
a) working b) has worked c) worked d) was working

13 I was playing football with my friends .... I broke my leg.
a) while b) on c) as d) when

14 My uncle .... for the police for twenty years before he retired. مدرسة الفتح - الباجور - المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
a) works b) worked c) has worked d) used to work

15 I didn't accept my friend's invitation to dinner as I .... for my exam.
a) revised b) are revising c) was revising d) had revised

16 My wife used to cook the food well, but now she ....

a) isn't b) doesn't c) didn't d) hasn't

17 .... the age of 10, I was taught how to swim.

a) In b) At c) For d) Since

18 While we .... on holiday in Alexandria, we met many of our old friends.

مدرسة ساقلته الثانوية بنين - سوهاج ٢٠٢٢

a) were being b) are c) have been d) were

19 Suppose you .... a bag of money, what would you do?

a) found b) has found c) will find d) was finding

20 I'd rather .... early every day.

a) sleep b) to sleep c) slept d) had slept

21 It's high time my son .... hard last year.

a) studied b) had studied c) study d) to study

22 I hadn't spoken to him much, but he .... to be a very nice man.

a) seeming b) is seeming c) was seeming d) seemed

23 I .... for this company for 5 years, but I like my current company more.

a) have worked b) working c) worked d) has worked

24 Salwa always set the table for lunch. This sentence ....

a) is a present habit
b) was a past habit
c) always takes place
d) never took place

25 While on holiday, some thieves robbed our flat. Who was on holiday?

a) My family
b) The thieves
c) Our neighbours
d) No one

26 I worked for our army for a long time. This means .... مدرسة النجاح الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢

a) I no longer work for it
b) I still work for it
c) I didn't work for it
d) I have always worked for it

27 While drinking juice, Mona and her friends were watching TV. This means ....

a) Mona was watching TV alone and her friends were drinking juice.
b) Mona's friends were drinking juice while watching TV.
c) Mona and her friends were drinking juice while watching TV.
d) Mona said her friends were drinking juice while watching TV.

28 While studying the lessons, I phoned my friend to ask him about the party. Who was studying?

a) It was my friend.
b) It was me.
c) Both my friend and me.
d) Neither my friend nor me.

29 I used to be fat. This means I am .... now.

a) fat b) no longer thin c) not fat d) overweight

30 I wish I had got up early. This means the speaker .... up late.

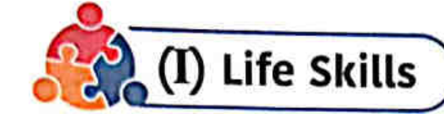
a) got b) didn't get c) has got d) never gets

Study Lessons 3 & 4



General Skills

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.



(I) Life Skills

Collaboration التعاون

To offer help
- Can I help you?
- What can I do to help you?
- Would you like me to help you?
- Can we help each other to do this ... ?

To ask for help
- Can you help me, please?
- I would like you to help me, please.

To accept help
- Yes, of course.
- No, thanks. I can do this myself.
- Yes, please. I really need your help.
- It is better to do this together.



(II) Writing

- **To write about tourism, you can focus on the following:**
  1. The importance of tourism for our country.
  2. Talk about the well-known attractions in your country.
  3. Speak about some kinds of tourism.
  4. What ecotourism is and why it is so important.
  5. How individuals and government can encourage tourists to come to Egypt.

Model Essay

Tourism

It is known that tourism is very important for the state and the individuals as well. Tourism helps countries to increase their national income and brings hard currency that helps to improve their economy. Also, tourism is very helpful in exchanging different cultures. However, tourism may have some disadvantages, especially for the country's inhabitants. Streets and roads, towns and cities, all places became very noisy and crowded, so people can't shop or go to their work easily.

There are some kinds of tourism, such as ecotourism, health tourism and business tourism. Ecotourism is the one in which tourists should keep the country they visit clean without doing any damage to the environment.

We all must cooperate to encourage tourists to visit Egypt. The government should build modern hotels, restaurants, good roads and resorts for tourists. In addition, we as individuals should be friendly and respectful towards tourists.

Test Yourself





Unit 1
Lessons 3 & 4

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I saw a lot of exotic plants during my visit to Al-Azhar Park in Cairo. The word "exotic" here means' ....
a) familiar b) known c) strange d) common

2 Sharm El-Sheikh is one of the world's most important and wonderful .... on the sea.
a) coasts b) resorts c) banks d) beaches

3 The .... life of Mr Akram helped him to be a pioneer in writing.
a) peaceful b) serious c) careless d) sure

4 Mohamed Salah was .... the moon when he won the Champions League Cup.
a) under b) after c) over d) above

5 Aunt Nawal is one of my .... relatives who I don't often meet or see.
a) distant b) distance c) close d) near

6 I adore the peace and .... of the countryside.
a) quite b) quit c) silent d) quiet

7 My friend can swim well, but he still can't swim ....
a) underwater b) under water c) underground d) under ground

8 Try to .... good use of your time. You have a lot of work to do.
a) have b) do c) give d) make

9 Hesham .... us to the public library when the car broke down.
a) is taking b) had taken c) was taking d) has taken

10 He was very annoyed, as he was travelling by bus and someone .... his watch.
a) was stealing b) has stolen c) had stolen d) stole

11 Huda .... from the early morning to the noon. I couldn't see her.
a) was studying b) is studying c) has studied d) studied

12 When I saw the wallet, I was sure that it .... to my brother.
a) wasn't belonging b) hadn't belonged
c) didn't belong d) doesn't belong

13 While the laptop ...., I was using my friend's.
a) was fixed b) was fixing
c) had fixed d) was being fixed

14 .... the party, we saw most of our old friends. We were so happy.
a) When b) During c) While d) Until

15 Yousra used to live in Cairo, but now she ....
a) hasn't b) didn't c) isn't d) doesn't

16 I wish we .... a meeting to discuss our problems.
a) to have b) will have c) had d) are having

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In 1874, an Englishman living in Brazil sent his son across the Atlantic to be educated in England. Charles Miller went to school, then to university. During his English years, Charles grew passionately keen on football, and when in 1894, he packed his bags to return to his family in Brazil, among the things he took with him were half a dozen footballs. He tried to get other people interested in the game. At first, he had little success; the only people who showed any interest were other expatriate[1] Brits; thus the first game of football in Brazil was played between two teams of young Englishmen, on a field from which the goats had first been removed. Charles asked some journalists to come and see this new English game, but none came along. On the other hand, as the weeks went past, the spectacle[2] of twenty-two young Englishmen running round after a ball began attracting spectators from houses nearby. "Balls" is perhaps the wrong word - the only footballs in Brazil at the time were the ones that Charles Miller had brought back with him from England. The first Brazilian amateurs[3] had to concoct[4] their own balls. The journalists who had originally laughed at the crazy English sport, were jumping on the bandwagon, writing enthusiastically[5] about the popular new game.



The rest, as they say, is history.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 When Charles returned to his family in Brazil, he brought with him ....
   a) three footballs only
   b) three footballs and other things
   c) six footballs and other things
   d) twelve football and other things

2 Charles' father was ....
   a) a Brazilian living in Brazil
   b) an Englishman living all his life in England
   c) a Brazilian footballer living in England
   d) an Englishman living in Brazil

3 Which of the following statements is not correct?
   a) Charles Miller was educated in England in the 18th century.
   b) Charles Miller was educated in England in the 19th century.
   c) Charles was keen on football.
   d) Charles returned to Brazil again.



(1) مغترب (2) مشهد (3) هواة (4) يخترع (5) بحماس

4 The best title for this passage is ....

a) How football came to England

b) The story of the World Cup

c) How football came to Brazil

d) The importance of sport

5 What did the first Brazilian amateurs have to do?

a) To concoct their own balls.

b) To travel to England to buy balls.

c) To travel to England to play football.

d) The answer is not mentioned in the passage.

6 What was strange about the first game of football played in Brazil?

a) It was played between two teams from Sao Paolo.

b) It was played between two teams of young Englishmen.

c) It was played on a field from which the goats had first been removed.

d) Both "b" & "c".

7 The underlined word "Brits" is closest in meaning to ....

a) the people of Brazil

b) the people of Berlin

c) the people of Sao Paolo

d) the people of Great Britain

8 The pronoun 'they' in the last sentence refers to ....

a) Charles and his father

b) historians

c) the journalists

d) the young Englishmen

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Youth are the backbone(1) of any nation and the base of its progress(2). So, governments should help them be better citizens.

....

....

2. Man knows well that life is a mixture(3) of success and failure. With that in mind, it should be filled with hard work.

....

....

3. The government pays great attention(4) to women and provides them with education, jobs and health and social care.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- من المحتمل أن تتحقق فى المستقبل القريب سياحة الفضاء والتى ستجذب الكثير من الناس وستحقق أرباحًا خيالية(٥).

....

....

٢- لقد أجبرت(٦) مشكلة الإسكان الكثير من الشباب على رفض(٧) الزواج بسبب الصعوبة فى الحصول على شقة.

....

....

٣- على الحكومة أن تهتم بالمشروعات الإنتاجية(٨) وذلك لزيادة الإنتاج ورفع مستوى(٩) المعيشة لكل المواطنين.

....

....

How to translate

١- من + الصفة يتم ترجمتها كالتالى .It is + adj. + to + inf

٢- حرف (س) يعبر عن المستقبل ويترجم إلى .will + inf

٣- كلمة Man تعنى الإنسان بوجه عام و تعامل معاملة المفرد.

٤- كلمة (لقد) بعدها زمن الماضى يتم ترجمتها إلى (مضارع تام) .have – has + p.p ما لم نجد كلمة دالة على زمن أخر.

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

1. If you are a good citizen, what will you do for your country?
2. The pros of ecotourism in your country.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. — I used the right structure. — I used a topic sentence. — I wrote the conclusion. — I used the right punctuation.

(1) عمود فقرى
(2) تقدم
(3) خليط/مزيج
(4) إهتمام
(5) fantastic earnings
(6) force
(7) refuse
(8) productive
(9) standard

Study

Chapter 1 (Treasure Island)

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

admiral	أميرال (رتبة بحرية)	pale	باهت/شاحب اللون
adventures	مغامرات	perhaps	ربما
blind	أعمى/كفيف	point	يشير
cliffs	منحدرات صخرية	probably	من المحتمل
captain	قبطان	quiet	هادئ
dare	يجرؤ	realise	يدرك
dead	ميت	sailor	بحار
frightened	خائف	scar	ندب/أثر جرح
grab	يجذب/ينتزع	suddenly	فجأة
guarding	حراسة	surprised	مندهش
gun	بندقية	sword	سيف
inn	حانة	terrible	فظيع
island	جزيرة	treasure	كنز
neighbours	الجيران	village	قرية

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

as quickly as we could	بأسرع ما يمكننا	point towards	يشير نحو
be frightened by	خائف من	point to	يشير إلى
come down	ينزل	run outside	يجرى للخارج
continue + (v-ing)	يستمر فى	spend + (v-ing)	يقضى
dare to	يجرؤ على	talk about	يتحدث عن
decide to	يقرر أن	tell about	يحكى عن
fall over	يسقط	walk back into	يعود إلى
fall to the floor	يسقط على الأرض	walk into	يدخل
look around	ينظر حول	write about	يكتب عن
look pale	تبدو باهتة		



Novel Exercises

Chapter (1)

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The doctor said that the wound is quite deep, and will probably leave a ....
a) scare **b)** scar **c)** guard **d)** fear

2 The boy .... my bag and disappeared quickly into the crowd.
a) guarded **b)** released **c)** grabbed **d)** frightened

3 Hundreds of years ago, soldiers carried .... to fight with during wars.
a) swords **b)** submarines **c)** tanks **d)** treasures

4 We were very tired and hungry, so we stopped at a/an .... to rest and have a meal.
a) cave **b)** island **c)** inn **d)** cliff

5 My neighbour was very .... as he had a serious illness.
a) powerful **b)** healthy **c)** noisy **d)** pale

6 You should be very careful while driving. The .... is very steep and dangerous.
a) island **b)** cliff **c)** map **d)** key

7 I don't .... tell my mom and dad that I failed the exam.
a) guard **b)** grab **c)** hide **d)** dare

8 We need to have weapons to .... these isolated farms against attack.
a) guard **b)** hide **c)** owe **d)** own

9 The operation left their son .... and brain-damaged.
a) adult **b)** big **c)** blind **d)** quiet

10 Mr Kamal .... a lot of money to the bank, so he might sell his car to repay it.
a) hides **b)** owns **c)** owes **d)** grabs

11 As a young man, he went off to Africa, and had a lot of .... during his expedition there.
a) neighbours **b)** adventures **c)** fingers **d)** jackets

12 She was exhausted but she .... who the man in the photograph was.
a) realised **b)** left **c)** turned **d)** pointed

13 A/An .... is a high rank in the British or US navy.
a) captain **b)** guard **c)** clerk **d)** admiral

14 The mother cleaned her child up because he .... in the mud yesterday.
a) looked around **b)** based in **c)** fell over **d)** depended on

15 The officer managed to take the .... from the thief's hand.
a) arrow **b)** tank **c)** gun **d)** rocket

Unit 1

Advanced & Open

General Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Walid has given up smoking, but he still has an occasional cigarette on the ....
a) distance b) quiet c) quietly d) distant

2 I tried to .... my students out about our results of the exams.
a) seem b) vote c) tell d) sound

3 ...., each problem does not seem bad, but together they are quite serious.
a) Isolated b) In isolated c) In isolation d) Insulated

4 Nabila is .... but I think she is in good health.
a) lean b) active c) sound d) leak

5 I was my teacher's .... when I was at school. I was his favourite.
a) fussy b) better c) bite d) pet

6 It is known that the .... of the country usually lies in the hands of the people.
a) destination b) location c) destitute d) destiny

7 If you want to finish your work on time, you have to .... now.
a) busy yourself b) get busybody c) make busy d) get busy

8 My father .... with anger when he knew that I failed the exam.
a) swelled b) spiced c) sustained d) leaned

9 Medhat is a fashion .... He always wears the most fashionable clothes even if he does not look good in them.
a) victim b) conservationist c) lemur d) giant

10 A lot of people hate this actress as she is very ....
a) swell-legged b) swell-necked c) swell-handed d) swell-headed

11 People who owe huge amounts of money sometimes .... to selling their houses or cars.
a) restore b) lend c) look forward d) resort

12 My wife has got a bad cold so I must .... until she gets better.
a) keep ahead b) keep my distance c) keep my close d) keep alive

13 At the accident, the force of the .... made my car turn over three times.
a) isolation b) danger c) impact d) conservation

14 Khaled was a/an ...., quiet man. He is unfriendly, and not interested in people.
a) safe b) limited c) isolated d) remote

15 Heba thinks she's over the ...., but she's only 40. She says she is no longer young, or good at doing things.
a) moon b) hill c) environment d) island

16 While I .... in Alexandria, I met my friends in the street.
a) were b) was being c) was d) had been

17 While .... the lessons, Ali was cooking the food.
a) studying b) was studying c) I was studying d) studied

18 .... Hurghada, I went to the beach every day.
a) While b) When c) On d) While in

19 My brother .... the extreme cold of Russia.
a) used to b) didn't use to c) was using d) got used to

20 I wish I were good at maths. This means that the speaker .... good at it.
a) is b) isn't c) was d) wasn't

21 Mona has lived in England for 5 years, so she .... the different cultures there.
a) is used to b) didn't use to c) be used to d) used to

22 The meal .... bad, that's why I wanted to vomit.
a) taste b) tasted c) was tasting d) was tasted

23 While .... , I was crying out of pain at hospital.
a) examining b) was examining
c) I was examining d) being examined

24 Youssef .... watching the Turkish Series last night.
a) used to enjoy b) would enjoy c) was enjoying d) enjoyed

25 .... seeing the snake, she screamed and ran away.
a) During b) While c) On d) Before

26 While she .... the driving lesson, her father called her.
a) had b) was having c) has had d) had had

27 They were going onto the highway .... a flat tire.
a) while on getting b) just as getting
c) when they got d) because they got

28 It takes drivers a long time to .... on the left side of the road when they visit England.
a) use to drive b) get used to driving
c) be used to drive d) get used to drive

29 She was studying her lessons at 10 o'clock yesterday. This means that ....
a) she started studying at 10 o'clock
b) she finished studying at 10 o'clock
c) she was busy with her lessons at 10 o'clock
d) she used to take her lessons at 10 o'clock

30 I wish .... my lessons next year.
a) studied b) to study c) would study d) had studied



Al-Adwaa Test



● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 Mohamed Salah is an amazing player to watch. The antonyms of the word "amazing" are .... and ....
a) crowded b) pretty c) astonishing d) believable e) ordinary

2 I was waiting for my father when he .... Cairo Airport.
a) reached b) arrived in c) got d) arrived at e) went

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3 His father bought some .... birds from New Guinea which exist only there.
a) exotic b) ancient c) old d) relaxing

4 My wife was very angry because of being .... at home with too much housework.
a) comfortable b) active c) stuck d) beautiful

5 She found it very hard teaching a class full of .... at a secondary school as she was very young.
a) teenagers b) infants c) babies d) toddlers

6 The shock of her son's accident .... her of the power of speech.
a) stole b) took c) robbed d) accused

7 These flowers will grow in a cold .... They are suitable to be grown in Russia.
a) weather b) climate c) atmosphere d) day

8 You have to try to keep ...., so you have to practise sports.
a) crowded b) active c) exotic d) away

9 .... his leadership of the company, he achieved a lot.
a) While b) On c) During d) When

10 When I met Ali yesterday, he .... to hospital. I offered to go with him.
a) went b) was going c) had gone d) going

11 When I was watering the plants, it .... to rain.
a) began b) begins c) has begun d) was beginning

12 What .... when I entered the room?
a) you did b) you were doing
c) are you doing d) were you doing

13 Smoke .... out of the fire yesterday morning.
a) came b) was coming c) is coming d) comes

14 Did you go out last night or you .... busy?
a) did b) were c) have d) are

15 The pharaohs .... the Pyramids and the Sphinx.

a) have build
b) built
c) had built
d) were building

16 Ali lived in Luxor for 10 years. This means that he ....

a) is still living there
b) lives there now
c) never used to live there
d) lives in another city now

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Jack lay, quiet and unmoving, for thirty minutes while a stranger repeatedly stabbed[1] him with sharp needles, causing blood to pour steadily out of his leg. Jack was getting a tattoo. His friend Tony had recently got a tattoo, and Jack was so impressed by Tony's bravery. Getting a tattoo because your friends and peers have ones is just one of the reasons why a lot of young people in North America get tattoos. Peer pressure[2], media influence, and personal expression are some of the common reasons for wearing tattoos today. Sometimes, wearing a tattoo can be a sign that you belong to a certain group. Some of these groups wear only brand-name clothes. When one's friends are all doing something, that person is more likely to do the same thing. The media is another big influence behind the popularity[3] of tattoos in North America. Tattoos can be seen on people appearing in commercials selling expensive cars. Famous sports heroes with tattoos are shown in magazines. Fashion models are often seen in magazines and on TV wearing designer clothes that show their bodies tattooed with detailed and colourful patterns. These media images link tattoos to ideas of wealth, success, and status. As a result, many people decide to get a tattoo for its fashion and status value.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Jack was stabbed for thirty minutes with a needle because ....

a) he was getting a tattoo
b) he was getting his ears pierced
c) he was getting acupuncture
d) he was getting a nose ring

18 According to the passage, some people get tattoos because ....

a) they like pain
b) they think it will wash off in the bath
c) they are religious
d) they think it is fashionable

19 Jack thinks people who get tattoos are ....

a) old-fashioned
b) cowardly
c) brave
d) foolish

20 The reason Jack wanted to get a tattoo was ....

a) the influence of friends
b) a desire to express himself
c) the influence of the media
d) all the previous answers

(1) طعن
(2) تأثير الرفاق
(3) شيوع/شهرة

21 The best title for this passage is ....

a) The benefits of tattoos
b) Where people get tattoos
c) The dangers of tattoos
d) Why people get tattoos

22 According to the passage, media images are linked to ....

a) wealth
b) terrorism
c) failure
d) a, b & c

23 The underlined word "his" refers to ....

a) Tony
b) Jack
c) Tony's friend
d) Jack's father

24 According to the passage, which of the following are ways that the media uses tattoos in advertising?

a) To sell cars.
b) By using fashion models.
c) By using sports stars.
d) b & c

25 Translate into English:

- إن اكتساب اللغة الإنجليزية من الممكن أن يكون من خلال المحادثات ومشاهدة الأفلام الأجنبية والاستماع لبعض الأغاني الإنجليزية وكذلك قراءة القصص والكتب باللغة الإنجليزية.

....

....

26 Translate into Arabic:

Our need of water in Egypt is expected to increase in the near future, so we must rationalise our use of water or we will face serious problems.

....

....

27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Why people travel abroad.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Unit 2



Supporting the Community

Objectives

- **Reading** : A text about Egyptian people who help their communities
- **Writing** : Write a blog on a famous person; a biography of Dr Leelah Hazzah
- **Listening** : An interview with Dr Leelah Hazzah
- **Speaking** : Discussion about helping people; making arrangements
- **Language** : Present and past simple; Present simple passive
- **Life Skills** : Empathy





Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

blood pressure (n)	ضغط الدم
generous (adj)	كريم
iron (n) (v) – ed	حديد/يكوى
iron levels (n)	نسبة مستويات الحديد (فى الدم)
prestige (n)	احترام (نفوذ/هيبة/وجاهة)
* roar (n) (v) – ed	زئير/زمجرة/يزأر
role model (n)	مثل أعلى/قدوة حسنة
speed (n) (v)	سرعة/يسرع
support (v) (n) – ed	يدعم/دعم/مساندة
transplant (n) (v) – ed	زراعة الأعضاء/ينقل عضوًا

* Can you hear the roar of the lion? It's roaring loudly.

Vocabulary on Reading

ability (n)	قدرة
admire (v) – d	يُعجب بـ
around (adv)	حول
benefits (n)	فوائد
blood (n)	دم
call (v) – ed	يسمى
cancer (n)	سرطان
chance (n)	فرصة
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية/العمل الخيرى
check (v) – ed (n)	يفحص/فحص
community (n)	مجتمع
desire (v) – d (n)	يرغب/رغبة
donate (v) – d	يتبرع بـ
finals (n)	نهائيات
happen (v) – ed	يحدث
happiness (n)	سعادة
health (n)	صحة
hometown (n)	موطن
illness (n)	مرض
injured (adj)	مصاب
long-term (adj)	طويل المدى
reduce (v) – d	يقلل
regular (adj)	منتظم/معتاد
respect (v) – ed	يحترم
save (v) – d	ينقذ/يوفر
score (v) – d	يحرز
share (v) – d	يشارك
succeed (v) – ed	ينجح
the World Cup (n)	كأس العالم
wish (n)	أمنية

Vocabulary on Listening

amongst (prep.)	فيما بين/وسط	reason (n)	سبب
conservation (n)	حماية البيئة	recognise (v) – d	يتعرف
fondness (n)	ولع/شغف/إعجاب	research (n) (v) – ed	بحث علمي/يقوم بعمل بحث علمي
founder (n)	مُؤَسِّس	shopping (n)	التسوق
generation (n)	جيل	task (n)	مهمة
grow up (v)	ينضج	teenager (n)	مراهق
hunt (v) – ed	يصطاد	traditionally (adv)	تقليديًا
income (n)	دخل	track (v) – ed	يتتبع
instead (adv)	بدلًا من ذلك	views (n)	آراء
knowledge (n)	معرفة		
persuade (v) – d	يقنع		

You don't need to memorise all at once.
You can divide them over 7 days.

Workbook Vocabulary

agreement (n)	اتفاق	intelligence (n)	ذكاء/جهاز المخابرات
compassion (n)	رحمة	movements (n)	حركات
documentary (n)	فيلم وثائقي	run past (v)	يسبق (في الجرى)
great (adj)	عظيم	soccer (n)	كرة القدم

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

badly injured	أصيب بشدة	benefit of	فائدة لـ
give ... a chance	يعطى فرصة	find out	يكتشف
love-hate relationship	علاقة حب ممزوجة بالكراهية	(be) praised for	يُمدح لأجل
on the roof of	على سطح	role model to	مثل أعلى لـ
sense of purpose	الشعور بالهدف/المسئولية	give ... a nickname	يُعطى لقبًا
(be) admired for	يعجب لأجل	give blood	يتبرع بالدم

get angry with	يغضب من شخص	learn from	يتعلم من
send ... to	يرسل ... لـ	move to	ينتقل إلى
take part in	يشارك فى	respect from	احترام من
take the chance	ينتهز الفرصة		

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
admire يعجب بـ	admiration إعجاب admirer معجب	admirable مثير للإعجاب admired معجب admiring معبر عن الإعجاب
benefit* يستفيد	benefit فائدة beneficiary مستفيد	beneficial مفيد/نافع
desire يرغب/يطلب	desirability جاذبية/كون الشىء مرغوبًا فيه desire رغبة	desirable مرغوب فيه
donate يتبرع	donation تبرع donor متبرع	------------------------
found يؤسس	founder مؤسس foundation تأسيس/مؤسسة	founded مرتكز على/مؤسس
------------------------	generosity كرم	generous كريم
injure يجرح	injury إساءة/إصابة	injured مصاب/جريح
regulate يضبط/ينظم	regulation نظام/ترتيب regulator مراقب/منظم	regulatory تنظيمى/تقريرى
succeed ينجح	success نجاح succession تتابع/تداول/تعاقب successor خليفة/من يخلف غيره/وريث	successful ناجح successive متتابع/تسلسلى
traditionalise يجعل شيئًا تقليدًا	tradition تقليد traditionalist شخص متمسك بالتقاليد	traditional تقليدى

* - My sister benefits from the online videos.
- The internet has lots of benefits.
- My allowance is no longer beneficial to me.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

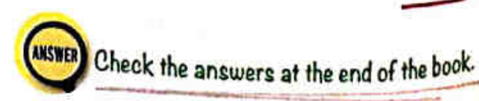
Try to put each row in sentences.

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
benefits	فوائد	advantages/profits	disadvantages/hindrances عيوب/عوائق
find out	يكتشف	discover/detect	conceal/hide يخفي
generous	كريم	open-handed/ big-hearted	mean بخيل
happen	يحدث	occur/take place	cease/stop يتوقف
happiness	سعادة	pleasure/joy	displeasure/sadness حزن
injured	مصاب	wounded/hurt	healthy معافى
long-term	طويل المدى	lasting/durable/ continuing	short-term/temporary قصير المدى/مؤقت
praise	يمدح	appreciate/glorify	condemn/criticise ينتقد/يدين
prestige	احترام (نفوذ/هيبة/وجاهة)	esteem/influence	insignificance/unimportance/ disrespect عدم احترام/عدم أهمية
support	يدعم	aid/assist	desert/abandon يتخلى عن
reduce	يقلل	decrease/cut down	increase/enlarge/expand يزيد/يوسع
take part in	يشارك في	participate in/share with	avoid/hinder/block يتجنب/يعيق

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandmother's .... grew up without electricity or computers.
   a) admiration **b)** generation **c)** tradition **d)** donation
2. The increase of committing crimes has disturbed the whole ....
   a) research **b)** communication **c)** social **d)** community
3. I don't think that exams are the best way to measure ....
   a) intelligence **b)** intelligent **c)** desire **d)** compassion
4. My father needs a kidney .... and we are waiting for a donor.
   a) transport **b)** transplant **c)** transform **d)** transfer
5. We all should .... our parents for all their efforts to raise us well.
   a) criticise **b)** recognise **c)** deny **d)** praise



Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)

People who help

Mohamed Salah



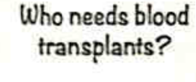
Mohamed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous footballers. He is admired[1] for his speed and ability[2] to score goals. In 2017, he scored the goal to send Egypt to their first World Cup finals since 1990.

Salah has been praised[3] for his kind and generous[4] donations to charity in Egypt. He donated[5] money to his hometown of Nagrig to build a school, and he has helped a children's cancer hospital in Cairo.

Salah's desire[6] to help others is because he wants to give young people a chance to succeed. He is a role model[7] to millions of Egyptians who gave him the nickname[8] 'The Happiness Maker'.

يُحترم (1)
القدرة (2)
امتدح (3)
كريم/سخى (4)
تبرع (5)
رغبة (6)
مثل أعلى/قدوة (7)
لقب/كنية (8)

Reading Text (2)



Blood donors

Every year on 14th June, countries around the world take part in World Blood Donor Day[1] to share information about the importance of giving blood.

Why should people donate blood? Donating blood can help people if they have been badly injured[2] or need regular blood transplants[3] because they have a long-term[4] illness.

Giving blood can also have health benefits[5]. All donors have their blood pressure[6] and iron levels[7] checked before donation, so people who donate blood can find out quickly if they have any health problems. Giving blood can save[8] lives and it is easy to do!

اليوم العالمى للتبرع بالدم (1)
مصاب (2)
زراعة خلايا الدم (النخاع) (3)
طويل الأمد (4)
فوائد (5)
ضغط الدم (6)
مستويات الحديد (7)
ينقذ (8)

How do blood donors have benefits?

Why did Dr Leelah Hazzah move to Kenya?

Listening Text

Interviewer: In today's programme we're talking to Martin Drake about Dr Leelah Hazzah, an Egyptian conservation[1] biologist and founder[2] of Lion Guardians, a conservation project[3] in Kenya. Martin, when did Leelah become interested in lions?

Martin : Well, as a child, her father told her stories about how he listened to lions roaring[4] at night when he was sleeping on the roof of their house during the summer. But when he explained that there weren't any lions left in Egypt, she decided that when she grew up[5], she would find out how to save them in other countries.

Interviewer: What happened next?

Martin : She went to America to study conservation biology[6] and then moved to Kenya to research lions amongst the Maasai people. It was there that she saw how quickly lions were disappearing[7]. Did you know that sixty or fifty years ago there were about 200,000 lions in Africa, but that number is under 20,000 now?

Interviewer: So why are lions disappearing so quickly?

Martin : There are several reasons. People have built houses in the areas that lions traditionally[8] hunt, so they can't find enough food to eat and, so they attack[9] the villagers' livestock[10], you know, their cows and goats. The villagers get angry with the lions and kill them in order to protect their animals. Another reason is prestige[11] – in Maasai culture, young men get a lot of respect[12] from killing a lion. They are even given a lion name which shows that they are no longer a boy, but a man.

Interviewer : What did Leelah do?

Martin : She lived with the Maasai for a year and listened to their views[13] about lions. She learnt that they have a love-hate relationship with lions; they admire their beauty but hate them for eating their cattle. She also understood the prestige that came from being a lion killer[14] and realised that she needed to persuade[15] the young men that

محافظة على البيئة (1)
مؤسس (2)
مشروع (3)
يزأر (صوت الأسد) (4)
يكبر (5)
علم حماية الأحياء (6)
يختفي (7)
تقليديًا (8)
يهجم (9)
ماشية (10)
هيبة (11)
احترام (12)
الآراء (13)
قاتل (14)
يقنع (15)

keeping livestock and having a job gave them more prestige than killing a lion, so she started to teach them about the advantages[16] of protecting lions instead.

Interviewer : Is that when she started Lion Guardians?

Martin : Yes. Lion Guardians is an organisation that employs local people[17] to look for lions in order to protect them. Remember, these young men already have the skills needed to track[18] lions in the wild, so they are taught to become lion guardians rather than lion killers. The organisation gives them a job and teaches them to read and write, so they can help conservations with their research.

Interviewer : How successful is the programme?

Martin : Very successful. Maasai men now have jobs, a regular income[19] and a sense of purpose[20]. They get to know the lions they are protecting and even give them names and talk about them with fondness[21].

Interviewer : And finally, what can other conservationists learn from Lion Guardians?

Martin : The importance of listening to people in the community[22] and to recognise how much knowledge[23] local people have. By working together both the locals and conservations can benefit.

Interviewer : Thank you, Martin. And at 8 o'clock tonight you can see a ...

(16) مزايا
(17) السكان المحليين
(18) يتتبع
(19) دخل منتظم
(20) الشعور بالهدف/المسئولية
(21) شغف/حب
(22) مجتمع
(23) معرفة

What did Dr Leelah Hazzah do to keep lions?

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Our soldiers .... some enemy planes on the radar screen.
   a) tricked b) trucked c) ticked d) tracked
2. I've always .... him for being such a wonderful teacher.
   a) admired b) hated c) despised d) liked
3. My daughter's .... was "the little queen" when she was young.
   a) first name b) surname c) nickname d) pen name
4. I had a very severe headache because of the high blood ....
   a) stress b) levels c) donation d) pressure
5. Dr. Magdy Yacoub is the .... of Aswan Heart Centre.
   a) finder b) founder c) foundation d) finding

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Think in English and use an English-English dictionary.

Vocabulary in Use



FOCUS on Vocabulary

blood pressure ضغط الدم
- a measure of the pressure at which blood flows through the body

generous كريم
- willing to give money, help, etc. especially more than is usual

iron levels مستويات الحديد (فى الدم)
- iron is a chemical element (symbol Fe) which exists in small amounts in the blood. The level is the amount or quantity of iron present.

long-term طويل المدى
- continuing for a long time into the future

prestige احترام
- the respect and admiration that someone or something gets because of their success or important position in society

roar زئير
- a deep, loud noise made by an animal such as a lion

role model مثل أعلى
- a person who people admire and whose behaviour they try to copy

speed سرعة
- how fast something moves or travels

desire رغبة
- a strong feeling that you want something

transplant زراعة الأعضاء
- medical operations in which a new organ is put into someone's body

admire
يعجب بـ

- to respect and approve of a person or their behaviour

donate
يتبرع بـ

- to give money or goods to help a person or an organisation

Notes on Vocabulary

1 **help**



help + (object مفعول) +

- (inf.)
  - Who helped you do your homework?
- (to + inf.)
  - Who helped you to do your homework?
- (with + noun)
  - Who helped you with your homework?



لا أستطيع أن أمنع نفسي من

(I can't help + v-ing)

- When I see this picture, I can't help laughing.

2

blood transplant عمليـة زرع خلايـا الـدم «النخـاع» (لمريض سرطان الدم مثلًا)	Although blood transplant is an effective treatment for some conditions, it can cause complications.
blood transfusion عملية نقل الدم العادى	Blood transfusion is a way of adding blood to your body after an illness or injury.

3

nickname لقب/كنية	At school, her nickname was "Carrots" because of her red hair.
surname اسم العائلة	Probably no one had called him by his surname since he was in the army.
first name = forename اسم الشخص	What's your mother's first name?
pen name اسم مستعار	Under pen name, she starts writing reviews for a newspaper.

another + اسم مفرد آخر (للمفرد) (شـــيء آخر إضافـــي أو مختلف) تأتي بعـد another (الكميـات – المسـافات – فترات الوقت – المبالغ المالية) :	‣ I like this cake. Can I have another piece? ‣ This pen is broken. Give me another one, please. ‣ I want to stay in this hotel for another 6 days. (فترة من الوقت)
4 **other +** اسم جمع (آخرون) **others +** فعل الآخرون (لا يأتي بعدها اسم، وتفيد الجمع أيضًا)	‣ Some people like English. Other people don't like it. ‣ Some people like English. Others don't like it.
the other + اسم مفرد أو جمع **the others +** فعل الآخرون (للجمع) يأتي بعدها فعل وقد لا يأتي	‣ You gave me one pen. Where is the other (pen)? ‣ You gave me one pen. Where are the other pens? ‣ You gave me one pen. Where are the others? ‣ There are 50 students in my class; 30 like English but the others don't.

decide to + inf. يقرر أن	‣ She decided to go out.
5 **decide on + noun** يختار/يحدد	‣ You have to decide on your goal in life.
decide that + subject + verb يقرر أن	‣ He decided that you should attend.

reason for + noun/(v-ing) سبب لـ	‣ The police asked her about the reason for her visit. ‣ Could you explain your reasons for choosing this job?
6 **The reason why + (subject) + (verb)** سبب لـ	‣ The reason why so many people caught the flu is still not clear.
reason with + شخص يجادل (شخص)	‣ Please, don't reason with me, the matter is over.
cause of + noun/(v-ing) سبب لـ	‣ The major cause of these accidents is that drivers go too fast.

instead of + (noun/v-ing) بدلًا من	He travelled to Alexandria instead of staying at home.
instead, + subject + verb بدلًا من ذلك	Instead, he travelled to Alexandria to attend the conference.
Subject + verb + ..., instead بدلًا من ذلك	He travelled to Alexandria to attend the conference, instead.

7

respected يلقى الاحترام (محترم)	My friend is a respected doctor. All people respect him.
respectful يظهر الاحترام للآخرين (محترم)	All of us should be respectful to authority.
respectable محترم أو مناسب من وجهة نظر المجتمع	She comes from a respectable family. Please, try to wear something respectable to the party.

8

To be fluent, focus on these notes well.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- Donating blood can help people if they have been badly injured.

غالبًا يسبق الحال الصفة خاصة إذا كانت الصفة منتهية بـ ed.

- All donors have their blood pressure and iron levels checked.

عند اســتخدام (have-get) + something + (P.P.) والتى تســمى قاعدة الســببية وتعنى أن شخصــًا آخر قام بالفعل وليس فاعل الجملة.

- The organisation works with the community to help both the lions and the livestock.

كلمة community تعنى مجتمعًا (أشخاصًا يعيشون فى نفس المكان أو لهم نفس المهنة) ... أما كلمة society فهى تعنى المجتمع بشكل عام.

- Salah has been praised for his kind and generous donations to charity.
We should donate money to charities to help the poor.

كلمة charity إذا جاءت بمعنى (جمعية خيرية) فهى اسم يعد ... أما إذا جاءت بمعنى (العمل الخيرى) فهى اسم لا يعد.

▸ Mohamed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous footballers.

لاحظ أن صيغة التفضيل هنا بدون the لوجود الملكية 's أو أي صفة ملكية my – his – her – our – your – their

▸ How successful is the programme?

هنا كلمة How سواء للتعجب أو الاستفهام يأتي بعدها الصفة أما مع الاسم نستخدم What.

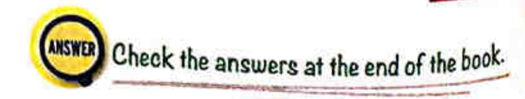
▸ What a success the programme achieved!

▸ People who donate blood can find out if they have any health problems.

هنا كلمة health مع المشكلات بمعنى مشاكل صحية ولا يصح استخدام ~~healthy problems~~ بالترجمة الحرفية.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Drivers mustn't exceed the .... limit on highways.
   a) spot b) speed
   c) fast d) speedy
2. Mr Shreif suffered from many .... problems before he was taken to a hospital in Germany.
   a) health b) healthy
   c) death d) wealth
3. Our teacher gave us many .... chances to improve our marks.
   a) another b) the other
   c) other d) the others
4. Can you help me .... my homework, Mom?
   a) in b) to
   c) for d) with
5. To live well, one should get a .... salary.
   a) respect b) respective
   c) respectable d) respectful





Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 It was very .... of your brother to help you and lend you all that money.
a) greedy b) generous c) mean d) miserable

2 Many famous actors support .... that help disabled people.
a) generations b) locations c) clubs d) charities

3 She suffered from high blood .... before her death. مدرسة الزنكلون الثانوية - الزقازيق ٢٠٢٢
a) sugar b) transplant c) force d) pressure

4 The Egyptian economy is in a bad need for our sincere ....
a) disagreement b) supposition c) oppression d) support

5 Donating blood can help people if they need regular blood .... إدارة المرج التعليمية ٢٠٢٢
a) transports b) transmits c) transforms d) transplants

6 After a long argument with my colleagues, I had no .... to say another word.
a) desire b) hatred c) design d) affection

7 I .... the man who I met last week, but I couldn't remember his name.
a) realised b) understood c) organised d) recognised

8 Many people are attracted by the .... of working for a top company. كفر صقر بنات - الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
a) livestock b) party c) prestige d) blood

9 Yesterday, I watched a very wonderful .... about some rare marine creatures.
a) documentary b) document c) research d) commentary

10 The headmaster gave me the .... of organising the school trip.
a) profession b) work c) task d) location

11 The builders have only just started to lay the .... of the new school.
a) situations b) organisations c) establishments d) foundations

12 Before the operation, a nurse should check the blood .... of the patient.
a) leisure b) temperature c) pressure d) treasure

13 The company had a fairly .... contract عقد that will last for few months.
a) full-term b) half-term c) short-term d) long-term

14 In the second half, our national team came .... back with two goals in five minutes. مدرسة الزنكلون الثانوية - الزقازيق ٢٠٢٢
a) crying b) weeping c) noisy d) roaring

15 I don't know the reason .... his absence is frequent these days.
a) for b) with c) why d) of

16 I don't know the reason .... his frequent absence these days.
a) for b) with c) why d) of

No, it's not a repeated question.

17 Mr Magdy always .... angry with the students if they do something wrong.
a) gives b) gets c) makes d) does

18 The rich should .... money to charities to help the poor. المنزلة الثانوية - الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
a) donate b) steal c) rob d) own

19 My mother's .... to cancer research was very generous.
a) donated b) donation c) donor d) donating

20 It was very difficult to .... the child to tell us what had happened to her.
a) persuade b) persuasion c) persuasive d) persuades

21 I was not .... enough to make the child tell us what had happened to her.
a) persuade b) persuasion c) persuasive d) persuades

22 Studying hard is really .... to every student.
a) benefit b) beneficiary c) beneficial d) benefits

23 The players were completely ready to take .... in the competition.
a) place b) apart c) share d) part

24 Parents should be the role models .... their children.
a) to b) in c) with d) at

25 What makes all the Egyptians admire Mohamed Salah is that he is ....
a) generous b) generosity c) generously d) genre

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 Our teacher always helps us .... our lessons easily.
a) study b) studying c) to study d) to studying e) studies

27 We all should try hard to .... our goals in life.
a) score b) sit c) arrive d) reach e) achieve

28 Hosting استضافة the Handball World Cup added to our country's international prestige. The synonyms of the word "prestige" are .... and ....
a) esteem b) influence c) profit d) satisfaction e) displeasure

29 A terrible accident happened on the way to Cairo yesterday. The meanings of "happened" are .... and ....
a) occurred b) took place c) increased d) stopped e) ceased

30 Passing my exams is one of the main sources of my happiness. The opposites of the word "happiness" are .... and ....
a) pleasure b) joy c) sorrow d) amusement e) sadness





Lessons 1 & 2

B Language

1 The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

TIMELINE

Present

Past | Future

Form

Positive

He/She/It + v. + s/es/(y ies)

• He visits his uncle every weekend.

I/They/We/You + inf.

• I like oranges and bananas.

Negative

He/She/It + doesn't + inf.

• Nada doesn't eat fish.

I/They/We/You + don't + inf.

• My parents don't watch TV.

Question

Does (he/she/it) + inf.?

• Does Mona study her lessons?

Do (I/they/we/you) + inf.?

• Do they work hard?

Wh- word + do/does + subj. + inf.?

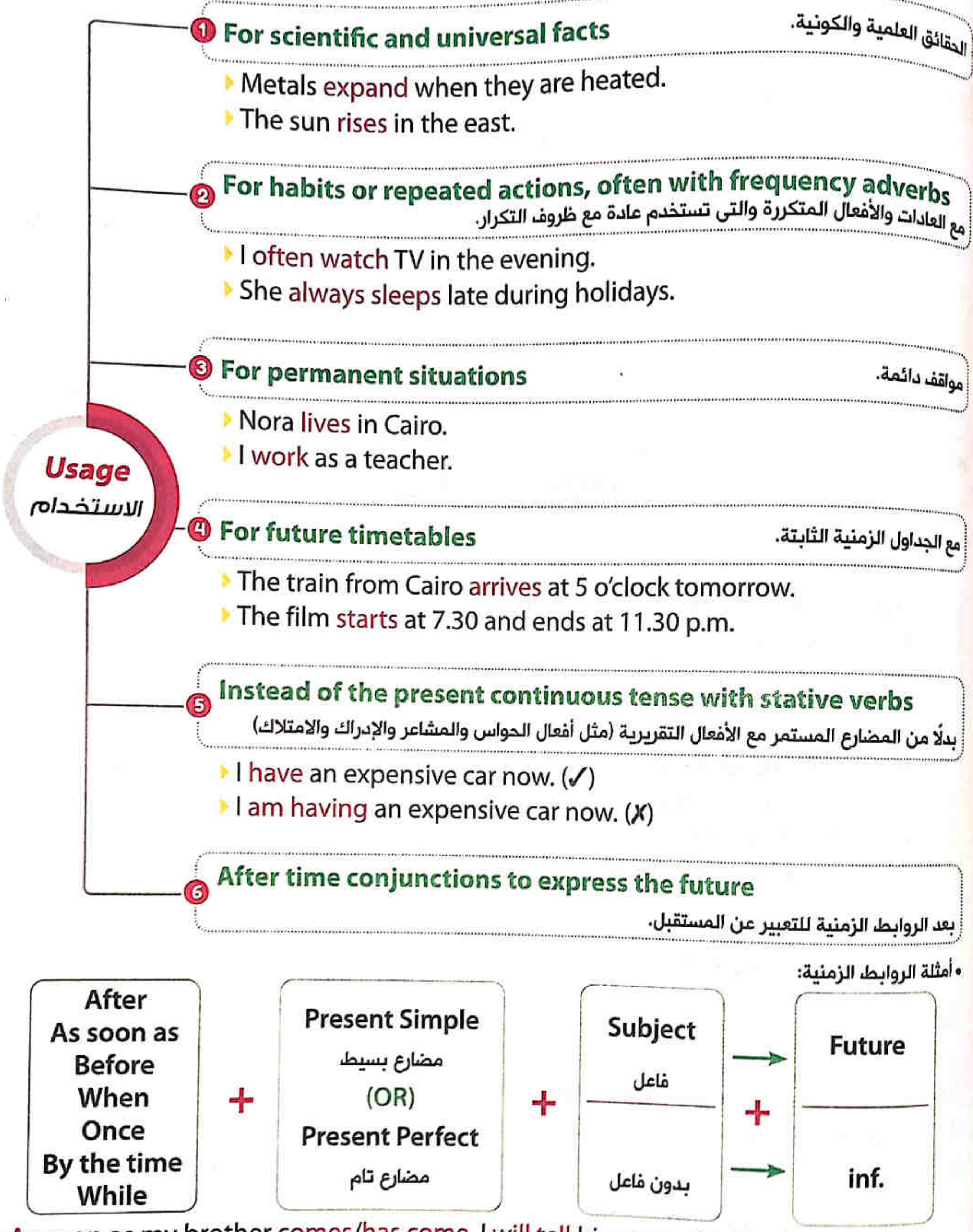
• Where do you live?

Passive

Obj. + am/is/are + P.P.

• People speak English all over the world. (Active)

• English is spoken all over the world. (Passive)



Usage الاستخدام

1. **For scientific and universal facts** الحقائق العلمية والكونية.
   - Metals expand when they are heated.
   - The sun rises in the east.

2. **For habits or repeated actions, often with frequency adverbs** مع العادات والأفعال المتكررة والتى تستخدم عادة مع ظروف التكرار.
   - I often watch TV in the evening.
   - She always sleeps late during holidays.

3. **For permanent situations** مواقف دائمة.
   - Nora lives in Cairo.
   - I work as a teacher.

4. **For future timetables** مع الجداول الزمنية الثابتة.
   - The train from Cairo arrives at 5 o'clock tomorrow.
   - The film starts at 7.30 and ends at 11.30 p.m.

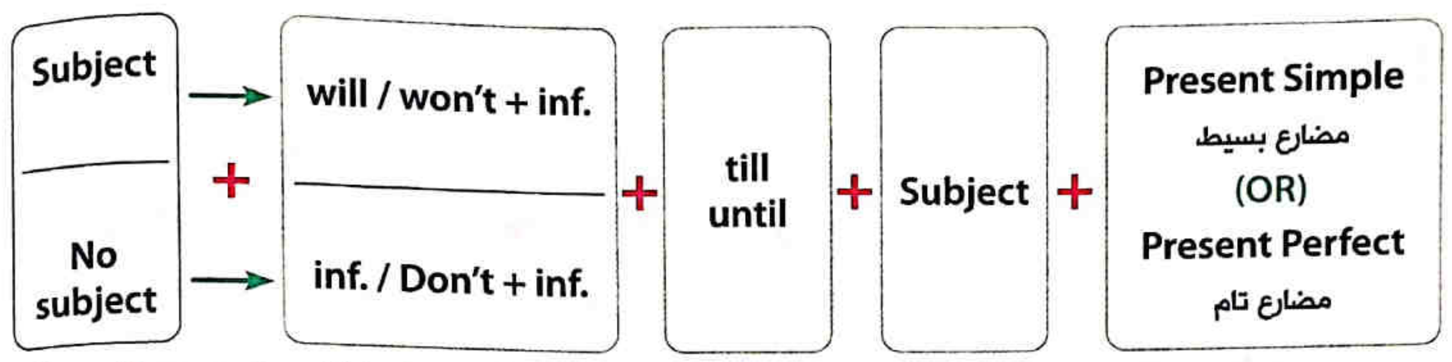
5. **Instead of the present continuous tense with stative verbs** بدلًا من المضارع المستمر مع الأفعال التقريرية (مثل أفعال الحواس والمشاعر والإدراك والامتلاك)
   - I have an expensive car now. (✓)
   - I am having an expensive car now. (✗)

6. **After time conjunctions to express the future** بعد الروابط الزمنية للتعبير عن المستقبل.

• أمثلة الروابط الزمنية:

After / As soon as / Before / When / Once / By the time / While	+	Present Simple مضارع بسيط (OR) Present Perfect مضارع تام	+	Subject فاعل / بدون فاعل	→ + →	Future / inf.

- As soon as my brother comes/has come, I will tell him everything.
- They are going to sleep after the film ends/has ended.
- By the time she sleeps/has slept, try to phone her.



- I won't go out until I phone/have phoned my friends.
- I will wait till my father comes/has come.
- Wait until he calls his father to come.
- Don't sleep till you finish/have finished studying your lessons.

Present Habits العادات فى المضارع

	شيء من المعتاد فعله
(1) Subject + (am/is/are) + used to + (v-ing), noun or a pronoun. He is used to sleeping early.	
(2) It is + (someone's/صفة ملكية) + habit to + inf. It is her habit to study at night.	
(3) Subject + (am/is/are) + in the habit of + (v-ing/Noun) He is in the habit of going to the shops early.	
(4) Subject + (always/usually /often/...) + فعل فى زمن المضارع البسيط She always gets up early.	
(5) It is + habitual معتاد + for + (someone/ضمير مفعول) + to + inf. It is habitual for him to watch TV at night.	



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: ?

- We .... to having breakfast at the terrace. We feel more comfortable.

a) used
b) are used
c) use
d) using

الإجابة هى (b) لأن العادة ما زالت قائمة بدليل وجود المضارع البسيط فى الجملة التالية، وللتعبير عن العادات القائمة نستخدم v. to be + used to + v.ing

Key words

1. Adverbs of Frequency ظروف التكرار

always	sometimes	often	regularly
How often	seldom	generally	usually
occasionally	frequently		never
rarely	hardly ever	scarcely	in general

always = at all times
usually = as usual = as ever
occasionally = from time to time = now and again

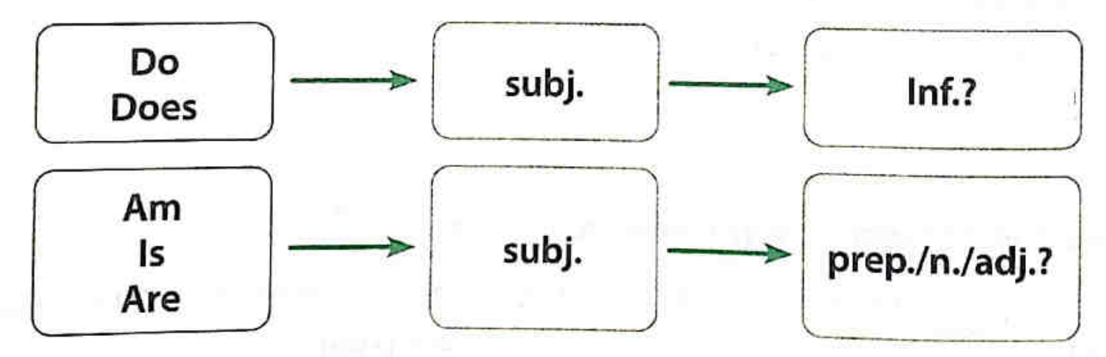
- Rasha always sleeps late. = Rasha sleeps late at all times.
- I go to the zoo with my children from time to time.
  = I occasionally go to the zoo with my children.

2. Adverbs of Time ظروف زمنية

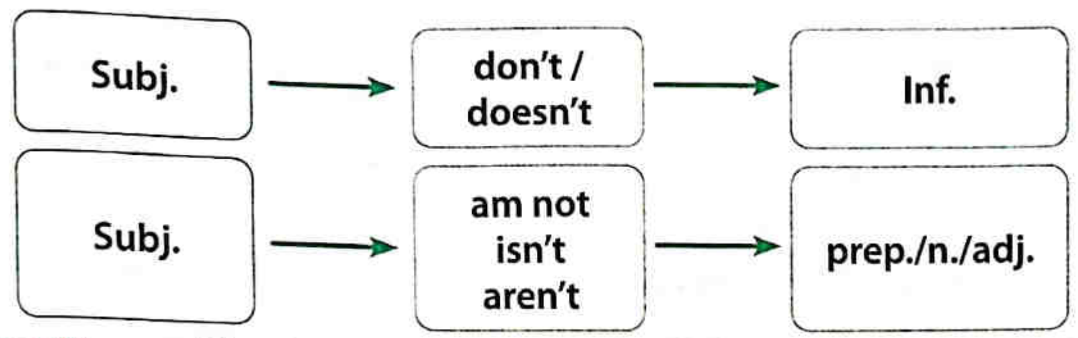
- **every/each** (week/month/year/...)
- **in the** (morning, afternoon/evening)
- **at night/at noon/on** (Fridays/Sundays/...)
- **at the weekend/once/twice/three times a** (week/month/year/...)
- **daily/weekly/monthly/yearly = annually**

Important Notes





- Are you busy studying your lessons today?
- What is your father's job?
- Do you study on Fridays?
- Where does your father work?



- She doesn't like watching football matches.
- They aren't happy because of losing the match.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Are the children .... the garden now?

a) playing **b)** play **c)** played **d)** in

الإجابة هى (d) لأن السؤال عن حروف الجر يكون باستخدام v. to be ولا يمكن استعمال playing لعدم وجود حرف الجر in بعدها.



١) تأتى ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسى وبعد (v. to be).

- He usually comes to work early.
- He is always proud of his country.

٢) من الممكن أن تأتى (usually/sometimes) فى بداية الجملة أو فى آخرها.

- Usually I drive my car to school.
- I play football with my friends sometimes.

٣) تأتى الظروف الزمنية إما فى بداية الجملة وإما فى نهايتها.

- I go to school every day.
- Every day, I go to school.

٤) لاحظ أن never لا تلغى (s/es) المضافة للفعل فى المضارع مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب.

- Nora never comes late.

doesn't + inf. = never + verb + s

don't + inf. = never + inf.

٥) ظروف التكرار الدالة على العادة مثل: every – usually – often – always من الممكن أن تستخدم للتعبير عن عادة كانت تحدث فى الماضى مع وجود إشارة للماضى.

- They went to the club every day during the last holiday.
- Hana always slept early when she was young.

2 Past Simple

زمن الماضى البسيط

تم شرح زمن الماضى البسيط فى الوحدة السابقة، وللمراجعة السريعة عليه نتذكر ما يلى:

- We travelled to Tanta yesterday. — حدث بدأ وانتهى
- He often slept late when he was young. — عادة كانت تحدث فى الماضى
- First, we met our friends and then we went to the cinema together. — تتابع الأحداث
- I didn't see my friend when I went to the party. — نفى الماضى البسيط
- How did you win the last football match? — السؤال فى الماضى البسيط
- A very good match between Egypt and Nigeria was played yesterday. — المبنى للمجهول

من الممكن استخدام for مع زمن الماضى البسيط عند وجود دليل على انتهاء الحدث تماماً.

- He worked in this company for 20 years. He retired a month ago.

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 In the solar system, all planets .... around the sun in orbits.
a) move b) moves
c) moved d) moving

2 Water .... into steam when you boil it.
a) turns b) turn
c) is turning d) has turned

3 Mona .... TV and goes to bed late every day.
a) watch b) watches
c) is watching d) watched

4 He .... gets up early. He is always late.
a) doesn't b) never
c) didn't d) won't

5 Many people .... to the stadium to watch the final match yesterday.
a) had gone b) went
c) have been d) was going



Check the answers at the end of the book.



Language Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

I think number one is (b), isn't it?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The shop opens at 9 a.m. and .... at 10 p.m. every day.
a) closing b) closes c) close d) is closing

2 Hamed sometimes .... articles for his school magazine.
a) write b) was writing c) is writing d) writes

3 We usually .... our grandparents before their death.
a) visit b) visits c) visited d) have visited

4 It rarely .... in Egypt except in some areas of Sinai.
a) snow b) snowed c) snows d) is snowing

5 In the past, it .... in Egypt all the winter and the weather was warm and sunny.
a) didn't rain b) doesn't rain c) hadn't rained d) hasn't rained

6 As soon as my father .... home, I will tell him to take us on a picnic.
a) came b) have come c) comes d) come

7 They .... English novels and books very often. They rarely do.
a) don't read b) always read c) didn't read d) never read

8 I last .... my friend Magda when we were in Alexandria.
a) have seen b) see c) had seen d) saw

9 The sun .... rises from the west. إدارة المرج - القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) doesn't b) always c) never d) no longer

10 Most shops in Cairo .... until 9:00. مدرسة الزقازيق الثانوية بنات - الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
a) opens b) don't open c) aren't opening d) is opened

11 When I was 15 years old, I usually .... much time with my friends outside home.
a) spend b) was spending c) had spent d) spent

12 Maya .... to her school in her father's car. She rarely walks to school.
a) goes usually b) usually goes c) go usually d) usually go

13 **A:** .... Magdy usually late for school? **B:** Yes, Sir. مدرسة بنى محمد سلطان - المنيا ٢٠٢٢
a) Does b) Has c) Is d) Did

14 It is her habit to sleep late. She .... this.
a) used to b) has been used c) was used to d) is used to

15 He reached home, ... off his dirty clothes and had a shower.
a) took b) take c) had taken d) takes

16 I didn't do anything wrong, so I don't know why I .... yesterday.
a) punished b) was punished
c) am punished d) wasn't punished

إدارة المقطم والخليفة - القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

17 Salma is so punctual, she .... comes late.
a) doesn't b) won't c) will d) never

18 My brother didn't use to be busy, but now he ....
a) was b) is c) does d) has

19 My father works as a doctor. He .... busy treating patients.
a) always is b) is always c) is always being d) always

20 I .... a meeting to discuss some problems in the company today, and now everything is OK.
a) have b) had had c) had d) am having

21 They left the house early as their bus to Cairo .... at exactly 7 a.m.
a) leaves b) left c) leave d) had left

22 Nothing else .... to help the patient yesterday, so he became in a serious case.
a) didn't do b) is done c) wasn't done d) was done

23 No doubt we all .... what our teacher said about organising our work.
a) remembers b) are remembering c) had remembered d) remember

24 I .... English a lot better now as we've got a creative teacher.
a) am understanding b) understands
c) understood d) understand

25 A: .... your parents usually donate blood? B: Yes, they always do so.

مدرسة كفر صقر الثانوية بنات - الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

a) Do b) Did c) Why d) When

26 The plane lands at 5 o'clock tomorrow. This is a ....
a) present habit b) future fact c) timetable d) hope

27 My friend lives in Alexandria. This means ....
a) he doesn't live there
b) it was his place of living one day
c) this is his temporary place of living
d) this is his permanent place of living

28 The final match starts at 10 o'clock. This means ....
a) the final match never starts at 10 o'clock
b) the final match might start at 10 o'clock
c) the final match used to start at 10 o'clock
d) the final match time is set to start at 10 o'clock by a timetable

29 Liverpool is loved by everyone in our family. This means ....
a) everyone in our family loves Liverpool
b) everyone in our family is loving Liverpool
c) Liverpool players love everyone in our family
d) Liverpool loves everyone in our family

30 I don't work hard any longer. This means I ....
a) work hard b) used to work hard
c) haven't stopped working hard d) didn't use to work hard

Test Yourself in 20 min





Unit 2
Lessons 1 & 2

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 More .... is needed into the effects of COVID-19 on different body organs.
a) search b) reservation c) recovery d) research

2 Mr Ahmed has a negative .... about politics. He doesn't like it at all.
a) scene b) view c) sight d) scenery

3 Damanhour University was .... in 2010. It consisted of 12 colleges at that time.
a) found b) founded c) published d) designed

4 A love-hate .... is when you have feelings of love and hate for someone or something.
a) relationship b) fondness c) foundation d) participation

5 The new educational system will be of great .... to students and teachers.
a) standard b) injury c) benefit d) level

6 Mohamed Salah is one of the world's .... players.
a) better than b) least c) the best d) best

7 After the exam, I .... that I had made a lot of mistakes.
a) relieved b) realised c) summarised d) memorised

8 I saw a lot of familiar faces .... the crowd in the street yesterday.
a) above b) before c) amongst d) below

9 My son helped me .... my car.
a) wash b) to washing c) washed d) washes

10 It .... warm, so I don't often wear heavy clothes.
a) is always b) always is c) was always d) always was

11 If I .... money, I will ask you to lend me some.
a) needed b) need c) am needing d) was needing

12 The River Nile .... through Sudan and Egypt.
a) run b) ran c) runs d) was running

13 My son .... plays in the club. He really enjoys it.
a) ever b) always c) doesn't d) never

14 Students .... by their teachers to do well in their exams. It is part of the teaching profession.
a) encourage b) were encouraged
c) are encouraging d) are encouraged

15 Noha no longer .... horror films as she used to.
a) watches b) watched c) is watching d) watch

16 I am not a politician سياسي and I .... to any political party.
a) don't belong b) am not belonging to
c) never belongs d) was never belong to

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Man cannot live in society without considering the interests of others as well as their own interests. The word "society" means a group of people with the same laws and the same way of life. People in society may make their own decisions, but these decisions should not be harmful to others. One man's decisions may so easily harm another person. For example, a motorist may be in a hurry to get to a friend's house. He sets out, driving at full speed. One careless motorist has struck another car. Too many road accidents happen through the thoughtlessness of selfish drivers. We have governments, the police and the law courts to prevent or punish such criminal acts. But in addition, all men ought to observe certain rules of conduct. Every man ought to behave with consideration for other people.

He ought not to steal, cheat, or destroy the property of others. There is no place for this sort of behaviour in a civilised society. Men in a free society may think as they please. They may even choose their own government. In return for these privileges, they ought not to act selfishly. They ought always to respect the rights of others. The happiness of a community depends on the behaviour of its individual members.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The main idea of the passage clearly shows that ....
  a) every man ought to behave as he likes
  b) men ought to act selfishly
  c) no one can have his own way all the time
  d) many road accidents happen through careful drivers

2 In a free society, ...
  a) people usually want to have their own way
  b) a man never considers the interests of others
  c) people are told what to think by government rules
  d) everyone ought to behave selfishly

3 It is .... to respect the rights of others.
  a) right and thoughtless
  b) not really necessary
  c) very selfish
  d) right and thoughtful

4 Members of a civilised society usually ....

a) steal and cheat
b) harm the interests of others
c) behave in a responsible way
d) disrespect the rights of others

5 The underlined word "its" refers to ....

a) happiness b) behaviour
c) community d) village

6 There is no place for .... in a civilised society.

a) development b) accidents
c) bad behaviors d) happiness

7 The word "privileges" in the passage means ....

a) disadvantages b) special rights
c) drawbacks d) decisions

8 To stop criminal acts and punish those who do them, we must have ....

a) governments b) the police
c) law courts d) all mentioned

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Our parents exert[1] great efforts to please us and provide a happy, secure[2] life for us. We really owe much to them.

....

....

2. At the international level, Salah represented Egypt at youth level, winning a bronze medal in the African under 20 Cup of Nations.

....

....

3. Natural disasters[3] like earthquakes, hurricanes[4] and volcanoes can cause tremendous[5] havoc[6].

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- لكى نتمكن من الحياة بسعادة وارتياح، هناك سبيل واحد و هو أن يتم منحنا الفرصة الحقيقية للحصول على تعليم جيد لنتكمن من الحصول على عمل جيد فى المستقبل.

....

....

٢- إن مصر فى انتظار جهود الأبناء والعلماء وأهل الفكر والإبداع[٧] وتتطلع إلى أبنائها المخلصين لاتخاذ خطوات فعالة[٨] للارتقاء[٩] بالأمة.

....

....

٣- يجب أن يكون المتبرع بالدم فى وضع صحى لائق ليُقبل تبرعه دون التأثير على صحته. ويجب أن يبقى لمدة ٥ دقائق تحت الملاحظة الطبية[١٠].

....

....

How to translate

١- لـ + اسم يتم ترجمتها الى to + inf.

٢- كلمات التوكيد مثل (إن) ليس لها ترجمة.

٣- الجملة فى اللغة الإنجليزية لابد أن تبدأ بالفاعل.

تحاول الكثير من الدول تحسين اقتصادها.

- A lot of countries try to improve their economy.

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

1. A biography about a famous scientist.

2. Different ways to support community.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. — I used the right structure. — I used a topic sentence. — I wrote the conclusion. — I used the right punctuation.

(1) يبذل
(2) آمن
(3) كوارث
(4) أعاصير
(5) هائل
(6) دمار
(7) creation
(8) effective
(9) promotion
(10) medical observation





Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

★ Link the new vocabulary to your daily life. My aim is to be an engineer.

Vocabulary on Reading

*aim (n)	هدف	missing (adj)	مفقود
amazing (adj)	مذهل/مدهش	monitor (v) – ed	يراقب
attack (v) – ed	يهاجم	movements (n)	حركات
biologist (n)	عالم أحياء	nearby (adj)	قريب
cattle (n)	الماشية	organisation (n)	منظمة
change (v) – d	يغير	protect (v) – ed	يحمى
disappear (v) – ed	يختفى	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
employ (v) – ed	يوظف	safe (adj)	آمن
guardian (n)	وصى/حامٍ - حارس	skills (n)	مهارات
hunting (n)	الصيد	together (adv)	معًا
killings (n)	عمليات القتل	track (v) – ed	يتتبع
livestock (n)	ماشية	understand (v)	يفهم
local (adj)	محلى	villagers (n)	سكان القرى

Workbook Vocabulary

appearance (n)	مظهر خارجى	paw print (n)	أثر بصمة (مخلب) حيوان
ecosystem (n)	النظام البيئى	personality (n)	شخصية
empathy (n)	مشاركة وجدانية	recent (adj)	حديث
estimate (v) – d	يقدر	signs (n)	علامات
experts (n)	خبراء	tribe (n)	قبيلة
follow (v) – ed	يتبع/يرصد	sense (n)	حاسة
headquarters (n)	المركز الرئيسى	path (n)	ممر/طريق
locate (v) – d	يوجد/يقع فى		

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

Expression	Meaning	Expression	Meaning
(be) based in	القائم فى/الموجود فى	go missing/get lost	يتوه/يضل الطريق
(be) based on	قائم على	make sure	يتأكد
do research	يقوم بعمل بحث	expert at/on/in	خبير فى
important to	مهم لـ	search for	يبحث عن
interested in	مهتم بـ	thanks to	بفضل
look for	يبحث عن	worry about	يقلق على
give a sense of	يعطى إحساسًا بـ	help in	يساعد فى

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
amaze	يدهش	amazement	دهشة/إعجاب	amazed amazing	مندهش مدهش
estimate*	يقدر	estimation	تقدير	estimated	مقدر
locate	يقع فى/يوجد	location	موقع	located	موجود فى موقع
save	ينقذ/يوفر	safety safe	أمان خزينة	safe	آمن

* - We need to estimate the distance.
- The estimation needs to be accurate.
- The estimated distance is quite accurate.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
amazing	مدهش	astonishing/ unbelievable	believable/ordinary معقول/عادى
attack	هجوم	invasion/aggression	defence/resistance دفاع/مقاومة
disappear	يختفى	vanish/cease	appear/come out يظهر
employ	يوظف	hire/appoint	fire/discharge يطرد
hope	أمل	longing/ambition/ desire	despair/hopelessness يأس
missing	مفقود	lost/absent	present/found حاضر/موجود
understand	يفهم	grasp/comprehend	misunderstand يسىء الفهم
nearby	قريب	close/near	far/faraway/distant/remote بعيد/بعيد جدًا

Reading Text

What things do you think can threaten cattle?

Working together



Lions are disappearing all over Africa but there is some hope[1] now after the amazing work of an organisation called Lion Guardians, which is based[2] in Kenya, but Guardians help in nearby[3] Tanzania. The aim of Lion Guardians is to help local people to protect their own livestock[4] and reduce the number of lion killings in the area.

(1) أمل
(2) تقع
(3) مجاور
(4) ماشية
(5) ماشية
(6) يراقب
(7) حفلات الصيد
(8) علماء الأحياء

Cattle[5] are important to the villagers but they often go missing or are attacked by lions. Then the lions are killed as villagers worry about losing more livestock.

Lion Guardians is changing this. The organisation works with the community to help both the lions and the livestock and this is done by employing local people. Maasai men are chosen to become guardians as they understand lions and have the skills needed to monitor[6] their movements, find missing livestock and stop hunting parties[7] who kill the lions for sport. They are taught to be field biologists[8] and are given a sense of responsibility.

Lions are monitored every day and the information is sent to the cattle farmers who can then make sure their cows are safe.

Lion Guardians are very successful. They help the future of lions as well as the local communities.

What is the main task lion guardians do?

Workbook Text

Maasai Tracking

The Maasai are experts at tracking[1] animals and lions are the most well-known animals that they follow. But how do they do it? The lions are tracked by the Maasai, who use all their senses[2] to follow them.

When a paw print[3] is discovered, it is checked to see if it is an old paw print or a recent[4] one. Then the path is followed by the Maasai until the lions are found.

While they are tracking the lions, the Maasai are listening and looking for signs[5] to help them discover where they are. In the past, the Maasai might kill a lion when they found one. Today, lions are protected by the Maasai from hunting parties[6] and at the same time the local people's cows are safe. Thanks to the Lion Guardians, everyone is happy!

(1) تتبع

(2) حواس

(3) اثر (بصمة) مخلب

(4) حديث

(5) إشارات

(6) جماعات الصيد

Think in English and use an English-English dictionary.

Vocabulary in Use



Notes on Vocabulary

1

work with	يعمل مع	All the nurses in this hospital are qualified to work with children.
work for	يعمل لدى/يعمل لصالح	My brother works for a big company in the city. Egypt works for peace in the Middle East.
work in	يعمل فى (مكان/مجال)	I hope to work in medical research when I'm older. I work in Al-Salam company which is in October City.
work on	يعمل على (مشروع/إنجاز)	The writer said that he was working on a new novel.
work as	يعمل (بوظيفة)	My grandfather worked as a journalist in Al-Ahram Newspaper.

2

jobs ending with –ist
وظائف تنتهى بالمقطع **–ist**

scientist	عالم	biologist	عالم أحياء
pharmacist	صيدلانى	oculist	طبيب عيون
motorist	قائد مركبة	novelist	روائى
archaeologist	عالم آثار	artist	فنان/رسام

3

as well as (v + ing OR noun بالإضافة إلى (تتبعها		As well as studying English, he studied physics and maths.
as well as بالإضافة إلى (تربط بين فاعلين ،و فعل الجملة يتبع الفاعل الأول)		I as well as Ali like eating fish.

4

own	يمتلك	He owns a big flat on the Nile bank.
owe	يدين	He owes some money to his friend.
lend	يسلف	His friend lent him some money.
borrow	يستلف	He borrowed some money from his friend.

5

recent	حديث (من فترة قصيرة)/قريب العهد	This is a recent photo of my daughter.
modern	حديث/عصرى	Do you prefer modern or classical music?

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- Then the path is followed by the Maasai until the lions are found.

- تربط until بين أزمنة مختلفة أو متشابهة وهنا تربط بين جملتين فى زمن المضارع البسيط.

- While they are tracking the lions, the Maasai are listening and looking for signs

- يمكن أن تربط while بين زمنى مضارع مستمر عندما يتزامن نفس الحدثين.

- Cattle are important to the villagers but they often go missing or are attacked by lions.

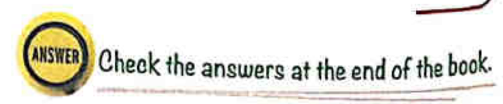
- هناك بعض الكلمات تشير إلى الجمع رغم أنها لا تنتهى بـ s مثل ... cattle , people, police,

- Lion Guardians is changing this

- أسماء المنظمات تعامل معاملة المفرد بالرغم من وجودها فى صيغة الجمع وتسمى collective nouns مثل United Nations

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The course will help you to develop and improve your reading and listening ....
   a) skulls b) risks c) skills d) controls
2. My son goes to the .... school in the centre of the community.
   a) special b) local c) global d) theoretical
3. Some factories break the rules and .... children as young as seven.
   a) donate b) employ c) pretend d) hunt
4. I as well as my wife .... travelling to Alexandria every year.
   a) am b) is c) are d) has





Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

I think number one is (c), what do you think?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 The camp was .... by some wild animals.
a) attached b) attracted c) attacked d) attended

2 There will be a little .... in the weather next week. It will be hotter.
a) charge b) exchange c) movement d) change

3 My father is acting as a .... of our big family. مدرسة دميرة الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢
a) guardian b) guarder c) spy d) gardener

4 You must add these numbers .... to find the total.
a) together b) apart c) gather d) forward

5 Where is the .... of the firm? I want to meet the manager.
a) headquarter b) headquarters c) headbuilding d) headman

6 We all can see the slow .... of the clouds across the sky. They are so beautiful.
a) agreement b) development c) entertainment d) movement

7 A new restaurant has opened .... We can go and have our dinner there.
a) nearby b) close c) nearly d) neatly

8 My son's different hairstyle can completely change his ....
a) appearance b) role c) demonstration d) relation

9 Unfortunately, the factory is .... too close to a residential area.
a) location b) located c) lies d) situating

10 The hunter followed the .... of the deer and he could catch it.
a) paw prints b) tricks c) fingerprints d) tracks

11 Farmers keep .... on their farms. إدارة أشمون التعليمية ٢٠٢٢
a) stock b) tigers c) lions d) cattle

12 Hosam Hasan was a/an .... Egyptian player. He helped the national team to win many championships.
a) boring b) amazing c) ordinary d) slow

13 Vitamin C provides some .... against minor illnesses like the flu.
a) production b) deduction c) protection d) introduction

14 The police couldn't arrest the gang which is responsible for the last ....
a) parties b) killings c) pranks d) plays

15 Patients who are given the new drug will be asked to .... their progress.
a) monitor b) lose c) attack d) achieve

16 Thanks .... modern technology, we can live a happy and comfortable life.
a) for b) with c) by d) to

17 The company has at least 1000 .... who are all very skillful.
a) employers b) employees c) employments d) employs

18 The car factory is a very large .... in this town.
a) employer b) employee c) employment d) employ

19 While we were travelling through the desert, we .... missing.
a) went b) got c) turned d) ran

20 While we were travelling through the desert, we .... lost.
a) went b) got c) turned d) ran

21 Scientists worked .... developing the new vaccine last year.
a) for b) with c) as d) on

22 My uncle's office is based .... Cairo at the present time.
a) on b) in c) at d) into

23 The film that I watched last night is based .... a true story.
a) on b) in c) at d) into

24 They are .... some fascinating research on the language of dolphins.
a) making b) giving c) taking d) doing

25 To cope with developed countries, we need more experts .... different fields.
a) on b) in c) at d) all mentioned

26 The building of the new train station in Cairo is .... works of engineering.
a) amazing b) amazed c) amaze d) amazement

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

27 She is going to employ more people to improve her work. The synonyms of the word "employ" are .... and ....
a) fire b) hire c) grasp d) appear e) appoint

28 She was left unconscious after an attack in her own home. The antonyms of the word "attack" are .... and ....
a) invasion b) defence c) resistance d) fire e) grasp

29 My uncle is a great expert .... the field of remote sensing.
a) in b) with c) on d) by e) for

30 A lot of people .... in the desert while they were trekking there.
a) went lost b) went missing c) got missing
d) got lost e) made loss





Lessons 3 & 4

B Language

Present simple passive المبنى للمجهول فى المضارع البسيط

We use the passive when the action is more important than the agent (who or what does it):

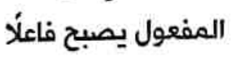
نستخدم المبنى للمجهول عندما يكون المفعول أهم من الفاعل، أو الفاعل غير معروف أو لا يراد ذكره.

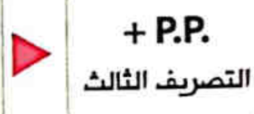
- The organisation is based in Kenya.

نستخدم by إذا أردنا ذكر الفاعل آخر الكلام.

- The lions are monitored by young Massai men.
- New schools are always built by the government.

يتكون المبنى للمجهول بشكل عام من:





Object المفعول يصبح فاعلًا	▶	+ verb to be am/is/are/was/were/be/being/been على حسب زمن الجملة	▶	+ P.P. التصريف الثالث

TENSE	FORM	
Simple Tenses الأزمنة البسيطة	v. to be + P.P.	1. am/is/are + P.P. مضارع بسيط 2. was – were + P.P. ماضٍ بسيط
Continuous Tenses الأزمنة المستمرة	v. to be + being + P.P.	3. am – is – are + being + P.P. مضارع مستمر 4. was – were + being + P.P. ماضٍ مستمر

ومن هنا يتكون المضارع البسيط فى المبنى للمجهول من am – is – are + P.P.

- Leila always does the homework after school.
  = The homework is always done by Leila after school.

فى حالة النفى يتكون المبنى للمجهول فى المضارع البسيط من (am – is – are) not + P.P.

- Amira doesn't watch comic films.
  = Comic films aren't watched by Amira.

فى حالة السؤال يتكون المبنى للمجهول فى المضارع البسيط من:

- Are these old houses built of stone?
- Where is this organisation based?

Am/Is/Are + object + P.P. ...?
Wh-/am/is/are + object + P.P. ...?



Extra Points

- لا تستخدم (has/have) كفعل أساسى فى المبنى للمجهول ويستبدل بفعل اخر حسب المعنى :

- I have a mobile. (A mobile)
  - A mobile is (possessed/owned) by me.
- We have breakfast before going to school every day.
  - Breakfast is eaten before going to school every day (by us).

Important Notes



- هناك استخدامات أخرى عديدة لزمن المضارع البسيط ... منها:

١) إعطاء أوامر أو تعليمات (بدلًا من جملة الأمر) .

- You read the questions first and then you write down your answers in the box.
- You give a signal before you turn right or left.
  = Give a signal before you turn right or left.

٢) فى التعليقات الرياضية.

- Mohamed Salah passes the ball to El-Neny who kicks the ball and scores a goal.

٣) سرد ملخص لأحداث روائية فى رواية أو فيلم أو مسرحية.

- In the last chapter, Huda meets Ali and agrees to marry him.

٤) مع جمل تبدأ بـ

(Here & There)

- Look! Here comes your father at last.

٥) بعد If فى الحالة الشرطية الصفرية والأولى.

- If we heat water, it evaporates.
- If you study hard, you will get high marks.

٦) مع الحكم والأمثال.

- Action speaks louder than words.

- من الممكن أيضًا البدء بـ (Never) وتصبح القاعدة كالآتى:

Never + (فعل مساعد) + فاعل + inf.

- Never **does** he tell lies.



- من الممكن استخدام always مع زمن المضارع المستمر إذا كنا نريد التعبير عن شىء يحدث الآن ويتسبب فى ضيق.

- The girl is always asking a lot of questions while the teacher is explaining the lesson.
- He is always criticising ينتقد my handwriting.

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The room .... every afternoon.
   a) is cleaning b) is cleaned
   c) is being cleaned d) cleans
2. This popular television programme .... by millions of people every week.
   a) is watched b) is being watched
   c) has been watched d) was watching
3. This writer is well-known. His books .... by thousands of people.
   a) read b) are read
   c) are reading d) had been read
4. Our great player Mohamed Salah .... all over the world.
   a) known b) know c) knows d) is known
5. It is a fact that eggs .... a lot of protein that is useful for our bodies.
   a) contain b) contains
   c) are contained d) is contained



Check the answers at the end of the book.

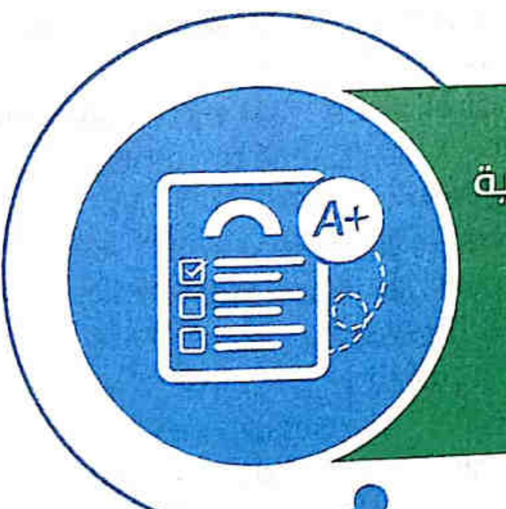


Golden Question

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- I .... as a delivery man these days. I am joining the army next June.
  a) work b) have been working
  c) am working d) used to work





Language Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

The number is (b), isn't it?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The service fee رسوم in this hotel .... in the bill.
a) included b) is included c) is including d) includes

2 This road .... very often as it is so dangerous.
a) is used b) isn't used c) doesn't use d) isn't using

3 Today, lions .... by the Maasai from hunting parties. مدرسة أسوان الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢
a) protect b) have protected
c) are protected d) were protected

4 Money .... into our country by tourists who come to enjoy our great civilisation.
a) is bringing b) is brought c) has brought d) were brought

5 Don't forget to come on time when you .... to come for the interview.
a) ask b) are asked c) asked d) are asking

6 The road to school .... last week as a preparation for the new year.
a) is paved b) is paving c) was paved d) has paved

7 A very nice meal .... for us every Friday at my grandfather's house.
a) had been prepared b) was preparing
c) is prepared d) is preparing

8 Health .... by smoking that causes many fatal diseases.
a) has affected b) is affected c) affects d) was affected

9 .... any of these houses damaged in the storm last night?
a) Was b) Is c) Did d) Had

10 My car .... for any damage from now and then.
a) serviced b) had been serviced c) has serviced d) is serviced

11 The classrooms .... during the school holidays so that the school could look better.
a) is painted b) are painting c) have painted d) were painted

12 I .... to go out with my friends after 9 p.m. as it's a family rule.
a) allowed b) didn't allow c) am not allowed d) wasn't allowed

13 During the monthly school party, clever students .... nice presents.
a) are giving b) are given
c) were giving d) had been given

14 Critical matters .... hastily بشكل متعجل. We shoud take our time.
a) aren't discuss b) don't discuss
c) aren't discussed d) are discussing

15 Never .... late. مدرسة الكويت - إدارة المنتزه - الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
a) he is b) is he c) does he d) he goes

16 The flowers .... by our gardener who is very active.
a) are usually watered
b) usually water
c) usually are watered
d) have usually watered

17 Football matches .... by millions of people all over the world currently.
مدرسة كفر صقر الثانوية بنات - الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
a) are watched
b) were watched
c) watch
d) watching

18 How many babies .... in this hospital every day?
a) were born
b) was born
c) have born
d) are born

19 Students .... two languages before joining university.
a) teach
b) are teaching
c) were taught
d) are taught

20 Some kinds of mobiles .... in Egypt.
إدارة غرب شبرا - القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) are made
b) are making
c) have made
d) had been made

21 Ali and I always .... our friends on holidays.
a) meet
b) meets
c) are meeting
d) have met

22 Unfortunately, the plane .... off before we arrived at the airport.
a) has been taken
b) takes
c) has taken
d) had taken

23 Remember that after you .... the contract, you won't be able to change your mind.
a) had signed
b) will sign
c) signed
d) sign

24 Some plants .... naturally in different parts of the world.
a) are grown
b) are growing
c) grow
d) grew

25 Plants .... by farmers.
إدارة جنوب الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
a) grow
b) growing
c) are grown
d) grew

26 Kareem .... by dad because his behaviour is bad.
a) is always punished
b) is always punishing
c) always punishes
d) always is punished

27 The Earth goes around the sun. This sentence is a ....
a) habit
b) timetable
c) fact
d) hope

28 Mr Ahmed is always a punctual دقيق فى مواعيده. This means that he .... late.
a) never comes
b) never is
c) is not never
d) comes never

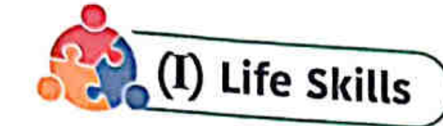
29 He told all the students about the surprise. This means that ....
a) all the students told him about the surprise
b) he was told about the surprise
c) all the students were told about the surprise
d) he was told by all the students about the surprise

30 She wasn't given any money by her husband. This means that ....
a) she didn't give any money to her husband
b) no money was given to her husband
c) her husband doesn't give her any money
d) her husband didn't give her any money



General Skills

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.



(I) Life Skills

Empathy المشاركة الوجدانية/التعاطف

To express empathy we can say:

- I am sorry to hear that bad news.
- I was terribly sorry to hear about ....
- What bad news!
- Don't worry about that. I am sure you will be fine.

To reply we can say:

- I know, it's terrible, isn't it?
- Thanks for your kind feelings.
- Well, never mind.



(II) Writing

- **When we write about a person we are interested in, we can follow these steps:**
  1. Mention his/ her name, date and place of birth.
  2. Write his/ her job and what they are doing nowadays.
  3. Write why you admire him/her (Their achievements).
  4. How they helped their countries, families and people.
  5. Why you think they are important.



Someone we are all proud of (Magdi Yacoub)

Magdi Yacoub is one of the world's most respected heart surgeons. He was born on November 16, 1935 in Belbis, Alshraqya, Egypt. His father was a general surgeon. He inspired him to become a doctor. At the age of four, he witnessed the death of his aunt due to heart disease. Her death, in her early 20s, inspired him to specialise in heart surgery. He entered the Cairo University College of Medicine at the age of 15 on a full scholarship and graduated in 1957, qualifying as a doctor. In 1962, he moved to London and worked in leading hospitals in heart surgery for the next 40 years.

In 1968, he took a short break to teach in the United States. He spent a year as an associate professor at the University of Chicago. He returned to London a year later to resume his work in the UK. In 1974, he performed the first open heart surgery in Nigeria. In 1980, he performed a heart transplant on Derrick Morris who became the longest surviving heart transplant patient. He survived 25 years after surgery. In 1995, he founded the UK-based children's charity 'Chain of Hope' which treats children. Chain of Hope has also established training and research programs in Egypt and other Middle Eastern countries.

Magdi retired from his work in London hospitals in 2001, he has also devoted significant time to his charity, Chain of Hope. In 2008, he established the Magdi Yacoub Heart foundation. The foundation was able to establish the Aswan Heart Centre in 2009 to provide free medical services for those in need.

Magdi is married to Marianne, who is of German descent. They have three children. His oldest daughter, Lisa, works as the UK coordinator for Chain of Hope, while his youngest daughter is a doctor specialising in tropical medicine. In his spare time, he raises orchids and listens to Bach.

Test Yourself in 20 min



● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 A/An .... is a group of people having the same language and customs and being ruled by a chief.
a) society b) community c) tribe d) association

2 A .... is someone who studies the science which is concerned with living things.
a) psychologist b) biologist c) chemist d) zoologist

3 My father works as a/an .... His job is to guard or protect something.
a) gardener b) attacker c) guardian d) hunter

4 A .... of panic has spread over the country after the explosions.
a) movement b) disappearance c) cattle d) sense

5 My boss is very kind-hearted. He showed much .... with the difficult situation which I face.
a) admiration b) empathy c) inspiration d) appearance

6 When a lion's paw .... is discovered, it is a sign that a lion is close.
a) signal b) remark c) print d) signature

7 My young brother works .... an accountant in a large company.
a) for b) in c) out d) as

8 .... rare animals must be prohibited يُمنع to keep them alive.
a) Eating b) Fishing c) Hunting d) Guarding

9 The thief .... and taken to prison yesterday.
a) is arrested b) was arresting c) was arrested d) has arrested

10 At my first day at school, I .... to go with my mother to know the way.
a) have b) had c) would have d) has

11 We know that plants .... energy from the sun to make their food.
a) use b) uses c) are used d) using

12 As it .... in the timetable, the meeting starts at 9 a.m.
a) is shown b) showed c) shows d) show

13 Many qualifications and much experience .... to get higher position in the company.
a) are needing b) need c) needed d) are needed

14 If I .... tired, I will visit my doctor.
a) feels b) feel c) felt d) had felt

15 There was a fight at the party, but nobody ....
a) got hurt b) was hurting
c) hurts d) didn't get hurt

16 I went to hospital and had my eyes examined. It means that ....

a) I examined my eyes by myself
b) maybe I or an oculist examined my eyes
c) no one was there to examine my eyes
d) an oculist examined my eyes

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

With the development of modern civilisation[1], life has become more and more complicated. As a result, the car, which was once considered a luxury, is now looked upon as a necessity. Doctors, engineers and businessmen cannot work without private cars. Moreover, the rapid growth of population in capitals and main cities has actually made the joy of possessing a car much less. Besides the problems of keeping a car in good condition and the lack of garages, there is the big problem of crowded streets.

Most people insist on having a private car to avoid the long wait at a bus stop. To get on or off the bus is a hard struggle[2]. Going to places by taxi does not solve the problem as taxi drivers take passengers according to rules they set. They sometimes ask for more money than they deserve.

Cars could be a source of trouble. Many people have to leave their cars in the streets because garages are expensive and crowded. This exposes them to rusting[3] or robbery. During rush hours, streets are so blocked that it takes a driver an age to get to his destination.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Taking a public bus is a problem because ....

a) it is expensive
b) getting on and off the bus is difficult
c) it is very slow
d) bus drivers drive carelessly

2 The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....

a) taxi drivers b) taxis c) buses d) passengers

3 Possessing a private car is .... to doctors and engineers.

a) unnecessary b) kind
c) indispensable d) bad

4 The synonym of the word "complicated" is "..................".

a) complex b) simple c) easy d) non-complex



(1) حضارة (2) معاناة (3) صدأ

5 According to the writer, possessing a car can be a trouble because ....

a) cars take a space in the garage
b) cars have to be left in the streets
c) drivers are careless
d) traffic is incredible

6 The best title for this passage is "..............." .

a) Traffic Rules
b) Types of Cars
c) Driving carelessly
d) Transportation

7 According to the passage, some taxi drivers are ....

a) greedy
b) good
c) honest
d) funny

8 The sentence "it takes a driver an age to get to his destination" shows that ....

a) people don't know their destination
b) GPS always misleads people
c) drivers can't drive
d) streets are very crowded

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Many famous Egyptians are admired for their intelligence(1), creation and their ability to do great and charity(2) work.

....

....

2. Blood donation(3) can help many people who are in bad need of blood after accidents or who have critical(4) cases.

....

....

3. Human beings are the greatest threat(5) to the survival of endangered species(6) through habitat destruction(7) and the effects of climate change.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- يُعتبر محمد صلاح، لاعب كرة القدم المصرى المشهور عالميًا، مثالًا للاعب الموهوب ذى الأخلاق الحميدة(٨).

....

....

٢- التعليم هو أساس التقدم والتنمية لشعوب ودول العالم سواء المتقدمة أو النامية[9]؛ لأنه يساعدنا فى إعداد أجيال[10] من المواطنين القادرين على إحداث التغيير.

....

....

٣- على الرغم من التقدم العلمى الكبير، ما زالت هناك أنواع كثيرة من الحيوانات تتعرض لخطر الانقراض؛ وذلك بسبب قيام الإنسان بصيدها و قتلها لأسباب مختلفة.

....

....

How to translate

١- هناك جمل (non-defining) لا تعطى معلومات أساسية وهنا يجب أن يتم وضعها بين two commas.

Dr. Manal, who is wearing white, is a great heart surgeon.

٢- عند الترجمة إلى اللغة الإنجليزية من الأفضل تحويل المبنى للمجهول إلى مبنى للمعلوم.

A lot of projects are being done by the government.

تقوم الحكومة بعمل الكثير من المشروعات.

٣- كلمة (ذا - ذى) يتم ترجمتها إلى (who + (v. to have.

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

1. What you can do to help your community.

2. The positive effects of helping people.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.

(1) ذكاء (2) العمل الخيرى (3) التبرع (4) خطير/حرج (5) تهديد (6) أنواع/فصائل (7) دمار (8) good morals (9) developing (10) generations

Study

Chapter 2 (Treasure Island)

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

agree	يوافق	inside	فى داخل
anyone else	أى شخص آخر	magistrate	قاضٍ
bury	يدفن	map	خريطة
catch	يقبض على	papers	أوراق/مستندات
clue	دليل/مفتاح لحل لغز	prepare	يعد/يجهز
cross	يعبر	ready	جاهز
describe	يصف	road	طريق
directions	الاتجاهات	rob	يسرق
escape	يهرب	safe	آمن
excited	متحمس	secret	سر
head	رئيس	servant	خادم
hide	يخفى	shout	يصيح، يصرخ، صيحة
important	مهم	the rest	البقية
include	يشمل		

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

run inside	يركض فى الداخل	seem to	يبدو أن
call out	يصرخ	look for	يبحث عن
run out	ينفذ	longer than	أطول من
feel better	يشعر بتحسن	ready to	مستعد لـ
on a boat	على متن قارب	prepare for	يجهز لـ
as well as	بالإضافة إلى	send to	يرسل إلى
ask ... into	يطلب من شخص الدخول	keep secret	يحفظ السر
interested in	مهتم بـ		



Novel Exercises

Chapter (2)

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The .... of the company is responsible for everything in it.
a) crew b) magistrate c) head d) robber

2 They stole the money but couldn't .... from the police.
a) run b) escape c) rob d) arrest

3 The investigators could finally find a .... to the murder.
a) clue b) crew c) glue d) lock

4 The .... found that the accused man was guilty not innocent.
a) servant b) captain c) magistrate d) thief

5 The .... of the ship were all so friendly and helpful.
a) staff b) clue c) pirates d) crew

6 Jim went to look for the money .... by the captain and his men.
a) kidnapped b) robbed c) hijacked d) stolen

7 The rich man has too many .... who do everything for him at home.
a) servants b) pirates c) heads d) masters

8 It was cool, but we came .... when it started to rain.
a) outside b) inside c) across d) on

9 I asked the waiter to .... a cup of coffee for me.
a) repair b) look c) prepare d) arrange

10 When the thieves heard the police coming, they ran in different ....
a) directors b) decisions c) sites d) directions

11 The list of the guests .... my name.
a) contains b) includes c) consists d) encloses

12 The policeman asked the scared woman to .... the man who tried to rob her.
a) prescribe b) persuade c) describe d) subscribe

13 The archeologists managed to find a very valuable .... treasure.
a) hidden b) hid c) hide d) used

14 We tried to catch the thief, but unfortunately, he ....
a) arrested b) escaped c) freed d) prisoned

15 My uncle is not alive, he is ....
a) die b) died c) dead d) death

Unit 2

Advanced & Open
General Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Let's strengthen our knowledge.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Reham .... with laughter at the joke that I told her.
   a) sneezed b) roared c) frowned d) pleased
2. I didn't know you have bought a new car. I .... to see it in front of your house.
   a) chanced b) speeded c) found d) shrugged
3. I'm happy that there is a strong sense of .... in our neighourhood.
   a) society b) smell c) communication d) community
4. Your son will be looked after here. Don't worry on that ....
   a) goal b) score c) sense d) wall
5. The younger generation only .... to be interested in money.
   a) seem b) seems c) seeming d) a & b
6. I've .... everywhere for my gloves, but I can't find them.
   a) hunted b) found c) caught d) fished
7. When I knew that my friend Ali died, I went to pay my last .... to him.
   a) respects b) supports c) benefits d) desires
8. At the airport, you need to .... in two hours before the flight.
   a) check b) support c) desire d) admire
9. The newspaper reports about Momen Zakaria showed him little ....
   a) aim b) charity c) hunting d) organisation
10. The United Nations decided that there should be .... on the borders between the two countries.
    a) monitors b) killings c) villagers d) founders
11. Mr Hassan refused to join any political .... after losing the last election.
    a) society b) charity c) party d) compassion
12. The little chairs are not made to .... the weight of an adult.
    a) suggest b) support c) restore d) regard
13. Huda bought a very expensive .... blouse last week.
    a) called b) admired c) supported d) checked
14. For few seconds when they are taking ...., the soldiers are exposed to enemy fire.
    a) respect b) income c) aim d) knowledge
15. The Egyptian runner won the gold medal when he reached the end of the .... first.
    a) track b) desire c) speed d) prestige

16 Look! This boy .... 100 kilograms now.
a) weighing b) is weighing c) weighs d) weigh

17 This painting is original. It .... anywhere else.
a) was existed b) isn't existed c) don't exist d) doesn't exist

18 .... to you now?
a) Is this car belong
b) Is this car belonging
c) Do this car belong
d) Does this car belong

19 I'd hate to live in London because it .... all the time.
a) rains b) is raining c) raining d) rain

20 I can't talk right now as I .... really busy. I will call you later.
a) being b) am c) will be d) was

21 People .... say "thank you" anymore.
a) isn't b) doesn't c) don't d) aren't

22 In Chapter one, Huda .... Ali, and agrees to take part in the competition.
a) meet b) met c) meets d) is meeting

23 Mohamed El-Neny .... the ball to Salah who scores a goal.
a) is passing b) passed c) pass d) passes

24 Look! Here .... your father at last!
a) come b) comes c) was coming d) came

25 Hard work .... to success.
a) lead b) is leading c) is led d) leads

26 Never .... his lessons hard.
a) he studies b) he does study c) does he study d) he studied

27 He .... her way of talking to her children.
a) always criticise
b) criticises always
c) is always criticise
d) always is criticising

28 These trees .... their leaves in the autumn as they are evergreen.
a) don't lose b) doesn't lose c) isn't lost d) aren't lost

29 Which sentence is in the Present Simple Tense?
a) We can fish in the new factory.
b) My mother will attend the party.
c) He had a new car six days ago.
d) You are wasting your time.

30 These glasses are a bit heavy; I will take time to .... them.
a) become used to wear
b) be used to wear
c) get use to wear
d) get used to wearing



Al-Adwaa Test



Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 There was a meeting to discuss a long-term plan. The synonyms of the word "long-term" are .... and ....
a) continuing b) temporary c) lasting d) passing e) short-lived

2 We should do our best to protect our country .... the problems it faces.
a) to b) with c) from d) by e) against

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3 In our company, there are a lot of cameras to .... everything happens.
a) prevent b) change c) protect d) monitor

4 The rescue team shouldered the .... for saving people after the accident.
a) stability b) ability c) probability d) responsibility

5 The shortage of blood .... will lead to serious effects on patients.
a) owners b) donors c) keepers d) attackers

6 After the accident, he needed blood .... to stay alive.
a) transplant b) transfusion c) transplantation d) orientation

7 I had my new flat ....; it is amazing.
a) decorate b) decoration c) decorated d) decorating

8 After the train accident, many of the .... people are still in a serious condition.
a) ambitious b) injured c) reported d) dead

9 As well as .... abroad to earn money, he got a university degree.
a) travel b) travelling c) travelled d) travels

10 He came to my house and .... tea with me.
a) had b) had had c) having d) have had

11 Salah .... the most important goal for Egypt that sent it to the World Cup Finals.
a) scored b) has scored c) scores d) was scoring

12 My daughter .... her grandmother as usual.
a) is visited b) is visiting c) was visiting d) visits

13 My boss likes Mr. Ahmed because he .... hard-working.
a) is always b) always is c) is never d) never is

14 He .... to sit down until he had apologised to the teacher.
a) didn't allow b) isn't allowed c) wasn't allowed d) was allowed

15 Yaseen doesn't stay up late any longer. This means he ....
a) used to stay up late
b) didn't use to stay up late
c) usually stays up late
d) is in the habit of staying up late

16 In winter, wood .... to heat people's homes in many parts of the world.
a) have been burnt
b) burnt
c) is burnt
d) was burning

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Octopuses are extremely intelligent. They have even learnt a few tricks to get them out of sticky situations. For example, they are afraid of a predator. As octopuses don't have teeth or sharp claws to defend themselves, they hide in the sand on the bottom of the ocean floor. The octopus is like a chameleon[1] because it can change the colour of its skin to match the sand.

Some octopuses like to stay in more shallow[2] water where there are rocks and coral. However, octopuses can squeeze themselves into small spaces between the rocks to get out of reach of predators. Another way an octopus can use to hide is by shooting ink. An octopus uses a part of its body called a siphon to shoot ink into the water. The ink forms a cloud that hides the octopus. It's like a magician doing a vanishing act.

If an octopus is being attacked, it can actually make itself look like a venomous[3] sea snake. It will bury itself in the sand, keeping two arms visible. If an octopus is in trouble, it can break off one of its arms. The arm will then change colours and squirm around the water to distract the predator while the octopus swims away to safety. Amazingly, the octopus's arm will grow back.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 A .... is an animal that attacks and kills octopuses.

a) prey b) predator
c) chameleon d) magician

18 When an octopus is in a sticky situation, that means it's ....

a) easy b) in danger
c) covered in stick d) unable to move

19 The synonym of the word "intelligent" is ....

a) smart b) dangerous
c) venomous d) visible

20 The octopus and the chameleon are similar as both ....

a) swim in the same way b) eat the same food
c) catch small fish d) can change their skin colour

21 The octopus can separate one of its arms to ....

a) distract the predator b) renew it
c) catch a prey d) lay eggs

(1) حرباء (2) ضحل (غير عميق) (3) سام

22 The octopus can shoot ink into the water which ....

a) kills the attackers
b) helps it hide from the attackers
c) pollutes the water
d) attracts preys

23 Octopuses don't have teeth or sharp claws to defend themselves ....

a) so, they are eaten easily
b) however, they have other ways to keep enemies away
c) moreover, they are not brave
d) that's why they are about to extinct

24 The best title for this passage is ....

a) The Magician Octopuses
b) The Sea World and the Predator
c) The Seabed
d) The Sea Ink

25 **Translate into English:**

- يحلم كل منا أن يكون مشـــهورًا في يوم ما، ولكن ليس من الســهل أن تكون مشــهورًا؛ لأن الشهرة نتاج للعمل الجاد والصبر وأيضًا المعاناة.

....

....

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

Nowadays, the Egyptian government pays great attention to women and provides them with good education, jobs and health care.

....

....

27 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

The role of charities in Egypt.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Unit 3



Improving lives

Objectives

- **Reading** : An extract from *David Copperfield*
- **Writing** : A paragraph on a book character; A summary of a story
- **Listening** : A talk about the effect of Charles Dickens' books
- **Speaking** : Discussing a topic
- **Language** : Past simple and present perfect
- **Life Skills** : Empathy





Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

debts (n)	ديون	owe (v) – d*	يدين لـ
earn (v) – ed	يكسب (مالًا)	plump (adj)	ممتلئ الجسم
merchant (n)	تاجر	prison (n)	سجن
miserable (adj)	بائس	rats (n)	فئران

* I owe you a favor because you helped me.

Vocabulary on Reading

arrange (v) – d	يرتب	hate (v) – d	يكره
borrow (v) – ed	يقترض/يستعير	hurt (v)	يؤذى
break (v)	يكسر	modern (adj)	حديث
building (n)	مبنى	parents (n)	والدان/أبوان
criminals (n)	مجرمون	penny (n)	بنس بريطانى (عملة نقدية)
die (v) – d	يموت	spend (v)	ينفق مالًا/يقضى وقتًا
dirty (adj)	قذر	theatre (n)	مسرح
discover (v) – ed	يكتشف	ticket (n)	تذكرة
empty (adj)	فارغ	tired (adj)	متعب
factory (n)	مصنع	twins (n)	توءمان
floors (n)	طوابق	miser (n)	بخيل
hard (adj)	شاق	misery (n)	البخل/البؤس

Vocabulary on Listening

brilliant (adj)	رائع	remove (v) – d	يزيل
deserve (v) – d	يستحق	reward (v) – ed	يكافئ
entertain (v) – ed	يسلي	storyteller (n)	كاتب روايات/قصاص
entertainment (n)	تسلية	support (v) – ed	يدعم
honest (adj)	أمين		

Workbook Vocabulary

character (n)	شخصية	opportunity (n)	فرصة
childhood (n)	مرحلة الطفولة	review (v) – ed	يراجع
exactly (adv)	بالضبط	similar (adj)	مشابه
hide (v)	يخفى	skill (n)	مهارة
lucky (adj)	سعيد الحظ	temple (n)	معبد
machines (n)	آلات	unusual (adj)	غير عادى

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

become ill	يصبح مريضًا/يمرض	reward for	يكافىء على
break the law	يخالف القانون	similar to	متشابه مع
make clothes	يصنع ملابس	die of	يموت بسبب
pay back	يرد دينًا	take ... away	يأخذ ... بعيدًا
look after	يعتنى بـ	take ... home	يأخذ ... للمنزل
owe money to	يدين بالمال لـ	tired-looking lady	سيدة تبدو متعبة
a problem with	مشكلة مع - فى	find out	يكتشف
buy ... from	يشترى ... من	give to	يعطى لـ
rat race	تنافس شديد	sit with	يجلس مع
arrange for	يرتب من اجل	entertain ... with	يُسلى ... بـ
break the record	يحطم الرقم القياسى	know ... for	يعرف شخصًا ... بـ

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
arrange	يرتب	arranger arrangement	معد/منظم ترتيب/تنظيم	arranged	منظم/معد
deaden die	يخمد/يقمع يموت	death dead	موت ميت	dead deadly	ميت مميت (مسبب للموت)
------------------------------		debt	دين	debtless	بدون ديون
earn	يكسب	earner earning	مصدر دخل عائد/دخل	earned	مُكتسب/مُستحق
hate	يكره	hate hatred	عداوة كره/بغض	hated	كريه/بغيض
imprison	يسجن	prison prisoner imprisonment	سجن سجين حبس/اعتقال	imprisonable	مستحق للسجن
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسين	improved	محسن
merchant	يتاجر	merchant merchandise	تاجر بضائع	merchantable merchant	صالح للتجارة تجارى
------------------------------		miser misery	بخيل بخل/بؤس	miserly	قليل/شحيح
owe	يدين	------------------------------		owing	مدين
plump	ينفخ	plumpness	بدانة/سمنة	plump	ممتلئ

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
arrange	يرتب/ينظم	organise/tidy/put in order	disarrange/disorder يبعثر
borrow	يستلف	acquire/obtain/hire	lend/return/pay يقرض/يدفع/يرد
dirty	قذر	unclean/soiled/contaminated	clean/spotless/pure/clear نظيف
empty	فارغ	vacant/blank/unoccupied	full/occupied/filled مملوء
hard	شاق/صلب	tough/solid/strong	soft/delicate رقيق/مرهف
hate	يكره	dislike/detest/loathe	love/adore/like يحب/يعشق
honest	أمين/مخلص	trustful/sincere/candid	dishonest/deceitful/insincere خائن/غير أمين
miserable	بائس	unhappy/sad/depressed	cheerful/happy سعيد/مبتهج
plump	ممتلئ الجسم	chubby/fat	thin/lean نحيف
tired	متعب	exhausted/fatigued/weary	active/lively/fresh نشيط

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Those who are in debt are very ....
   a) happy b) miserable c) modern d) real
2. I was very .... as I worked for about 15 hours without a break.
   a) relaxed b) calm c) tired d) tiring
3. My funny friend always .... us with many jokes all evening.
   a) entertains b) trains c) removes d) depresses
4. I consider myself a .... man to have such a good family.
   a) tired b) funny c) tricky d) lucky
5. He was taken to prison for .... the law.
   a) breaking b) making c) obeying d) removing

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

How do you think children with no parents were treated in the past?

Reading Text

David Copperfield



'This is Mr Quinion, David,' Mr Murdstone said. 'You're going to work for him at Murdstone and Grinby, the bottle merchants[1], in London. You'll earn[2] enough money to pay for your food, and I've arranged[3] a place for you to live.'

I was ten years old and I was going to go to work. And it was hard work. I went to a dirty old house near the river where rats[4] lived under the floors. There my job was to wash empty bottles with three other boys, and I hated[5] it.

One morning, a plump man[6] came to see me with Mr Quinion.

'Ah, Master Copperfield!' the man said 'This is Mr Micawber,' Mr Quinion told me. 'You will be living at his house.'

And that evening, Mr Micawber took me home. His wife – a thin, tired-looking lady – was sitting with a baby. The baby was one of twins[7], and they had a boy of four and a girl of three.

I soon discovered that the Micawbers were poor and that Mr Micawber owed[8] money to several[9] people. One morning the police came and took Mr Micawber away to prison because of his debts[10]. I went to see him there the next Sunday.

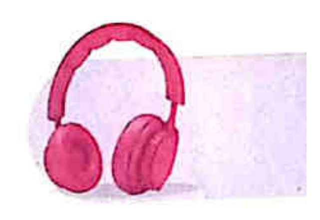
'If a man earns twenty pounds a year and spends[11] nineteen pounds, he'll be happy,' he said. 'But if he spends twenty pounds and a penny, he'll be miserable[12].'

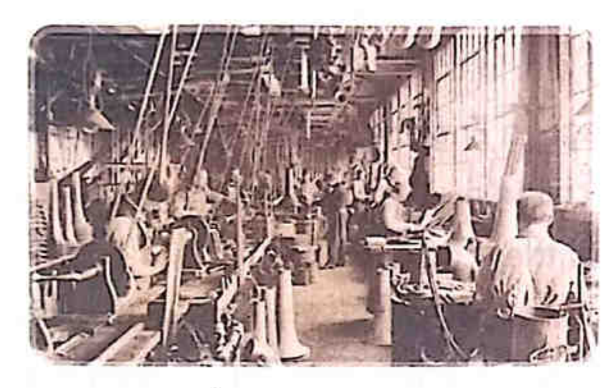
(1) تجار
(2) يكسب
(3) رتب
(4) فئران
(5) كرهت
(6) رجل ممتلئ الجسم
(7) توءمان
(8) مدين
(9) كثير من
(10) ديون
(11) ينفق
(12) تعيس

If a man earns twenty pounds a year and spends nineteen pounds, he'll be happy.' Do you agree with Mr Micawber? Why/Why not?

Do you think that novels can teach us about life? Why? Why not?

Listening Text





Today millions of people know Charles Dickens for the brilliant[1] books that he wrote. He was a great storyteller[2]. But Dickens didn't only want to entertain[3] people with his books, he also wanted to change their opinions[4] about the world they lived in. He hoped[5] his readers would then do something to make the world a better place.

Dickens was most interested in helping poor children because of his own difficult childhood[6]. When he was 12 years old, Charles' father was sent to prison[7]. Like David Copperfield, he had to leave school and work to support his family instead. The Poor Law of 1834 removed[8] support for most poor people so their lives were hard. When he wrote *David Copperfield* between 1849 and 1850, Dickens wanted to show us that not all poor people were bad. Like his father, Mr Micawber went to prison because he had no money but after he left prison, he wanted to help David because he was a good man. In Dickens' books, people who worked hard were also often rewarded[9]. For example, at the end of the book, David Copperfield becomes a successful writer.

Dickens also wanted to say that rich people needed to do something to help the poor. In *David Copperfield*, a man called Mr Wickfield helps David by giving him a room. Dickens thought that people like Mr Wickfield were honest[10] and good and deserved[11] to be rewarded. Other people in the book, on the other hand, were bad and he had an unhappy end.

(1) رائع
(2) روائي
(3) يسلي
(4) آراء
(5) تمنى
(6) مرحلة الطفولة
(7) سجن
(8) أزال
(9) كُوفئوا
(10) صادق
(11) استحق

Dickens thought that both poor and rich people have a role to make society better. Explain.

Workbook Text

The book character[1] David Copperfield went to work when he was ten years old. In the 1800s, it was not unusual[2] for children to work at this age in England. Poor parents did not have the money to send their children to school. They often needed their children to earn money or they could not pay[3] their debts[4]. Factories liked to have children working for[5] them because they did not need to pay them as much as they paid adults[6]. The children could also do some things the adults could not do. For example, they were small so they could go under machines when they broke. The children were often miserable[7]. They worked very long hours and most of them had no opportunity[8] to improve their lives. However, some children learned a skill when they worked. They were the lucky[9] ones, as these new skills helped them to get better jobs when they were older.

(1) شخصية
(2) غير مألوف
(3) يدفع
(4) ديون
(5) يعمل لدى
(6) البالغون
(7) تعساء
(8) فرصة
(9) سعداء الحظ

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My father works hard to .... enough money to help us live well.
a) gain b) beat c) earn d) win

2 My little brother is a very funny boy with .... red cheeks.
a) pump b) dump c) thump d) plump

3 He .... much more than he earns, so he is in heavy debts.
a) passes b) spends c) works d) stays

4 Charles Dickens was a great .... who wrote many novels and books.
a) poet b) doctor c) storyteller d) musician

5 Our teacher is always ready to give us .... when we answer correctly.
a) awards b) rewards
c) medals d) penalties



Check the answers at the end of the book.





FOCUS on Vocabulary

Giving the meaning in English is the beginning of mastering the language.

debts — ديون
- money you must give to someone

earn — يكسب (مالًا)
- receive money for doing work

merchant — تاجر
- a person who buys and sells a lot of goods

miserable — بائس
- very sad

owe — يدين لـ
- have to pay money or debt back

plump — ممتلئ الجسم
- fat in a nice way

prison — سجن
- a place to keep criminals

rats — فئران
- animals like big mice

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

1	**work** - عمل/مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد) - عمل هندسي أو فني أو أدبي (اسم يعد)	I've got so much work to do. Dickens' works reflect the suffering of poor people.
	job وظيفة/مهنة (اسم يعد)	When she left college, she got a job as an editor in a publishing company.
	career الحياة العملية أو المهنية للفرد	She manages to successfully combine family life and a career.
	profession مهنة (الاسم من الوظيفة)	He left the teaching profession in 1965 to start his own business.
2	**machine** ماكينة/آلة	The factory bought a new machine to increase its production.
	tool أداة يدوية	The carpenter uses many tools such as a hammer and a saw.
	instrument أدوات قياس/طبيب/موسيقية	The piano is one of my favourite musical instruments.
3	**pay** مرتب/أجر/دفع	It is not a good job, but the pay is good.
	wage أجر يومي أو أسبوعي	His wage is 100 pounds a day.
	salary أجر شهري (غالبًا من شركة أو مؤسسة)	The salaries of the government are not enough.
	fee أتعاب	Lawyers' fees have become sky high nowadays.
4	**a room** حجرة	I phoned to book a room in the hotel.
	room مكان/فراغ	The table takes up too much room.

5	**win** يفوز/يكسب (كأس - مباراة - انتخابات)	The team is training well hoping to win the next match.
	beat يهزم/يتغلب على (شخص أو فريق)	Our team was easily beaten in the first round of the competition.
	gain يكتسب/يحصل على شيء معنوي مفيد (خبرة - معرفة - معلومات - شهرة - الوزن - السرعة)	I gained a lot of weight while I was on holiday.
	earn يكسب (قوتًا أو رزقًا) مقابل عمل	How much do you earn, if you don't mind me asking?
6	**miss*** تفوته مواصلات/يفتقد شخصًا	He missed the train as he got up late. I missed my uncle very much.
	lose* يخسر/يفقد شيئًا	Our national team lost the last match.

* I miss you, but I will never lose you.

7	**hard (adj)** صعب/خشن/نشيط أو حماسي	You'll have to make some hard decisions to solve this problem. After months without rain, the ground was too hard to plough. Success in sport requires hard work and a great deal of determination.
	hard (adv) بجد	She has worked hard all her life and became a great person.
	hardly (adv) بالكاد	I hardly know your friend. I met him only once.
8	**very** جدًا	تستخدم كلمة (very) قبل الصفات العادية لتحويلها إلى صفات قوية مثل: good → very good cold → very cold ولكن مع الصفات القوية لا تستخدم very ولكن نستخدم absolutely مثل: amazing → absolutely amazing terrible → absolutely terrible

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- Mr Micawber took me home.

كلمة home لا يسبقها أداة تعريف the بعد أفعال معينة مثل ... ,go, take, return.

- tired-looking lady

تأتي كلمة looking بعد بعض الصفات لتكون صفة مركبة مثل terrified-looking face

- I soon discovered that the Micawbers were poor.

تضاف (s) إلى الاسم العلم لتشير إلى أفراد الأسرة.

- In the 1800s, it was not usual for children to work.

تضاف s إلى الأرقام لتشير إلى سنوات العقد العشرة فهنا تشير إلى الفترة من ١٨٠٠ إلى ١٨٠٩.

- Rich people needed to do something to help the poor.

لاحظ هنا أن The + adj. = Adj. + people

- Other people in the book, on the other hand, were bad and he had an unhappy end.

نستخدم عبارة on the other hand عندما نعطي وجهة نظر أخرى مخالفة للسابقة.

- The police came and took Mr. Micawber to prison.

هنا كلمة prison لم يأتِ قبلها أي أداة لأن الذهاب للغرض الأساسي من المكان و هو السجن.

Let's check our new vocabulary!

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I admire most of the .... of our great writer Naguib Mahfouz.
   a) work b) jobs
   c) careers d) works
2. You must learn how to take the chance, and not to .... it.
   a) lose b) waste
   c) miss d) pass
3. I was so tired that I could .... walk home and I took a taxi.
   a) hardly b) hard
   c) harden d) hardship
4. I asked my manager for a .... rise or I will resign.
   a) wage b) fee
   c) pay d) bay
5. We decided to return .... after so many years abroad.
   a) house b) to home
   c) at home d) home


Check the answers at the end of the book.

Practice — Vocabulary Exercises

Practise more

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

After we memorised the new vocabulary and read the notes, we need to practise.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 After losing her job a year ago, she got in .... to be able to support her family.
a) debate b) debt c) profit d) dept

2 He felt lonely and .... after his mother had passed away. إدارة القناطر - القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
a) miser b) miserable c) sadness d) happiness

3 The terrorist الإرهابي was sent to .... for 25 years for his terrorist attacks.
a) prison b) paradise c) home d) work

4 That house has been .... for months. I want to rent it.
a) busy b) crowded c) occupied d) empty

5 My daughter dropped the vase accidentally بدون قصد and it ....
a) broke b) stole c) parked d) woke

6 We .... our success to our parents and teachers. مركز منية النصر - الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
a) own b) owe c) belong d) occur

7 We must stop those who do .... acts by sending them to prison.
a) great b) moral c) legal d) criminal

8 I should have gone abroad when I was young. It was really a missed ....
a) appointment b) apposition c) opponent d) opportunity

9 I have bought two .... for the concert. One for me and one for my wife.
a) chairs b) papers c) tickets d) magazines

10 Most football players .... a lot of money. إدارة الشهداء التعليمية - المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
a) earn b) win c) beat d) fill

11 During my last holiday, I have .... a lot of weight as I spent it eating a lot without moving.
a) won b) earned c) gained d) beat

12 We always .... people who work hard. مدرسة السعيدية الثانوية - الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
a) insult b) award c) insist d) reward

13 I think I've .... why they had lied to me about their real identity هوية.
a) discovered b) invented c) explored d) scanned

14 They are very alike. They look like being identical ....
a) two b) similarity c) twins d) twinge

15 I do not think he .... such punishment. إدارة الفيوم التعليمية ٢٠٢٢
a) preserves b) deserves c) reserves d) serves

16 I .... our old days when we sat at the sea chatting till dawn.
a) lose b) long c) suppose d) miss

17 She finds her work with disabled people very .... She likes it very much.
a) awards b) comments c) rewarding d) rewards

18 I noticed that the way the two sisters thought and spoke was ....
a) similarly b) similar c) difference d) same

19 The .... have a safety device which switches the power off if there is a fault.
a) tools b) instruments c) machines d) wires

20 It is very important for a dentist to sterilise يعقم his .... continuously.
a) tools b) instruments c) machines d) machinery

21 The time I spend with my sisters and brothers is so amazing especially when we remember our .... memories.
a) children b) elderly c) long life d) childhood

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

22 He is a .... He has no desire to spend money even on his children.
a) miserable b) misery c) miser d) missing

23 Nowadays, everyone is rushing to be better or more successful than everyone else. That is what we call ....
a) break the law b) pay back c) break through d) rat race

24 A lot of people all over the world died .... COVID-19.
a) with b) out c) away d) of

25 Shoppers complain about poor quality .... and high prices.
a) merchants b) merchandise c) merchantable d) merchant

26 Mothers are the best to look .... their families.
a) after b) up c) for d) into

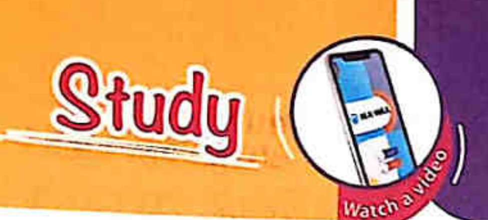
Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

27 Many young men .... money from tourism, so we have to encourage tourists to come to Egypt.
a) earn b) do c) make d) gain e) win

28 Can I borrow your car for the weekend? The antonyms of the word "borrow" are .... and ....
a) dislike b) lend c) disorder d) organise e) return

29 .... should be helped by all people in society especially the government.
a) Disabled b) The disabled c) Disabled people
d) The disabled people e) Disability

30 I asked my father to go out with me but he was very tired. The adjective "tired" gives the same meaning as .... and ....
a) active b) fresh c) weary d) lively e) exhausted





Lessons 1 & 2

B Language

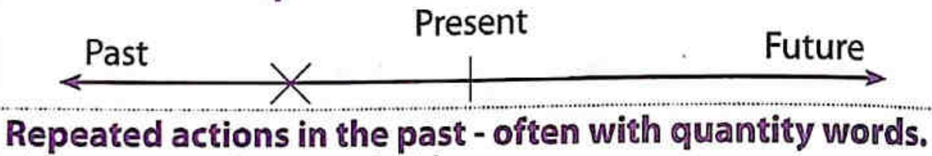
Past simple and present perfect

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط تم شرحه فى الوحدة الأولى

The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

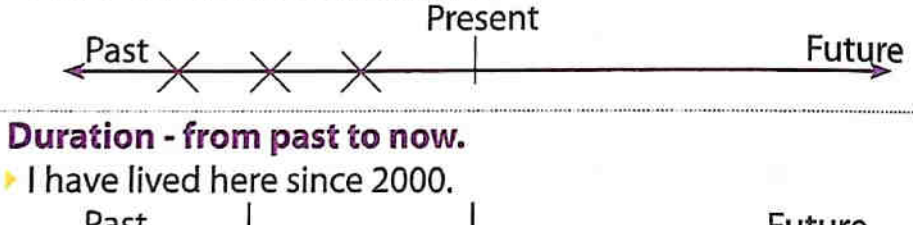
TIMELINE

An action in the past with no time indicated.



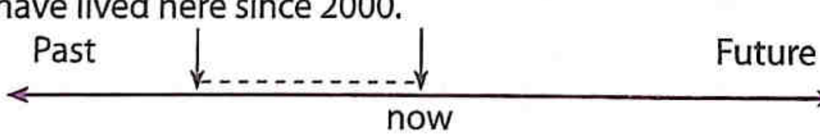
Repeated actions in the past - often with quantity words.

- I have eaten three sandwiches.



Duration - from past to now.

- I have lived here since 2000.



Form

Positive

He/She/It + has + P.P.
I/They/We/You + have + P.P.

- He has prepared the bag since 5 o'clock.
- They have already watered the plants.

Negative

He/She/It + hasn't + P.P.
I/They/We/You + haven't + P.P.

- He hasn't cleaned his room yet.
- My parents haven't watched the film yet.

Interrogative

Has/Have + subject + P.P.?
Wh-word + has/have + subject + P.P.?

- Has Dina finished her homework?
- Have you played the game?
- Where have you been?

Passive

Obj. + has/have + been + P.P.

- She has cleaned the room. (Active)
- The room has been cleaned. (Passive)

Usage
الاستخدام

1. **For actions that started in the past and continue**
للتعبير عن أحداث بدأت في الماضي وما زالت مستمرة.
- Manar has lived in Alexandria since she was a child.

2. **For actions which have happened very recently**
للتعبير عن أحداث تمت حديثًا أو انتهت منذ فترة قصيرة.
- I have just finished reading the novel of David Copperfield.

3. **For actions which have not happened, but might happen in the future**
للتعبير عن أحداث لم تحدث ولكن من المحتمل حدوثها في المستقبل.
- Ahmed has already travelled to London, but he hasn't visited Paris yet.

4. **For questions and answers about people's experiences**
للأسئلة والاجابات عن التجارب الشخصية للأفراد.
- Have you ever been to Aswan?
  – No, I've never been there.

5. **For actions that happened in the past without mentioning the time**
للأحداث التي تمت في الماضي دون تحديد وقت حدوثها.
- My wife has polished her shoes.

لاحظ: في حالة تحديد وقت حدوثه نستخدم الماضي البسيط.
- My wife polished her shoes yesterday.

6. **For actions that happened in the past and its effect is clear in present**
للأحداث التي انتهت في الماضي وتأثيرها واضح في الحاضر.
- He can't play the match because he has broken his leg.

7. **To refer to several actions which have occurred at different times in the past, but it suggests that the process is incomplete**
للإشارة إلى أحداث متعددة حدثت في أوقات مختلفة في الماضي، ولكن هذا يشير إلى أن العملية غير مكتملة.
- We have had three fires in our area this month.

8. **After time conjunctions to express the future**
بعد الروابط الزمنية للتعبير عن المستقبل.
- After she has watched the new movie, she will study her lessons.

Key words

already	بالفعل	تستخدم بين (has/have) & P.P. أو فى نهاية الجملة	I **have** already **passed** my driving test. I **have passed** the driving test already.
just	حالًا/توًا	تستخدم بين (has/have) & P.P.	He **has** just **finished** studying his English lessons.
ever	من قبل	تستخدم للسؤال عن التجارب الشخصية السابقة وبعد صيغة التفضيل ومع الجمل المنفية بـ not	**Have** you ever **met** Mohamed Salah? It is the most difficult question I have ever answered. I **haven't** ever **eaten** the Chinese food.
never	أبدًا/مطلقًا	تستخدم للنفى وفى جمل المقارنة وتأتى بين (has/have) & P.P.	I **have** never **played** squash before. I **have** never **seen** a player faster than Ronaldo.
yet	حتى الآن	تستخدم فى النفى أو الاستفهام	She **hasn't revised** her lessons yet. Amr **hasn't** yet **sent** the files. **Has** she **finished** cooking the food yet?
lately/recently	حديثًا/مؤخرًا	تستخدم فى الإثبات والاستفهام وغالبًا ما تستخدم lately فى النفى.	He **has sent** me a letter lately/recently. **Have** you **heard** from Noha lately/recently? I **haven't been** sleeping well lately.
so far/up till now	حتى الآن	تستخدم فى الإثبات والنفى	I **have sent** my brother three letters up till now. She **hasn't had** any problems so far.
over ... / throughout ...	على مر	يأتى بعدها مدة زمنية	Egypt **has changed** over the last years. She **has improved** her English throughout the years.
How long	منذ متى	تستخدم فى الاستفهام	How long **has** he **had** that car?
in the last .../ in recent ...	فى ... الأخيرة	يأتى بعدها مدة زمنية	Mohamed Salah **has played** for Liverpool in the last 5 years.
for	لمدة	يأتى بعدها مدة زمنية	I **have lived** in Alexandria for 10 years.
since	منذ	يأتى بعدها بداية الفترة الزمنية	She **has worked** as a nurse since 2010.

Since

- 4 o'clock
- 2000
- yesterday
- last (week/month/year)
- April/May/August
- Monday/Friday
- then
- spring/winter/summer
- his arrival (عبارة اسمية)
- the age of ....
- the 1970s (الحقب الزمنية)

For

- 6 hours
- 3 years
- a/several/many/10 (week/month/year)
- the last (week/month/year)
- ages
- a long time/a short time
- a while/a decade/a century
- as long as ... can remember
- long

- I have started to study English since 1995/for 27 years.
- She has been taught how to swim since last year/for the last year/for a year.
- My brother Osama has worked in tourism since his graduation.

- إذا جاء مع (since) فعل واحد فى الجملة يوضع فى زمن المضارع التام البسيط أو المستمر.

(بداية الفترة الزمنية) **since** (مضارع تام)

(مضارع تام)، (بداية الفترة الزمنية) **Since**

- My daughter hasn't slept well since **yesterday.**
- Since **yesterday**, my daughter hasn't slept well.

- إذا جاء مع (since) فعلين ... أى ربطت بين جملتين تصبح القاعدة كالآتى:

(ماضِ بسيط) **since** (مضارع تام)

(مضارع تام)، (ماضِ بسيط) **Since**

- We **haven't seen** him since he was in Alexandria.
- Since he was in Alexandria, we **haven't seen** him.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I haven't seen you .... ages.

a) since **b)** for **c)** in **d)** over

الإجابة هى (b) لأن بعدها المدة كاملة ages وهى ليست نقطة بداية.

Important Notes



١) تستخدم (yet) للتعبير عن نفى حدوث الفعل حتى ذلك الحين مع توقع حدوثه لاحقًا.

- I haven't eaten at a Chinese restaurant yet. (I expect to do it later).

أما عند استخدام (never) فهى تعبر عن نفى حدوث الفعل حتى ذلك الحين مع عدم توقع حدوثه لاحقًا.

- I have never eaten at a Chinese restaurant. (I don't expect to do it later).

٢) من الممكن استخدام (already) للتعبير عن الدهشة.

- Have you finished cooking the food already? How fast!

٣) لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

for the last + (a period of time)
since last + (a period of time)

- I haven't met my colleagues for the last week.
- I haven't met my colleagues since last week.

لاحظ الجملة التالية:

- I haven't met my colleagues since the last meeting.

٤) لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

(has/have) been to + (place) ذهب إلى مكان وعاد

- He has been to London. (He came back)

(has/have) gone to + (place) ذهب إلى مكان ولم يعد

- He has gone to London. (He is still there)

(has/have) been in + (place) يمكث فى مكان

- He has been in London. (He is living there)

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Shady .... much weight recently.
   a) gained b) has gained c) is gained d) gains
2. Have you .... watched a Korean movie?
   a) never b) still c) yet d) ever
3. He has lived at his village since he ....
   a) retired b) was retiring c) has retired d) had retired
4. This is the most interesting book I ....
   a) have never read b) read c) ever have read d) have ever read
5. A: Have you ever visited the Pyramids? B: Yes, I .... there last year.
   a) have gone b) have been c) went d) had gone


Check the answers at the end of the book.



Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Practice is the best way to apply what we have learnt.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 There has been a traffic jam in the square .... two hours.
a) since b) for c) yet d) ago

2 .... the last two weeks, we have prepared for our graduation party.
مدرسة الكويت - إدارة المنتزه - الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
a) Since b) At c) For d) While

3 We haven't had ice cream .... ages.
a) since b) for c) yet d) ago

4 I have studied English .... the age of six.
a) since b) for c) yet d) ago

5 Mohammad is the most intelligent child I have .... seen.
a) never b) lately c) ever d) yet

6 They .... the report yet, but they will try to finish it soon.
a) have finished b) haven't finished c) finished d) can't finish

7 In recent years, scientists .... ways to isolate genes.
a) will develop b) have developed
c) had developed d) has developed

8 Have you done the experiment ....? – You are really clever. إدارة وسط الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
a) yet b) already c) ago d) since

9 My keys .... I can't open the door.
a) are losing b) have lost c) have been lost d) has been lost

10 They .... the cinema. They are at home now.
a) have been to b) have gone to c) have been in d) had been to

11 I .... the book you were looking for. Here it is.
a) find b) will find c) was finding d) have found

12 **A:** Would you like something to drink? **B:** No, thanks. I .... some lemonade.
a) just had b) am just having c) have just had d) had just

13 I am so happy; I .... a medal for writing poetry. إدارة شرق المحلة - الغربية ٢٠٢٢
a) had won b) was winning c) won d) have won

14 Mourad .... to his village. He is still there.
a) had been b) has gone c) has been d) had gone

15 I moved to Cairo. Since then, I .... my friends.
a) haven't seen b) hasn't seen c) saw d) hadn't seen

16 .... I started my profession; I have met a lot of excellent students.
إدارة نجع حمادى - قنا ٢٠٢٢
a) When b) Since c) After d) Before

17 She has had that car since she .... to learn how to drive.
a) starts b) had started c) will start d) started

18 This is the best book I .... all my life.
a) still have read b) had ever read
c) have never read d) have ever read

19 I have visited my uncle ....
a) three times ago b) three times last week
c) three times this week d) yesterday

20 A: Have you seen that film? B: Yes, I .... it yesterday.
a) see b) have seen c) would see d) saw

21 Yara hasn't gone to school .... the last two weeks.
a) since b) for c) when d) on

22 Mum .... to the shops. Let's see what she bought for us. مدرسة أسوان الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢
a) is being b) is going c) has gone d) has been

23 Your car .... It's ready to use now.
a) has already repaired b) was being repaired
c) hasn't been repaired yet d) has already been repaired

24 We ate a lot yesterday, but we .... much so far today.
a) have eaten b) haven't eaten c) didn't eat d) hadn't eaten

25 The ceiling was white, and now it is yellow. Someone .... it.
a) had painted b) has been painted
c) has painted d) had been painting

26 She was in Marina for the summer. This means that ....
a) she spent every summer in Marina
b) she spends this summer in Marina
c) she spent part of the summer in Marina
d) she spent all the summer in Marina

27 My father has been to England for two years. This means that he ....
a) is in England now b) is back now
c) will be back soon d) won't go there

28 Has Ashraf finished his work? He is so quick! This means that ....
a) Ashraf finished his work quicker than I expected
b) Ashraf finished his work later than I expected
c) Ashraf hasn't finished his work yet
d) Ashraf has finished his work when I expected him to finish

29 I haven't met my future wife yet. This means that ....
a) I don't expect to marry now
b) I expect that I won't marry in the future
c) I expect that I will marry in the future
d) I don't like to marry

30 A: Have you ever visited the Pyramids? B: Yes, I visited them on holiday.
This means that ....
a) the holiday is still going on b) I have gone on holiday
c) the holiday is over d) the holiday is fantastic

Test Yourself in 20 min



Unit 3
Lessons 1 & 2

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The play that I attended in the .... was one of the best plays ever.
a) cinema b) stadium c) television d) theatre

2 Luxor and Aswan are our great historic cities where we can see many ancient .... and tombs.
a) trembles b) temples c) cinemas d) factories

3 We .... our parents a lot for what they have done for us to be what we are today.
a) owe b) own c) lend d) borrow

4 Yousef's computer .... were not good enough for the job.
a) skills b) experiences c) debts d) machines

5 I think there is no .... for mistakes in the second term if you want to succeed.
a) a room b) rooms c) rooming d) room

6 All of us must .... our president in his plans for a better future for our country.
a) support b) suppose c) hinder d) report

7 I spent most of my .... in the field of communications in the USA.
a) profession b) work c) career d) job

8 There was an expression of pain and .... on his face.
a) misery b) miser c) miserable d) missing

9 I don't think the food .... cooked yet.
a) has been b) had been c) was d) will be

10 I haven't met my university colleagues .... a long time.
a) for b) until c) when d) since

11 This is the third time my Facebook account .... this year.
a) has hacked b) was hacked
c) was hacking d) has been hacked

12 I haven't met my friend since he .... abroad a year ago.
a) travelled b) had travelled c) has travelled d) travels

13 Saad Zaghlool .... into exile المنفى twice; to Seshel and Malta.
a) has sent b) was sent c) will send d) sent

14 Have you done your work alone ....? I can't believe it!
a) yet b) already c) ever d) just

15 She has been in Damanhour .... the day of her arrival from Upper Egypt.
a) for b) yet c) already d) since

16 .... The boss needs it urgently.
a) Had the email been printed? b) Has the email already printed?
c) Will the email be printed? d) Has the email already been printed?

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Dangerous substances discharged by factories cause toxic or poisonous air pollution. The emissions have serious effects on public health. Needless to say, exposure to high levels of these toxic emissions will cause a lot of human suffering through chest ailments and diseases.

Toxic chemicals, which do not break down easily in the atmosphere, have been known to travel great distances and come down to earth. Moreover, pollutants emitted from automobiles, cars and other means of transport and dry cleaners are considered very dangerous. In this way, a huge quantity of cancer-causing chemicals are released into the air.

Benzene is known to cause leukemia to humans. This is a serious problem to human health. The World Health Organisation "W.H.O." reaffirms that the gap of the ozone layer has been widening. Two thirds of the layer that protects the globe have been completely destroyed.

Ozone absorbs the harmful ultraviolet rays that cause skin cancer and damage eyesight.

Many countries are now taking action to reduce pollution. But, this pollution problem may solve itself when the world oil wells have run out. Then we hope that alternative sources of energy will have been found.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ozone layer, being widened by pollutants, ...
   - **a)** prevents ultraviolet rays from coming down to earth
   - **b)** protects the globe
   - **c)** allows ultraviolet rays to come down to earth and cause human suffering
   - **d)** absorbs the harmful pollutants
2. Toxic chemicals ....
   - **a)** break down easily in the atmosphere
   - **b)** do not break down easily in the atmosphere and don't come down to earth
   - **c)** come down to earth because they do not break down easily in the atmosphere
   - **d)** are emitted from the atmosphere and come down to earth
3. Toxic emissions sometimes cause ....
   - **a)** ultraviolet rays to break down easily
   - **b)** chest ailments and other diseases
   - **c)** ultraviolet rays
   - **d)** the reduction of pollution

4 A suitable title for the passage is "..................".

a) Ultraviolet rays

b) Toxic air-pollution

c) Leukemia in humans

d) The World Health Organisation

5 .... of the layer that protects the globe are remaining.

a) Two thirds

b) One third

c) Three fifths

d) Half

6 The ozone layer is important because ....

a) it wraps the earth

b) it prevents the harmful rays from reaching the earth

c) it protects the space from the sun

d) it protects the other planets from the earth

7 Industry is responsible for polluting the environment because ....

a) factories don't pay taxes

b) factories discharge dangerous substances

c) many people work in industry

d) building new factories takes a lot of water

8 When the petrol runs out from the world, ...

a) there will be a big problem in energy price

b) the pollution will disappear

c) there will be an energy crisis

d) the deserts will fade

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. We should do great efforts to develop sports by all means[1] and this is the responsibility of the government and the individuals as well.

....

....

2. Terrorism is one of the worst and most complicated problems that has a lot of destructive[2] effects on both citizens and the society.

....

....

3. It is believed that money is the root of all evil. It is considered the main reason for deviation[3], addiction[4], committing crimes and even wars among countries.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- يلعب الآباء والمعلمون وكذلك الإعلام[٥] دورًا هامًا فى تشكيل شخصية الأطفال، وتعديل سلوكياتهم[٦] ليكونوا مواطنين صالحين.

....

....

٢- مما لا شك فيه أننا نعيش فى عصر العلم والتكنولوجيا. فالكمبيوتر والإنترنت من الاختراعات التى جعلت كل شىء من السهل أن يحدث.

....

....

٣- إن إنشاء الكثير من مكتبات المدارس والمكتبات العامة ساهم فى[٧] تحسين العملية[٨] التعليمية بوجه عام وساعد الكثير من الأطفال والشباب على القراءة بحرية.

....

....

How to translate

١- الصفة تأتى دائمًا قبل الموصوف فى الجملة باللغة الإنجليزية a rich man (not) ~~a man rich~~.

٢- الترجمة الحرفية غير مطلوبة تمامًا ويجب البعد عنها:

يساهم فى contribute to (not) contribute in.

ساعد على help ... to (not) help ... on.

٣- كلمة يجعل ترجمتها make وقاعدتها make + object + inf./adj.

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

1. A short story you read and liked very much.
2. How societies benefit from improving the lives of their individuals.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

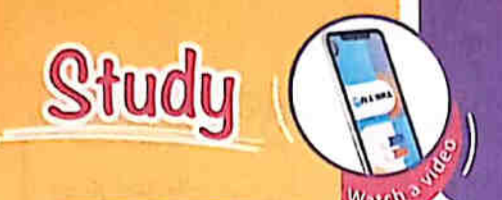
....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.

(1) وسائل
(2) مدمر
(3) الانحراف
(4) الإدمان
(5) media
(6) behaviour
(7) contribute to
(8) process





Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

★ Can you give examples for voluntary work?

Key Vocabulary

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
community (n)	مجتمع	voluntary work (n)★	عمل تطوعى
culture (n)	ثقافة	youth association (n)	جمعية (اتحاد) شباب
food bank (n)	بنك الطعام		

Vocabulary on Reading

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
main (adj)	رئيسى	solve (v) – d	يحل
paint (v) – ed	يرسم	solution (n)	حل
plan (v) – ned/(n)	يخطط/خطة	surprise (n) (v) – d	مفاجأة/يفاجئ
planning (n)	التخطيط	touch (v) – ed	يلمس

Vocabulary on Reading

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
admit (v) – ted	يعترف	grow up (v)	ينضج
adult (n)/(adj)	شخص بالغ	later (adv)	فيما بعد
around (adv)	حول	nowhere (adv)	لا مكان
break (v)/(n)	يكسر/راحة	stepfather (n)	زوج الأم
disabled (n)	معاق	trick (n) (v) – ed	خدعة/يخدع
dreamer (n)	حالم	trust (v) – ed	يثق
the Egyptian Red Crescent	الهلال الأحمر المصرى	unusual (adj)	غير معتاد
experience (v) – d (n)	يجرب/خبرة		

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

as much as	بقدر ما	make a difference	يصنع اختلافًا
do a great job	يقوم بعمل عظيم	send ... to	يرسل إلى
do work for	يقوم بعمل من أجل	play a trick on	يخدع
give ... back to	يرد ... إلى	stop ... from	يوقف ... من
most of ...	معظم	unusual for	غير معتاد لـ
return to	يعود إلى	write down	يدون
put ... into	يضع ... في	go wrong	يخطئ/يسوء

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
admit	يعترف	admission	اعتراف/إقرار	admissible	مسموح/مقبول
------------------------------		culture	ثقافة	cultural cultured	ثقافي مثقف/متحضر
dream	يحلم	dream dreamer	حلم شخص حالم	dreamy	حالم/غامض/كثير الأحلام
disable	يُعجِز	disability	إعاقة	disabled	ذو احتياجات خاصة
associate	يرتبط/يتحد	association	اتحاد/منظمة	associated	مترابط
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteer	متطوع	voluntary	تطوعي

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonyms المرادف	Antonym المضاد
admit	يعترف	confess/acknowledge	deny/renounce ينكر
culture	ثقافة	civilisation/art	ignorance جهل
lucky	محظوظ	fortunate	unlucky/unfortunate غير محظوظ
main	رئيسى/أساسى	major/essential	minor/trivial غير هام/تافه
trust	يثق	believe/place confidence in	doubt/disbelieve يشك/لا يصدق
unusual	غير معتاد	uncommon/ unconventional	usual/conventional/common معتاد
voluntary	تطوعى	willing/free	involuntary/unwilling غير تطوعى

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

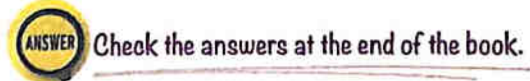
1 People from many different .... will get together during the conference.
a) solutions b) experiences
c) cultures d) machines

2 The walls of my old house are in a bad need to be ....
a) painted b) planned c) solved d) fainted

3 Finally, the thief .... stealing the money from my neighbours.
a) avoided b) refused c) dreamed d) admitted

4 Doctors and nurses .... a great job to help us to face COVID-19.
a) make b) do c) play d) give

5 He managed to .... me into lending him a lot of money.
a) trick b) track c) trace d) trek



Have you read any short stories recently? Who is your favourite author?

Listening Text



Let's talk about how to write a great short story. It's important to plan[1] your story. It should have four parts. At the start, we find out when and where the story is happening[2] and we meet the main character[3]. Don't spend too much time describing[4] places and people – your characters need to do something from the start.

In the second part of the story, the main character has a problem or something goes wrong. It's a good idea to have two or more problems. After that, the problem or problems are solved and everything is OK again. In this third part of the story, there should be a surprise[5] for the reader. Finally, we find out what the characters do next, so, what happens to them when things are OK again.

(1) يخطط
(2) يحدث
(3) الشخصية الرئيسة
(4) يصف
(5) مفاجأة

What are the elements of a short story?

Workbook Text (1)

David Copperfield grew up with his mother and his stepfather[1], Mr Murdstone.

Then David's mother died and Mr Murdstone took him to live with Mr and Mrs Micawber. David had to leave[2] school and work in a factory[3]. Then Mr Micawber went to prison[4] and David had nowhere to live. Without a home to live in, David visited Aunt Betsey and she took him to live with her friend, Mr Wickfield. A man called Uriah Heep also lived with Mr Wickfield and his daughter, Agnes, but David didn't trust[5] him. Some time later, Uriah Heep played a trick[6] on Aunt Betsey and took her money and David worked hard to help her. When David found Uriah Heep, he admitted[7] that he took Aunt Betsey's money and David made[8] him give it back to her. Then David went travelling around Europe.

When David returned to England, he married Agnes and he became a successful writer.

(1) زوج الأم
(2) يترك
(3) مصنع
(4) سجن
(5) يثق
(6) خدع
(7) اعترف
(8) أجبر

Workbook Text (2)

Tarek : In my opinion the Egyptian Food Bank[1] (EFB) is making the world a better place because it helps people who haven't got enough money for food, and it teaches[2] all of us to think more.

Samira: I have experienced[3] the work of Tomorrow's Dreamer Youth Association[4]. In my opinion, it shows young people that they can make a difference[5], and it teaches them about other cultures[6] and communities. They are doing a great job by helping to educate[7] a lot of young people.

Maher : The Egyptian Red Crescent[8] helps a lot of people every day. When there is a big health problem, we always see the doctors from the Red Crescent on TV. But they also work with communities to stop health problems from happening. One day, I want to do some voluntary work[9] for them.

(1) بنك الطعام المصرى
(2) يعلم
(3) يجرب
(4) منظمة الشباب الحالمين بالغد
(5) يحدث فرقًا
(6) ثقافات
(7) يعلم
(8) الهلال الأحمر المصرى
(9) العمل التطوعى

Golden Question

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- When .... your dinner?

  a) did you eat
  b) have you eaten
  c) will you be eaten
  d) you have eaten

Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

community — مجتمع
▸ people who live in a place or an area and have common interests

culture — ثقافة
▸ the beliefs and traditions of a group of people

food bank — بنك الطعام
▸ a place where people collect food to give to others

voluntary work — عمل تطوعى
▸ a job that people do for no money

youth association — جمعية شباب
▸ a group of young people who do things together

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

1

later	فيما بعد	▸ I'm going out for a bit. I'll see you later.
latter	الأخير	▸ I met Ali and Samy; the latter seemed exhausted.

2

make + (object) + inf.	يجعل	▸ I like him because he makes me laugh.
make + (someone/ something) + adj.	يجعل	▸ He wants to make the world a better place.
force + (object) + to + inf.	يجبر/يجعل	▸ She forced her daughter to sleep early.

3 Let's + inf.

Let's go out. = What about going out?

هيا .. (تستخدم للاقتراح) = How (What) about + v-ing ...?
Shall we + inf. ...?
Why don't you/we + inf. ... .
I suggest + v-ing ... .

ويستخدم للاقتراح أيضًا

4 spend + time + (v + ing)* يقضى وقتًا

- I spent three hours playing video games with my friends.

spend* ينفق (يصرف) مالًا

- My wife spent a lot of money last week.

* Actually, we spend time and money.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- I have experienced the work of the association.

كلمة experience تأتى فعلًا بمعنى يجرب أو يقوم بـ.

- One day, I want to do some voluntary work for youth.

من المعتاد استخدام one day لتعبر عن الماضى ولكن أيضًا تستخدم لتعبر عن المستقبل كما فى المثال.

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Students need to .... their study more carefully to pass their exams.
   a) plane b) plan c) play d) plain
2. He doesn't want his mother to marry after his father's death. He doesn't like to have a ....
   a) stepmother b) colleague c) stepfather d) father
3. I always study hard as I don't want to .... failure.
   a) experience b) experiment c) except d) exert
4. My grandfather has the ability to .... amazing stories.
   a) say b) do c) tell d) ask
5. I always make my sons .... on themselves.
   a) to depend b) depending c) to depending d) depend

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

I think number one is (b), do you agree?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1. The .... reason for learning English is to get a better job in the future.
   a) minor b) main c) later d) mean
2. This bicycle is too big. My feet don't even .... the ground.
   a) stop b) trust c) touch d) clutch
3. It is important to have a .... if you want to be better at your work and also your health.
   a) breakage b) breakaway c) fight d) break
4. The film is suitable for both children and ....
   a) adults b) kids c) toddlers d) babies
5. .... on, you will probably wish that you had listened to your parents' advice.
   a) Latter b) Late c) Lately d) Later
6. There were two options for me to study, English and History. I chose the ....
   a) latter b) late c) lately d) later
7. The contributions that parents make to the school funds تمويل are .... not compulsory. They can decide whether to share or not.
   a) obligatory b) voluntary c) volunteer d) prohibited
8. Although they are twins, their .... are quite different.
   a) persons b) associations c) characters d) work
9. The police could arrest the criminal when the woman .... him.
   a) prescribed b) admired c) admitted d) described
10. He is a very reliable person and so we can .... him to help us.
    a) trust b) trick c) admit d) make
11. The children spent their holidays with their father and .... who married him after their mother's death.
    a) stepmother b) granny c) grandfather d) stepfather
12. .... come with us to the cinema to watch the new film?
    a) Let's b) What about c) How about d) Why don't you
13. Youth .... is a group of young people who do things together. (أولاد على الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
    a) federation b) participation c) negotiation d) association
14. We need to work together to find sustainable .... to our problems.
    a) causes b) reasons c) savings d) solutions
15. As the room is very old, the .... was peeling off the walls.
    a) bee b) plant c) paint d) paintbrush

16 I think you are a/an ....! What you think about may never happen. You should concentrate on what is really happening.
a) dreamer b) illustrator c) realistic d) illusionist

17 We meet once a month to discuss the .... problems at Al-Salam Hotel.
a) opportunity b) character c) lucky d) community

18 Children need to .... things by themselves in order to learn from them.
a) expert b) experience c) experiment d) expire

19 Mr Gad spent a year in England .... Arabic.
a) teach b) to teach c) teaching d) be teaching

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

20 To learn everything from your teachers, you should write .... everything they say.
a) in b) for c) up d) down

21 Although he has a ...., he became first in the swimming competition.
a) disable b) disabled c) disability d) disabilities

22 Ahmed Hassan's name is always .... with the achievements and championships of the national team.
a) associated b) association c) associating d) associate

23 I hate those who like to .... tricks .... other people.
a) do/in b) make/on c) invent/with d) play/on

24 It is not usual .... my daughter to sleep early. I think she is tired.
a) for b) about c) from d) to

25 The inventions and discoveries of our great scientists .... a difference to our lives.
a) did b) played c) made d) paid

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 My daughter does a lot of voluntary work for Resala Charity Organisation. The word "voluntary" equals in meaning the words .... and ....
a) unwillingly b) free c) involuntary d) willing e) compulsory

27 She played minor roles in various fields before she became a famous actress. The antonyms of the word "minor" are .... and ....

a) unimportant b) major c) secondary d) trivial e) main

28 My daughter .... a very clever businessman who is very respected.
a) marry b) married to c) married d) is married to e) is marry to

29 Finally I .... that he was a liar and what he said was wrong.
a) founded out b) invented c) explored d) discovered e) found out

30 Several people described seeing "strange" lights in the sky. The synonyms of the word "strange" are .... and ....
a) common b) unfamiliar c) usual d) normal e) unusual

مدرسة ثانوية الكويت للبنات إدارة المنتزه التعليمية - الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢



Lessons 3 & 4



B Language



Extra points

١) بعد تعبيرات **This is the first/second/... time** نستخدم المضارع التام.

- This is the first time I have made this silly mistake.

٢) عند وجود دليل على انتهاء الفعل تمامًا بلا أثر فى الحاضر نستخدم الماضى البسيط.

- My friend has worked for this company for twenty years. (He is still working).
- My friend worked for this company for twenty years before retiring last year.

٣) عادة ما نستخدم المضارع التام عند ذكرنا للموضوع للمرة الأولى ولكن الماضى البسيط نستخدمه لتوضيح تفاصيل ما حدث.

- There has been a serious accident on the road to Cairo. It happened at 9 this morning when a lorry went out of control and hit a car.

٤) من الممكن استخدام مدة زمنية بعد (since) بشرط استخدام (ago) بعد المدة الزمنية.

since + a period of time + ago

- I have lived in this town since 10 months ago.

٥) من الممكن استخدام (since) كرابط يأتى بعده سبب أو تعليل.

- He was arrested since he stole my money.

٦) للسؤال عن وقت بداية الحدث نستخدم:

Since when + (has/have) + subject + (P.P.) ...?

- Since when have you married Noha? – Since 2002.

٧) للسؤال عن المدة التى استغرقها الحدث نستخدم:

For how long + (has/have) + subject + (P.P.) ...?

- For how long have you married Noha? – For 20 years.

٨) يستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم وما يزال أثره فى الحاضر أما إذا كان الأثر فى الماضى فيستخدم زمن الماضى التام.

- My car is very clean because I have washed it.
- My car was very clean because I had washed it.

٩) يستخدم مع التعبيرات التى تدل على أجزاء (اليوم - الأسبوع - الشهر - العام) بشرط إذا كانت هذه الفترة الزمنية لم تنتهِ وقت الكلام مثل:

this (morning/afternoon/evening)/today/tonight/this (week/month/year)

- I have watched a film tonight. (ما زالت الليلة ممتدة ولم ينتهِ بعد فى وقت الكلام)

أما إذا كانت قد انتهت وقت الكلام فنستخدم الماضى البسيط.

- I watched a film tonight. (الليلة انتهت وقت الكلام)

١٠) لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

It's + مدة زمنية + since + فاعل + (last) past simple ماضٍ بسيط

- It's two years since I met my friend Ali.

فاعل + last + past simple + ... + when + فاعل + past simple

- He last visited the Eiffel Tower when he was in France.

فاعل + past simple + (a moment ago - a short time ago – just now)

- She finished doing the washing up a moment ago.

(الفاعل) + (has/have) + never + (P.P.) + ... + before

- I have never been to China before.

فاعل + superlative (has / have) ever + P.P.

- He's the most intelligent person I've ever met.



- من الممكن استخدام الماضى المستمر مع تعبيرات all مع الماضى:

عند وجود ما يدل على استمرار الفعل وعدم انتهائه مع كلمات for – since – all نستخدم المضارع التام المستمر:

(has – have) + been + v-ing

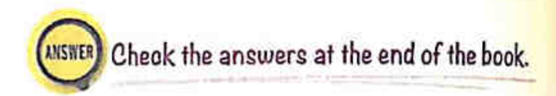
- Hams has been working for three hours and she hasn't finished yet.
- I have been playing football all day. I am really so tired.

١١) لاحظ هذه المقارنة بين المضارع التام والماضى البسيط:

Present Perfect	Past Simple
- I have been to Mansura and Tanta. (وقت غير محدد)	- I went to Mansura a week ago. (وقت محدد فى الماضى)
- Have you been busy this morning? (ما زلنا فى فترة الصباح ولم تنته)	- Were you busy this morning? (انتهت فترة الصباح وأصبحت ماضيًا)
- Have you had a nice time? (You have just returned)	- Did you have a nice time? (You returned sometime before the question).
- He has been a teacher for 20 years. (He is still a teacher).	- He was a teacher for 20 years. (He is no longer a teacher).

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's more than 20 years .... I travelled abroad.
   a) while b) before
   c) when d) since
2. My father .... in this company for 20 years now.
   a) works b) worked
   c) has been working d) is working
3. It is the first time I .... an actor.
   a) have ever met b) have never met
   c) ever meet d) never met
4. Waheed .... in Qena for ten years. Now, he lives in Alexandria.
   a) lived b) has lived
   c) were living d) had lived
5. Ahmed last had his car washed .... he was in Cairo.
   a) since b) while
   c) for d) when







Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Ali won the first prize for reading .... 2011.
a) since b) in c) from d) at

2 Yomna has begun to read short stories .... 2008.
a) since b) in c) for d) at

3 My friend hasn't visited Aswan .... he was young.
a) for b) when c) since d) after

4 He last went on holiday .... he was still a child.
a) for b) when c) since d) after

5 I have .... tried seafood and I have no desire to try it.
a) just b) ever c) lately d) never

6 Ramy .... PlayStation for two hours and he is still playing.
a) played b) has been played
c) has been playing d) is playing

7 Mr Fadel .... a teacher for 20 years now.
a) has been being b) has been c) was d) was being

8 It is an hour .... he phoned to ask me to go with them.
a) for b) when c) since d) while

9 Menna visited her close friend Sama ....
a) just b) just now c) ago d) yet

10 It has been two weeks since he .... abroad.
a) travelled b) has travelled c) travels d) travel

11 My kids are really pleased as this is the first time they .... the pyramids.
إدارة شرق الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
a) visited b) have never visited
c) have ever visited d) was visiting

12 They have .... cleaned the room. You needn't clean it again.
a) ever b) never c) already d) hardly

13 My daughter .... English all day. مدرسة أولاد على الثانوية ٢٠٢٢
a) has been studying b) has studied
c) had studied d) studied

14 Radwa .... ten letters today. She is still working.
a) has been writing b) has written c) wrote d) had written

15 It .... for three hours. The street is very muddy.
a) is raining b) had rained c) has rained d) rained

16 I have .... read a good book like this before. إدارة مركز منية النصر - الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
a) ever b) never c) yet d) before

17 His father .... He can't help crying.

a) had just died
b) just dying
c) has usually died
d) has just died

18 He .... by the police once already.

a) is warned
b) has warned
c) has been warned
d) had warned

19 He has lived in Cairo .... the age of sixteen.

a) in
b) on
c) by
d) since

20 Ola looks pale. She .... ill for long.

a) had been
b) has been
c) was
d) is

21 Since when .... ill?

a) is your father
b) has your father been
c) was your father
d) your father was

22 **A:** Have you cooked the food mum? **B:** Yes, I .... it an hour ago.

مدرسة بنى محمد سلطان - المنيا٢٠٢٢

a) have
b) cooked
c) have cooked
d) has cooked

23 He .... to Cairo. I will wait for him until he comes back. إدارة المقطم والخليفة - القاهرة٢٠٢٢

a) has been
b) has gone
c) goes
d) had gone

24 .... the death of her husband, I've never seen her smiling.

a) For
b) Since
c) So far
d) When

25 He wants to know .... I have been a member in this sports club.

a) since how long
b) for how long
c) for when
d) how long ago

26 I am sorry for coming late, sir. I .... the toilet.

a) have been to
b) have gone to
c) have been in
d) was being in

27 She has just finished cooking the food for them. This means ....

a) she has finished cooking the food for them a moment ago.
b) she has never cooked the food for them.
c) she has cooked the food for them for ages.
d) she cooked the food for them a moment ago.

28 I last played football on Monday. This sentence means that ....

a) I didn't play football since Monday.
b) I haven't played football since Monday.
c) I had played football on Monday.
d) I didn't play football on Monday.

29 Marwan is the cleverest student I have ever seen. This means that ....

a) I have seen many clever students like Marwan
b) I have seen many students who are better than Marwan.
c) Marwan isn't as clever as the students I have ever seen.
d) It is the first time to see a student who is clever like Marwan.

30 Ashraf has been working as a waiter for 3 years. This means that ....

a) he didn't work as a waiter.
b) it's 3 years since he left his work as a waiter.
c) he still works as a waiter.
d) he no longer works as a waiter.



Lessons 3 & 4



General Skills

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.



(I) Life Skills

Empathy التعاطف

- I am so sorry for that bad news.
- Sorry for hearing your bad news.
- What bad news!



(II) Writing

- **How to prepare for writing a short story?**
  1. You should first plan your story. (Time, place, problem and the main characters)
  2. Use adjectives and adverbs to describe people and actions briefly.
  3. As the story continues, mention the problem and how was it solved.
  4. There should be a lesson/moral that we should learn from your story.



A story of good luck

Five years ago, the night train from Cairo to Aswan was full of passengers. One of the passengers was called Maher. He was travelling to Aswan to see his aunt and uncle. Suddenly, the train stopped. Maher looked out of the window and found that they were in the middle of the country and everything was black. His train stopped because there was something in front of it which looked like a man in a big black coat. The man was moving his arms up and down slowly. Maher thought that it was terrifying. Two passengers started to walk towards the man in the black coat but couldn't touch him. Two other men came and said that all passengers were lucky as the train stopped. There was a terrible crash ahead.

A car accident caused the bridge to collapse on the railway. Luckily, there was a big light on the front of the train and in the middle of the big light, there was a butterfly. When it moved, its wings made a big shadow which looked like a man moving his arms. So, all passengers were saved thanks to their good luck.

Test Yourself in 20 min



Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... entrance to the building is on the other side. You can reach it easily.
   a) main b) mean c) plain d) mane
2. There have been a lot of useful activities for young people since the youth .... was formed in our city.
   a) charitable b) prison c) association d) society
3. I think that it's a very good .... to improve the reputation of the company.
   a) community b) culture c) association d) opportunity
4. Really, he didn't .... to drop the vase, it was an accident.
   a) ask b) tell c) plan d) solve
5. To everyone's ...., my favourite team lost the match yesterday.
   a) luck b) surprise c) fun d) madness
6. In our ...., it is rude to ask someone how much they earn.
   a) culture b) admittance c) character d) dream
7. The government tries hard to provide all facilities for ....
   a) the disable b) the disability c) disabled d) the disabled
8. It is known that most .... the shops and companies are shut on Fridays.
   a) from b) of c) in d) about
9. The little boy is crying because he .... over and injured his arm.
   a) has fallen b) is falling c) had fallen d) was falling
10. We .... to a fantastic journey in Aswan last week.
    a) have taken b) are taking c) were taken d) took
11. Since the computer was used in schools, remarkable progress in education ....
    a) has made b) made
    c) was making d) has been made
12. The court will punish the gang العصابة as soon as they .... them.
    a) had arrested b) have arrested c) arrested d) will arrest
13. The last time we attended a party was .... we were 20 years old.
    a) since b) while c) already d) when
14. The famous player says that he has played football .... as long as he can remember.
    a) for b) when c) since d) while
15. Farida has gone to school. This means that she .... there.
    a) is still b) is no longer c) was d) won't be
16. Maha is so tired as she .... so hard since morning.
    a) has worked b) will work
    c) had been working d) has been worked

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Plants have been used for treating illnesses since primitive times. Paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs show that plants were being used by the Ancient Egyptians for medicinal purposes. Today, some modern drugs are still based on natural herbs. Aspirin, for example, is based on the bark of the willow tree.

Natural remedies are attracting increasing attention all over the world. The advantage of herbal medicine is that the whole of the plant can be used: the powerful substance in the plant cures the illness while the contents of the rest of the plant may help to prevent any harmful side effects. In this way, herbal medicines may be safer than chemical ones. Garlic is just one plant that has been used throughout the world as a cure for diseases as it is used to treat hair problems. Similarly, henna, which is known to be good for the hair, can also be used in the treatment of cancer.

If you pay a visit to a herbalist shop in Cairo, you will be struck by the different colours and smells. There are jars full of tree barks, roots, powders, oils and spices. The customer enters the shop and explains his symptoms to the herbalist, who will take notes, study medical reports and check his reference books before writing out a prescription.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Natural remedies are attracting attention because they ....
   a) are used in Egypt
   b) have side effects
   c) are exported from Egypt
   d) can treat a lot of diseases
2. Garlic is an example of ....
   a) natural remedies
   b) artificial herbs
   c) chemical medicines
   d) modern drugs
3. The pronoun "his" in the last paragraph refers to the ....
   a) herbalist
   b) shop
   c) customer
   d) prescription
4. Herbal medicine is more effective than chemical medicine because ....
   a) it's cheaper and cleaner
   b) it's easily found and easily taken in
   c) it cures and protects from side effects
   d) many local people benefit from selling it

5. The antonym of the underlined word "advantage" is ....
   a) demerit
   b) advancement
   c) disagreement
   d) agreement
6. The main idea of the passage is "................".
   a) The Herbal Medicine Benefits
   b) The Chemical Medicine Disadvantages
   c) The Faculty of Medicine
   d) The Trees Can Cure
7. Which sentence is NOT correct about natural herbs?
   a) They're used for treating illnesses since primitive times.
   b) They were used in the paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs.
   c) They can be fried on fire to be served.
   d) Some drugs are still based on natural herbs.
8. The bark of the .... is used to make aspirin.
   a) bush tree
   b) shadow plant
   c) palm tree
   d) willow tree

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. There are a lot of people who are miserable[1] as they don't have enough money to live on[2] or a place to live in.

....

....

2. Researches say that we must have a hobby to refresh ourselves and ease the bad effects of work stress[3].

....

....

3. Without confidence[4] or belief[5] in your own power, you cannot achieve success or happiness.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- يقال إن البشر فى خطر دائمًا نتيجة لتدخلهم فى الطبيعة بسبب جشعهم[٦] وغبائهم[٧] وقد يتسبب هذا التدخل فى ظهور أنواع جديدة من الأمراض التى ليس لها علاج.

....

....

٢- يجب على الحكومة المصرية متمثلة فى وزارة الصحة الاهتمام بتطوير المؤسسات الطبية لكى تتمكن من مواجهة أى خطر فى المستقبل.

....

....

٣- نحن الآن نعيش فى مجتمع يعمل فيه الرجل والمرأة جنبًا إلى جنب[8] بحقوق متساوية[9].

....

....

How to translate

١- كلمة (يُقال) يتم ترجمتها إلى المبنى للمجهول كما يلى It is said that مثل كلمات أخرى (يعتبر – من المتوقع – ----) it + passive + that + sentence.

٢- كلمة (قد) تعبر عن الاحتمال وتكون ترجمتها may/might + inf.

٣- كلمة (لكى) من الكلمات التى تعبر عن الغرض وترجمتها تكون (to – in order to – so as to) + inf.

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

1. How to reduce the number of young people who give up education at early ages.
2. The positive effect of improving lives of poor people.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. — I used the right structure. — I used a topic sentence. — I wrote the conclusion. — I used the right punctuation.

(1) بائس
(2) يعيش على(ينفق)
(3) ضغط/توتر
(4) ثقة
(5) إيمان
(6) greed
(7) stupidity
(8) side by side
(9) equal

Study Chapter 3 (Treasure Island)

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

attack	يهاجم	gang	عصابة
bank	مصرف/ضفة نهر	join	ينضم إلى/يلحق بـ
barrel	برميل	mean	يعنى/يقصد
crew	طاقم	mutiny	تمرد/عصيان
crutch	عكاز	own	يمتلك
destination	المكان المقصود/جهة الوصول	parrot	ببغاء
empty	فارغ	past	مارًا أمام
explain	يشرح/يفسر	patient	صبور/مريض

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

agree with	يتفق مع	nearly empty	شبه فارغ
become blind	يصاب بالعمى	pay for	يدفع لـ
climb inside	يتسلق للداخل	prepare to	يستعد لـ
full of	ملىء	run after	يلحق
go on a journey	يذهب فى رحلة	the front of	مقدمة
go on the ship	يصعد السفينة	tired of	متعب من
happy about	سعيدٌ بشأن	walk around	يتجول
happy to	سعيد لـ	took some time to	استغرق بعض الوقت لـ
look after	يعتنى بـ	wait that long	ينتظر هذا الوقت الطويل
make me laugh	يضحكنى	walk up	يسير متجهًا

Novel Exercises

Chapter (3)

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I saw a lot of ships and boats in the .... this morning.
a) station b) airport c) harbour d) navy

2 A .... of men attacked the prison and broke some prisoners out.
a) band b) gang c) pirate d) collection

3 I like .... as they are beautiful and can speak like people.
a) cats b) lions c) butterflies d) parrots

4 My son is getting very tired .... waiting for his exams.
a) by b) of c) in d) at

5 We were lucky when we found the train quite .... and we could sit.
a) empty b) crowded c) busy d) occupied

6 We weren't told about the .... of our journey. It was a secret.
a) position b) formation c) distinction d) destination

7 The workers threatened that there will be a/an .... if conditions don't improve.
a) matter b) mutiny c) attack d) mutual

8 The price of oil today is about 100 dollars per ....
a) barrier b) barrow c) barter d) barrel

9 My uncle had a bad accident and had to walk on ....
a) crutches b) catches c) cuffs d) secrets

10 You shouldn't tell anyone about your computer password. It must be ....
a) obvious b) available c) secret d) scared

11 In the past, ships were attacked by .... who were very savage.
a) pirates b) birds c) pilots d) animals

12 This device is designed for .... people as it works by voice.
a) deaf b) blind c) dump d) blond

13 I like walking on the .... of the river with my friends enjoying the beauty of nature.
a) shore b) beach c) coast d) bank

14 There was a violent storm and nearly all the .... of the ship met their end.
a) staff b) group c) crew d) pack

15 I couldn't understand the lesson, so I asked my teacher to .... it again.
a) prepare b) express c) join d) explain

Advanced & Open
General Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Too much dust during the storm .... my clothes and they needed cleaning.
a) stopped b) dirtied c) frowned d) blew

2 We must .... all our experience in solving this problem.
a) employ b) imply c) supply d) reply

3 The team's victory today has .... them a place in the finals.
a) gained b) wanted c) beat d) earned

4 We didn't have any .... when we sold our house. How miserable!
a) gain b) win c) losses d) action

5 Hospitals today are far .... from what they were 50 years ago.
a) similar b) benefited c) removed d) employed

6 The factory closed down because the owners couldn't make it ....
a) lay b) pay c) stay d) beat

7 The weather in Egypt, for the most ...., is mild and sunny.
a) place b) position c) site d) part

8 The water .... has burst and we have to get a plumber.
a) main b) major c) minor d) mean

9 Only members will be .... to the club for tonight's performance.
a) arranged b) borrowed c) admitted d) owed

10 Your password must contain at least nine .... either numbers or letters.
a) personalities b) identities c) activities d) characters

11 Finally, we .... for the name of his new child. We named him "Mohamed".
a) plumped b) owed c) owned d) imprisoned

12 The manager's cruelty .... the employee's spirit.
a) mended b) broke c) repaired d) supported

13 He .... the motor because the weather was terrible and he couldn't continue his journey.

a) enabled b) disabled c) broke d) postponed

14 He .... great pain after the accident. Now he is trying to recuperate.

a) earned b) spread c) expired d) experienced

15 They will be very angry with you if they find out that you .... on them!

a) die b) discover c) spend d) rat

16 I didn't notice the thief .... I was watching the match.

a) during b) since c) for d) just

17 The couple .... for 7 years when I met them. It was in 2015.

a) have married b) married
c) have been married d) had been married

18 My father has worked in this company .... 5 years ago.

a) during b) since c) for d) just

19 I haven't met my colleagues .... the last conference.

a) during b) since c) for d) just

20 Was it the first time that you .... been to London?

a) have ever b) had ever c) have never d) are never

21 I .... a cake. Would you like some?

a) 've been to make b) 've made
c) 'd been made d) 'd been making

22 I enjoyed the film as I saw many places I've never ....

a) gone b) been to c) been d) arrived at

23 I .... football this afternoon and we lost 3-2.

a) played b) had played c) have played d) was playing

24 They have lived in Europe .... fall.

a) during b) since c) for d) just

25 Samira is my best friend, I .... her for 5 years now.

a) know b) have known
c) have been knowing d) am knowing



Al-Adwaa Test



Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 Those who .... ill from time to time should see a doctor regularly.
a) become b) make c) do d) get e) go

2 After months without rain, the ground was too hard to plough. The antonyms of the word "hard" are .... and ....
a) soft b) delicate c) rocklike d) blank e) pure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3 The children were .... to survive the fire which destroyed their home.
a) cultured b) unusual c) lucky d) unfortunate

4 It's the worst thing, he has no job and .... to live.
a) where b) nowhere c) anywhere d) somewhere

5 All he needs is a/an .... to show his ability.
a) opportunity b) solution c) admittance d) unusual

6 It would .... you to get your teachers' advice before taking your final exams.
a) harm b) hurt c) gain d) pay

7 Scientists' death is a grievous loss to the whole of the ....
a) opportunity b) character c) lucky d) community

8 In what ways do British and Australian .... differ?
a) cultures b) pictures c) characters d) dreams

9 I haven't seen my younger sister .... I miss her very much.
a) long time b) firstly c) sometimes d) lately

10 I am a student in the third secondary grade. I .... English for twelve years.
a) learn b) learnt c) have learnt d) am learning

11 We .... our friends for a year. They are too busy.
a) never have met b) haven't met
c) have met d) haven't been met

12 The teacher has explained the lesson .... the whole week.
a) when b) as long as c) for d) since

13 Noha .... the house for three hours. She looks very tired.
a) has been cleaning b) had been cleaning
c) has cleaned d) was being cleaned

14 My son .... the thief running away a moment ago.

a) have seen b) has seen c) see d) saw

15 My family has lived in Mansura .... the day I was born on.

a) for b) when c) while d) since

16 I can't go to bed now because I .... my homework yet.

a) haven't done b) don't do
c) hasn't done d) hadn't done

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Dear Mr. Reda,

I hope everything is OK with you. Yesterday, I had a night party with my friends, so I had to stay up very late. Let me tell you that the party was amazing. We had lots of fun there. The food was tasty and fresh; those people are excellent at hosting guests. However, I don't like fish at all; they should have asked me what to eat. Never mind! The video games were up-to-date and I beat them all. My friend's father loves sports, so we enjoyed playing table tennis and volleyball. But, let me tell you that all of them liked my outfit. They laughed out loud once they saw me with my fascinating orange shoes, red trousers and checked-colourful shirt. Ahmed and Amgad threw tissues at me. I am always fashionable as you know. At the end of the day, we had many pictures which you can find in the attachments below. I couldn't find any transport, so I requested a ride. It cost only half the price of my sunglasses which costs 150 pounds. When I got home, I realised that I had forgotten my wallet at my friend's, but my mother solved the problem and the driver was understanding. Anyway, I'm writing to inform you that I will not show up today because I haven't done any task yet and I'm tired a little bit because of the dancing.

See you soon, my manager.

Best regards,

Anas

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The writer thinks that his friends ....

a) didn't like his appearance b) liked his appearance
c) made fun of his appearance d) were ashamed of his shoes

18 The underlined word "up-to-date" means ....

a) old b) ancient c) modern d) fast

19 The house, where the party was held, is ....
a) narrow b) vast c) boring d) old-fashioned

20 What is the purpose of this passage?
a) The writer wants to tell a story.
b) The writer is not going to work.
c) The writer is proud of his mum.
d) The writer is showing his abilities.

21 According to the passage, the writer is ....
a) careful b) punctual c) careless d) hard-working

22 How much did it cost the writer to go home?
a) 150 pounds. b) 300 pounds. c) 75 pounds. d) 225 pounds.

23 The writer sent .... in the attachment.
a) his tasks b) his shoes c) his photos d) nothing

24 How could the writer pay for the ride?
a) He paid by a visa card.
b) He asked the driver to return to his friend's house.
c) His mother paid for him when he reached home.
d) The driver didn't take money.

25 **Translate into English:**

- إن اختيار الوظيفة المناسبة مهم للغاية لأنك تحتاج إلى الاستمتاع بعملك حتى تحقق النجاح. لكن عليك أن تتأكد أن هذه الوظيفة لن تؤثر على حياتك الشخصية.

....

....

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

Practising activities at school is very important, so teachers should encourage their students to take part in various activities.

....

....

27 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

The advantages of living in a civilised city.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Revision (1)

Units 1, 2 & 3

Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

adjectives (n)	صفات	face (n) (v) – d	وجه/يواجه
association (n)	مؤسسة	inspire (v) – d	يُلهِم
beginning (n)	بداية	join (v) – ed	ينضم لـ
boyhood (n)	الصبا	junior (adj)	ناشئ
championship (n)	بطولة	middle (n)	منتصف
champion (n)	بطل	national team	فريق قومي
change (v) – d	يتغير	professional (adj) (n)	محترف
character (n)	شخصية	surprise (n) (v) – d	مفاجأة/يفاجئ
club (n)	نادٍ	tournament (n)	مباراة/مسابقة
end (n)	نهاية		

Vocabulary on Listening

colourful (adj)	ملون/زاهي الألوان	marine life (n)	الحياة البحرية
count (v) – ed	يعد	observe (v) – d	يرصد/يراقب
experience (n) (v) – d	تجربة/يجرب	pocket (n)	جيب
feed (v)	يُطعم	snake (n)	ثعبان
flood (v) – ed	يفيض	tiring (adj)	متعب
lie (v)	يرقد	volunteer (n) (v) – ed	متطوع/يتطوع

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

(be) married to	زوجت إلى	in the end	فى النهاية
an end to	نهاية لـ	lay eggs	تضع البيض
at the same time	فى نفس الوقت	learn about	يتعلم ... عن
based on	قائم على	move from ... to	ينتقل من ... إلى ...
do puzzles	يحل الألغاز	play for	يلعب لصالح
find out	يكتشف	return from	يعود من
get experience of	يحصل على خبرة فى	swim off into the sea	يتحرك للسباحة فى البحر
go for a holiday	يذهب فى إجازة	the end of	نهاية (شىء)
go wrong	لا يسير على ما يرام		

Reading Text (1)

Raneem El Weleily

Raneem El Weleily is one of Egypt's most famous faces. She was world champion of the squash World Open in 2017, when she beat another Egyptian, Nour El Sherbini. She also twice reached the final in 2014 and 2016 and was the world's top women squash player in 2019. Raneem was born in Alexandria in 1989. She first played for Egypt's squash team when she was only ten. She became World Junior Champion in both 2005 and 2007 before winning her first competition as an adult in 2009. She is now married to another top squash player, Tarek Momen. When she is not playing squash, she likes to listen to music and do puzzles, but it is her success at squash that has inspired many young Egyptians to play the game.

Reading Text (2)

Mohamed Elneny

Mohamed Elneny is a famous Egyptian footballer. He is a strong player, and he has played for the Egyptian national team more than 60 times. He has scored more than six times for Egypt, and he is often on television. Elneny was born in 1992 and moved from his boyhood club Al Ahly, in Cairo, to Al-Mokawlon in Nasr City in 2010. He played for Al-Mokawlon at the same time as Mohamed Salah, and the two footballers became good friends. In 2013, Elneny went to Switzerland and joined Basel, one year after Salah went to the same club. Then Elneny went to London, England to join Arsenal.

He is still good friends with Salah. 'I'm happy to have been with him since the beginning and he has not changed,' he says.

Reading Text (3)

Why write a long book when you can write a short story? A short story can have 200 words or less. The writer can't describe many people or places and so there aren't so many adjectives in a short story. However, we still need a beginning, a middle and an end to the story. And the story needs to be interesting, so we include important information and an interesting main character, but perhaps only one. In fact, it can be interesting to write in the first person (I did this …) and then the person telling the story is the main character.

Readers can't learn much about this character, perhaps not even their name, but something has to happen to them. This might be a surprise, a problem or something that goes wrong. Readers don't always find out what the character does in the end, but they need to be able to imagine the end of the story.



Listening Text

Presenter : Many people want to work with animals or to help the environment. A good way to get experience of this kind of work is as a volunteer. This means working without money, sometimes in another country, and it can be very hard work, but most young people love the experience. We spoke to three young student volunteers to find out what they did during their summer holidays last year.

Adam : Hi, my name's Adam. I spent the summer working with an organisation based on the Red Sea coast in Egypt. It's a beautiful place and many people go there for a holiday. Most tourists like to go diving to see the colourful fish. However, there are so many tourists know that some of the fish are finding life difficult. My job was to help monitor the impact tourists are having. So, while the tourists were at the beach, or swimming in the sea, I was on a boat counting and monitoring marine life in different areas. It's important to know where the fish are and how many there are of them.

Then, at the end of the day, while the tourists were eating in restaurants, I was with a team helping to clean the beaches. It was hard work, but I really enjoyed it. I'm sure my work has helped people to understand the impact tourists have on the Red Sea.

Lara : My name's Lara and I've recently returned from Greece. I spent most of my time on a quiet beach watching big turtles! These beautiful animals visit the same beach every year to lay their eggs. They lay a lot of eggs, but many of the eggs are taken by birds, or flooded by the rain and the sea.

These turtles are endangered, so each one of their eggs is important. It was my job to help protect the eggs and to stop tourists visiting the areas where the eggs lie in the sand. It can be a bit of a disaster when tourists visit and put sun umbrellas in the same place as the turtle eggs!

The work was very tiring because we often worked at night. So when my friends were sleeping, I was there on the beach! But it was a great place and I loved observing the big, slow turtles when they left the beach and slowly swam off into the sea. In my opinion, it's a great project and I've learned a lot more about conservation, too.

Munir : I'm Munir and I've just spent an amazing few weeks in the north of Thailand. It's a very isolated area and I had to take an internal flight to get there. Thailand is known for its elephants, and many farmers use them on their farms. The elephants are also used to carry tourists. Not all the elephants have an easy life, so I worked with conservationists who were trying to help elephants return to a more natural life in the wild. The elephants are very intelligent and it was amazing helping to feed them. It was not easy work, though. The rainforest was very hot, and there were a lot of dangerous snakes and insects. On one day, a spider bit me on the hand when I was putting something in my pocket. My hand swelled up and I thought, Oh, no! I have a big problem! But local people told me that the spider wasn't a dangerous one, and after a day or two my hand was fine. I don't think everyone would find life in Thailand easy, but I loved it. I've even learnt some Thai. Now I can communicate with Thai people as well as the elephants!



Workbook Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Smart cards .... everywhere nowadays.
a) use b) are used c) are using d) uses

2 Most football players .... a lot of money.
a) win b) beat c) earn d) fill

3 Tourism is .... when we protect touristic places.
a) crowded b) sustainable c) unique d) noisy

4 I .... my friend since September.
a) didn't see b) hadn't seen c) haven't seen d) wasn't seen

5 Village people build their houses with local ....
a) tourists b) environments c) animals d) materials

6 I passed the exam! I'm over the ....
a) moon b) ground c) sky d) earth

7 While I was revising my lesson, my mother .... dinner.
a) was preparing b) preparing c) is preparing d) prepares

8 When you visit the doctor, he or she often checks your blood ....
a) pressure b) levels c) speed d) score

9 My uncle is very .... He always buys me a big present when he visits me.
a) sustainable b) generous c) spicy d) unkind

10 The local people benefit when lions ....
a) is protected b) isn't protected c) are protected d) protects

11 I always try to .... food and clothes to my local charity.
a) sell b) want c) owe d) donate

12 Mona was leaning out of the boat when she .... her phone.
a) drops b) is dropping c) dropped d) was dropping

13 We all .... Mohamed Salah because he is polite and generous.
a) hate b) respect c) discourage d) avoid

14 Ahmed's parents have lived in the same house .... 25 years.
a) when b) since c) for d) ago

15 The man stole a lot of money, so he was sent to ....
a) trek b) prison c) an organisation d) home

16 There are very few of these kinds of turtles now, they are ....
a) safe b) isolated c) endangered d) dangerous

2 Complete the text with the past simple or past continuous form of the verbs in brackets:

Last year, we ....(1)............ (travel) to the beautiful city of Venice in Italy. It was very crowded, but we ....(2)............ (enjoy) our holiday. On the first day, we ....(3)............ (take) a boat trip on the Grand Canal. As we ....(4)............ (sail) along, my camera ....(5)............ (fall) into water! Of course I ....(6)............ (be) very angry, but then I found a shop and ....(7)............ (buy) a different camera on our way back to the hotel.

3 Complete the sentences with the present perfect or present simple passive form of the verb in brackets:

1 Tarek is still waiting for the bus because it .... not (arrive) yet.
2 Sara .... (never read) a book by Charles Dickens, but she wants to.
3 My father .... (work) in a bank for 15 years.
4 I .... (just finish) my homework, so let's go to the park!
5 The students in our school .... (encourage) to work in pairs for some activities.
6 The cattle .... (give) food by the farmers in the winter.
7 Thousands of photographs .... (take) of the Pyramids every day.
8 Egyptian children .... (teach) English from an early age.

4 Translate into Arabic:

1 It's the first time I have ever done voluntary work.
2 The pharaohs made a great civilisation thousands of years ago.

5 Translate into English:

١- تطور مصر السياحة البيئية لكى تحمى البيئات المختلفة بساحل البحر الأحمر.

٢- أعطانى أبى هذا الكتاب فى الأسبوع الماضى، ولكنى لم أنته من قراءته حتى الآن.

6 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Short Story

It was late and Sara wasn't expecting visitors. She sat alone in her room, with only her laptop and books for company. Her phone was off and she wasn't checking her email. There were too many people in her life with too many problems. And Sara was trying to write her first short story.

She imagined wild adventures in **distant** lands full of exciting people, but Sara knew that she had to keep it simple. As she looked at the empty screen, an idea began to build in her imagination. It was a simple idea and people would understand. She began to type. The words came easily, filling the screen. Then the lights went out and Sara sat in the dark. Now there was only one question: did she remember to save her work?

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1 Sara kept herself away from everything because she wanted to ....
a) have time to be with herself
b) think of a new idea for her story
c) think of a solution to a problem she has

2 Why wasn't Sara checking her email?
a) Her laptop wasn't working.
b) She didn't have any friends.
c) She didn't want to hear other people's problems.

3 The closest meaning to "**distant**" is ....
a) busy
b) remote and far away
c) not having a lot of people

4 What problem did the main character have?
a) She lost her story.
b) She forgot her story.
c) There was no electricity.

5 The antonym of the word "imagination" in the 2nd paragraph is ....
a) fantasy
b) fascination
c) reality

B) Answer the following questions:

6 What would you do if you were in Sara's place?
7 Is it important to have a good imagination? Why / Why not?
8 What do you think Sara will do next?

7 Write what you would say in the following situations:

1 A friend is bored. You know that he/she likes swimming. Suggest going to a pool.
2 You want to do some voluntary work. Ask a friend for some suggestions for what you can do.
3 A friend asks you how you found a visit to museum. It was very interesting.

8 Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences:

1 You bought me my theatre ticket yesterday, so I own you some money.
2 Mohamed Salah is a roll model to many young Egyptians.
3 It is easy to get friends when you start university.
4 We tricked into the White Desert but it was really exciting.
5 Salma was travelled around Europe when she lost her passport.
6 I have read that book two years ago.
7 Mona lived in this house since she was two.
8 The organisation is base in France.
9 Did your brother studies History at university?
10 The Earth go round the sun.

9 Choose one of the two topics. Write about (150) words on the topic:

1 Write a review of a book that you like. Include the title of the book, the main characters, a summary of the plot and who you would recommend the book to.
2 Describe a story that you want to read. What kind of story is it? Who is in the story and where does it happen?



Novel Exercises

Chapters (1-3) SB

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The people tried to catch the thief, but he ....
a) caught b) escaped c) arrested d) managed

2 Be careful or you will fall off the ....; it's very steep.
a) mountain b) hall c) well d) cliff

3 We .... much to our great teachers.
a) take b) lend c) owe d) borrow

4 Black Dog is .... ; he has lost his sight.
a) deaf b) blind c) dumb d) crippled

5 Outside the building, there are two men whose job is to .... and protect us.
a) guard b) attack c) prevent d) own

6 The thief had a long curved .... on his cheek, so we could recognise him.
a) skate b) sky c) skin d) scar

7 What a brave young man! He was the only student who .... to say the truth.
a) could b) dared c) refused d) disagreed

8 A .... is a group of people who work against the law.
a) gang b) crew c) staff d) team

9 Unfortunately, the burglar .... the house.
a) stole b) took c) owed d) robbed

10 The ship .... helped each other to control the situation well.
a) gang b) staff c) crew d) team

11 A .... is a bird with brightly coloured feathers that can learn to copy human speech.
a) chick b) duck c) parrot d) pirate

12 The police usually look for a .... to solve a crime.
a) clue b) key c) lock d) case

13 There are .... in this villa. They do all the housework.
a) managers b) gentlewomen c) masters d) servants

14 The .... questioned the criminal to know the truth.
a) gang b) manager c) magistrate d) soldier

15 **A:** What is the .... of the Hispaniola?
B: It's headed to the treasure island.
a) situation b) destination c) position d) condition

16 Flint and his men are .... They attack ships and take money and goods by force.
   a) pirates   b) drivers   c) pilots   d) divers

17 A .... is a large container made of wood or metal.
   a) tin   b) jar   c) barrel   d) cup

18 The thief .... my bag and ran away.
   a) lent   b) borrowed   c) grabbed   d) gave

19 The child seemed to be ill. He was thin and ....
   a) fit   b) strong   c) pile   d) pale

20 A .... is a weapon with a long pointed blade and a handle.
   a) gun   b) sword   c) bomb   d) pistol

2 Match the people or things to the descriptions:

1. Redruth	**a)** the blind man
2. Long John Silver	**b)** an important rich man
3. Pew	**c)** strong man with one leg, who is a good cook
4. Mr Dance	**d)** a servant to Mr Trelawney
5. Mr Trelawney	**e)** the head of the police
6. Black Dog	**f)** a good ship to use for finding the treasure
7. Hispaniola	**g)** a man with three fingers on one hand

3 Answer these questions:

1 Why do you think the Captain chose the Admiral Benbow as a place to stay?

....

2 Why do you think Mr Trelawney told everyone on the ship about the treasure?

....

3 Do you think Jim should trust Mr Trelawney? Why/Why not?

....

4 Pew is blind and Flint is dead. What do you think happened on their last voyage?

....

5 What is Silver's secret plan on the Hispaniola?

....

6 Why do you think they chose Silver to be part of their crew on the Hispaniola?

....

4 **Who is the speaker of each quotation? Who is the speaker talking to and why does the speaker say this?**

1 "Ah, yes. I've seen him in my inn before. He sometimes comes with a blind man."

....

2 "I don't like the men on this ship and I'm not happy about where we're going."

....

3 "Are you worried there will be a mutiny?"

....

4 "You must be patient."

....

5 **Read the quotation and answer the questions:**

"I know Long John Silver is a good man, but I don't think Captain Smollett is."

1 Do you think Trelawney and Jim's first impression on Captain Smollett was right? Why?/Why not?

....

2 Agree or disagree with the quotation giving evidence to support your opinion.

....

6 **Imagine that you are Jim. Write a letter to your mother telling her about what has happened since you left England.**

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Al-Adwaa Test



Units 1, 2 & 3

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 I've been so miserable since my father's death. The synonyms of the word "miserable" are .... and ....
a) depressed b) sad c) lively d) trustful e) fatigued

2 My wife arranged the flowers in a vase. The antonyms of the word "arrange" are .... and ....
a) disorder b) adore c) detest d) loathe e) disarrange

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3 She is a/an .... for many women in business. They want to follow her example.
a) sign b) importance c) role model d) landmark

4 Runners should not run while they are ....
a) ambitious b) injured c) active d) dead

5 The food is ...., garlicky and delicious.
a) spicy b) cold c) flavourless d) cool

6 The money was .... to the child who was diagnosed as having cancer.
a) donated b) stolen c) supported d) called

7 Put some ice on your knee before it .... up.
a) treks b) swells c) leans d) isolates

8 The change in leadership will have a huge .... on government policy.
a) environment b) coast c) impact d) damage

9 Amal generally speaks Arabic, but she .... English now.
a) speaks b) is speaking c) spoke d) speak

10 When I arrived at the house, he .... I didn't want to wake him up.
a) slept b) has slept c) was sleeping d) is sleeping

11 I .... this old car for twenty years now.
a) have had b) have been having
c) has had d) am having

12 Suppose your friends .... you to go with them to London, would you accept?
a) ask b) asks c) have asked d) asked

13 It is a very long time .... they invited us to dinner.
a) for b) just c) when d) since

14 He didn't answer my phone because he .... on his work.
a) concentrated b) was concentrating
c) has concentrated d) had concentrated

15 Nobody .... of the crime; the old man committed suicide.

a) are accused b) accused c) accuses d) is accused

16 As soon as you .... in Giza, I'll be waiting with an amazing tour program.

a) arrived b) have arrived c) will arrive d) had arrived

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Overeating is inadvisable. Eating too much food is the surest way to an early grave. It's a myth that all fat people are happy. Being overweight is bad for health. It leads to heart diseases, high blood pressure, etc. Medical science has proved that animal fats, excessive sugar and carbohydrates are harmful. Fat people feel miserable because they lose grace. Therefore, fat people suffer psychologically arid physically. People diet for a number of very good reasons. The ideal human form is slim. Fat men and women are unattractive to look at. Ready-made clothes are hard to obtain for fat people. They tire easily and this is a sign of bad health. All famous footballers and sports champions are slim. For this reason, insurance companies charge fat people higher premiums. It is advisable for fat people to go on a diet to avoid spreading hips, protruding tummies and double chins. In this case, it is not wrong to wage war on fat. Health is wealth. But it should be taken into consideration that going on a diet does not mean starving yourself to death. Malnutrition has a very bad effect on health and sometimes it may give health a death-blow. Going on a diet should not be strict unless it is prescribed by a doctor. One last piece of advice is not to listen to the advertisements which say, «Wonderfood is a complete food, just dissolve a teaspoon of food in water. A complete food it may be.» Be natural, take only enough food. Don't eat too much. Be moderate and you can avoid fatness.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 To appear graceful and beautiful, we ....

a) should eat excessive carbohydrates

b) should have spreading hips, tummies and double chins

c) should avoid overeating

d) should starve to death

18 Strict diet should be carried out when ....

a) we want to increase weight b) we swallow carbohydrates

c) it is inadvisable d) doctors recommend it

19 Malnutrition is harmful because ....

a) fat people are always happy b) it has a good effect on health

c) it is harmless d) it has a bad effect on health

20 "Health is wealth." This means ....
a) a wealthy man is a healthy man
b) you can't enjoy health if you are wealthy
c) health and wealth go hand in hand
d) health is a precious thing

21 The pronoun "It" in the 3rd line refers to ....
a) overeating b) overweight c) food d) myth

22 Medical science has proved that animal fats and sugar are harmful when they are ....
a) neutral
b) too much
c) dissolved in water
d) mixed with carbohydrates

23 When people tire rabidly, ...
a) they are healthy
b) they are lazy
c) this indicates bad health
d) this is a sign of early death

24 The main idea of the passage is ....
a) keeping exercising makes a good player of you
b) footballers pay less money to insurance companies
c) being fat is very harmful for your health
d) advertisements always tell lies about health

25 **Translate into English:**

- يجب على كل طالب أن يعمل بجد ولا يضيع وقته فى الجلوس لساعات أمام التلفاز حتى يحقق كل ما يحلم به فى المستقبل.

....

....

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

The Egyptian businessmen should invest their money in national projects that serve the society and provide job opportunities for youth.

....

....

27 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

A review of a poem you read.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!



Unit 4

Making new friends

Objectives

Reading	: A magazine article about moving to a new town
Writing	: An email to a magazine's problem page
Listening	: A radio phone-in about bullying at school
Speaking	: Having a debate
Language	: Articles, countable/uncountable nouns
Life Skills	: Respect for diversity; communication





Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

advice (n)	نصيحة	noticeboard (n)*	لوحة ملاحظات
connection (n)	صلة/علاقة	take something for granted	يعتبر أمرًا مفروغًا منه - مسلمًا به

* Where can we see the noticeboard?

Vocabulary on Reading

article (n)	مقال	join (v) – ed	يلتحق بـ
conversation (n)	محادثة	magazine (n)	مجلة
cool (adj)	رائع	personal (adj)	شخصى
enjoy (v) – ed	يستمتع بـ	personnel (n)	قسم شئون العاملين
face (v) – d	يواجه	relax (v) – ed	يسترخى
favourite (adj)	مفضَّل	stressed (adj)	مضغوط
feel (v)	يشعر بـ	stressful (adj)	مُجهِد
follow (v) – ed	يتبع	team sport (n)	رياضة جماعية
friendship (n)	صداقة	teammates (n)	أعضاء الفريق
grade (n)	مرتبة/تقدير	teenager (n)	شخص مراهق
individual sport (n)	رياضة فردية	wear (v)	يرتدى

Workbook Vocabulary

(be) allowed	مسموح له
extra (adj)	إضافي
information (n)	معلومات
practice (n)	تدريب
useful (adj)	مفيد

★ I feel like a monster when I am hungry.

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

break-time	وقت الراحة/الفسحة
busy + (v-ing)	مشغول بـ
do practice	يتدرب
do team sports	يمارس رياضات جماعية
enjoy yourself	يقضي وقتًا ممتعًا
feel better	يشعر بتحسن
feel like*	يشعر وكأنه
give advice	يعطي نصيحة
get easier	يصبح أسهل
go online	يدخل على الإنترنت
ask for	يطلب
connect with	يتصل بـ
connected to	مرتبطًا بـ
good at	جيد في
good for	مفيد لـ
good to	عطوف على/بارًا بـ
go out with	يخرج مع
make friends	يكوّن صداقات
make it easier	يجعله أسهل
on my own	بمفردي
part of a team	عضو في فريق
pass an exam	يجتاز اختبارًا
spend time with	يقضي وقتًا مع
instead of	بدلًا من
move to	ينتقل إلى
revise for	يراجع من أجل
stressed about	مضغوط بشأن
talk about	يتحدث عن
talk to	يتحدث إلى

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
------------------------		teenager	مراهق	teenage	خاص بفترة المراهقة
advise	ينصح	advice adviser	نصيحة مستشار	advisable advisory	مستحسن/ مستحب استشارى/نُصحى
connect*	يتصل	connection connector	اتصال/ارتباط وصلة/موصل	connected	مربوط/موصول
converse	يتحاور/يناقش	conversation	محادثة/حوار	conversational	تحاورى/عامى
grade	يصنف/يقيم	grade	درجة/رتبة	graded	مصنف/متدرج
grant	يهب/يمنح	grant grantee grantor	منحة/عطاء مُعطًى له مانح/واهب	granted	ممنوح/متاح
personify	يجسد/يشخص	person personification personality	شخص تجسيد/تشخيص الشخصية	personal personable	شخصى جذاب/حسن المظهر
practise	يتمرن	practice practitioner	تدريب صاحب مهنة	practising practised	ممارس خبير
relax	يستريح	relaxation	راحة/ارتياح	relaxed relaxing	مستريح/مسترخ مريح
stress	يضغط/يشدد على	stress	ضغط	stressed stressful	مرهق مُجْهِد

* - The cable connects the device to the internet.
- There is a connection between the two devices.
- The two devices are connected.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
connection	صلة/علاقة	relation/contact	separation/disconnection انفصال/عدم اتصال
cool	رائع	neat/fashionable	bad/uncool سيئ
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	appreciate/savor/like	detest/dislike يشمئز/يكره
face	يواجه	confront/encounter/endure	withdraw/avoid ينسحب/يتجنب
favourite	مفضل	preferred/favoured/popular	unpopular/disliked غير محبوب/مكروه
follow	يتبع	pursue/chase	avoid/neglect يتجنب/يهمل
join	يلتحق بـ/يربط	unite/attach	detach/disconnect/disunite يفصل
relax	يسترخي	calm/rest	irritate/worry يقلق/يتوتر
start	يبدأ	begin/initiate	end/finish ينهي

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 There is a clear .... between crime and poverty.
a) communication b) connection c) prediction d) line

2 Finally, she took my .... and gave up smoking.
a) advice b) advise c) advisable d) advises

3 It is important to .... the instructions of your doctors to be better.
a) neglect b) ignore c) tell d) follow

4 I read a/an .... about global warming in the newspaper today.
a) title b) noticeboard c) article d) information

5 Holidays always give us a chance to ....
a) relaxed b) relax c) nerve d) relaxing





Check the answers at the end of the book.

What do you think is the best thing to do when you are in a new town?

Reading Text (1)

New in town



It's day one at a new school in a new town[1]. You've got all the paper and pens you need. You're wearing cool new clothes. But you don't know anyone and you're not sure where to go. Starting at a new school feels so hard[2] because you don't have any friends there to help you. It's very easy to feel stressed[3], but life will get easier. Here's some advice to help you.

Don't take it for granted[4] that other students will start a conversation[5].

Ask other people questions about themselves. Everyone likes talking about themselves. Try asking them about their favourite subjects or which sports they like and don't ask too many personal[6] questions.

You can only make friends if you spend[7] time with them! The best way to do this is to join clubs or do team sports[8] you like. Go online or look at the noticeboard at your school and find out what's happening. If you're part of a team, your teammates[9] will feel connected to you and that connection could become a friendship.

(1) مدينة
(2) صعب
(3) مضغوط
(4) يعتبر أمرًا مفروغًا منه
(5) محادثة
(6) شخصي
(7) يقضي
(8) يمارس رياضة جماعية
(9) أعضاء الفريق

While you're busy talking to other students, don't forget to study. Remember to do your homework so you don't have any problems with your teachers. Those teachers can also give you some advice on how to make friends and enjoy life in your new town. Talk to them too.

What three things does the writer say you should do to make friends and feel happy at a new school?

Reading Text (2)

What kind of problems do you think a student might face at school?



To : problems@teen-magazine.com

Subject: Help! I don't have any friends at my new school!

Dear Aunt Carol,

I think it is difficult[1] to make friends.

I don't have any friends at my new school. I am always on my own[2] at break-time[3]. Yesterday, I talked to a girl in my class. I asked her if she wanted to do some homework with me but she said no.

I need some advice about how to make friends. Do you have any advice for me?

(1) صعب
(2) وحدى/بمفردى
(3) فترة استراحة

What do you think is the answer for this problem?

Who do you resort to for advice if you have a problem?




To : problems@teen-magazine.com

Subject: Help! I'm really stressed!

Dear Aunt Carol,





I always work very hard[1] at school, but I'm really stressed about some exams I have next week.

The first two exams are 3 hours long and will be very difficult. The last[2] exam is in a subject I'm not very good at. I've spent a lot of time studying in the library[3] this week, but that hasn't helped me feel better[4].

I need some advice about how to relax[5], please.

(1) باجتهاد
(2) الأخير
(3) مكتبة
(4) يشعر بتحسن
(5) يسترخى

Suggest two ways you use to relax.

Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

advice نصيحة
- an opinion someone gives to help you

connection صلة/علاقة
- something that brings people together

noticeboard لوحة الإعلانات
- a thing on a wall that people put information on

take something for granted يأخذ شيئًا من المسلمات
- to think something is true or will stay the same

Notes on Vocabulary

look at ينظر إلى	The men all turned to look at her as she entered the room.
look for = search for يبحث عن	She looked for a new flat to buy last month.
look up يبحث عن كلمة في قاموس أو معلومة في مرجع	Look the word up in your dictionary if you don't know its meaning.
look forward to يتطلع إلى	My mother says she's looking forward to meeting you.
look like يشبه	What did the man look like?
look out = watch out احترس	Look out! There's a car coming.
look after = take care of يعتني بـ	Don't worry, I'll look after the kids tomorrow.

1

Word	Meaning	Example
wear	يرتدى (شكل الملابس كاملًا على الشخص)	We wear light clothes in summer.
put on	يقوم بارتداء (تعبر عن الحدث وليس نوع الملابس)	Put on your shoes. We are late for school.
dress	يرتدى (بدون مفعول)	I got up early, dressed and went to school.
dress + مفعول	يلبس شخصًا لا يستطيع اللبس بنفسه	My wife dressed our daughter, Noha.
(be) dressed in = wear	يرتدى	She is dressed in a white jacket. = She is wearing a white jacket.

2

Word	Meaning	Example
life	الحياة بوجه عام	There is no life on the moon.
a life	وصف الحياة	We hope to live a better life.
the life	فترة حياة شخص	The life of blind people is difficult.

3

Word	Meaning	Example
paper (uncountable noun)	ورق (مادة خام)	Dictionaries are usually printed on thin paper.
papers (n)	جرائد/وثائق/أوراق رسمية	I like to sit in bed and read the Friday papers. The border guards stopped me and asked to see my papers.
a paper	صحيفة	My father likes to read a paper every day.

4

Word	Meaning	Example
connected to	متصل بـ (شيء يتصل مباشرة بشيء آخر مادى)	The printer is connected to the computer.
connected with	مرتبط بـ/له علاقة بـ (معنويًا)	Doctors believe that a lot of diseases are connected with pollution level.
contact	يتصل بـ/يتواصل مع	Is there a phone number where I can contact you?
contact	تواصل/اتصال وهنا تأخذ حرف الجر with	We need a contact with the outside world.

5

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- But you don't know anyone and you are not sure where to go.

لاحظ هنا أن where رابط يأتى بعده .to + inf
يمكن أن نستخدم أدوات الاستفهام كرابط how - when - where - why ويأتى بعدها .to + inf

- Starting at a new school feels so hard.

يستخدم gerund (verb + ing) كفاعل ويعامل معاملة المفرد.

- I need some advice about how to make friends.

لاحظ هنا ان كلمة advice لا تجمع فلا يجوز استخدام .advices

- It's very easy to feel stressed.

يتبع الفعل feel صفة.

- Everyone likes talking about themselves.

عندما تأتى everyone فى بداية الجملة يعود عليها ضمير الجمع وكذلك .everybody

- The best way to do this is to join clubs or do team sports you like.

يستخدم الفعل do مع كلمة sports وتساوى فى المعنى كلمة .play

Suffixes (-tion/-ion)

- تصاغ بعض الأسماء من الأفعال بإضافة اللاحقة (-tion) أو (-ion) مع حذف حرف (e) إذا انتهت به الكلمة.

Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
connect يتصل	connection اتصال	pollute يلوِّث	pollution تلوث
communicate يتواصل	communication تواصل	pronounce ينطق	pronunciation نطق
inform يخبر	information معلومات	produce ينتج	production إنتاج

Think of other examples!

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Yesterday, I had to stay home to look .... my sick aunt.

a) for
b) after
c) up
d) forward to

2 It is very kind of you to .... the little baby while I am washing the dishes.

a) dress
b) wear
c) put on
d) press

3 Mr Saeed is a .... manager in one of the biggest companies.

a) personal
b) personality
c) personnel
d) person

4 .... is full of ups and downs.

a) The life
b) A life
c) Living
d) Life

5 I want everybody to open .... books on page 50.

a) his
b) their
c) her
d) them

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 The teaching profession is very ……………, but it's the most important.
a) stress b) pleased c) stressed d) stressful

2 I always benefit from my teacher's advice as it is really …………… .
a) useless b) harmful c) useful d) deadly

3 I hate using social media. They make me …………… . أسوان الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢
a) happy b) stressed c) praised d) dressed

4 It is taken for …………… that bullying is a bad behaviour which we all must change. يوسف كحك الثانوية – الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
a) denial b) granted c) refusal d) decided

5 No one is …………… smoke here. It is forbidden.
a) allowed b) allowed to c) forbidden d) allowing

6 The …………… that we have made at school often last forever.
a) communications b) accusations
c) suspects d) friendships

7 In most of the world's countries, it is obligatory إجباري for youth to …………… the army after finishing school.
a) leave b) enter c) join d) go

8 To get some legal advice, you can ask a lawyer to tell you …………… .
a) to do b) what do c) what will you do d) what to do

9 Ali doesn't like anyone to …………… him after 10 p.m. إدارة غرب شبرا التعليمية ٢٠٢٢
a) contact b) connect c) communicate d) link

10 To be healthy, everyone should be able to remain …………… under pressure.
a) cold b) nervous c) cool d) angry

11 This restaurant is a great …………… of mine. I like it very much.
a) distracted b) favourite c) favour d) personal

12 I saw Mona and Safaa sitting in the corner deep in …………… .
a) articles b) advice c) friendship d) conversation

13 When installing a washing machine, it is important to ………… the instructions carefully.
a) allow b) flow c) follow d) borrow

14 Very few students passed the final exams with a ……… "A" as they were so difficult.
a) grade b) degree c) certificate d) qualification

15 The music of today is very popular with …………… . It suits their language style.
a) teenage b) teens c) teen aging d) teenagers

16 It has become quite difficult to deal with .... children.

a) teenage b) teens c) teen aging d) teenagers

17 The final match of the Egyptian team went into .... time.

a) extra b) lost c) missed d) passing

18 I am eager to put what I have learnt at school and university into ....

a) practise b) mind c) grade d) practice

19 Football is a team sport, but swimming is a/an .... sport.

a) alone b) group c) individual d) pair

20 .... your shoes quickly and hurry to catch your train to Cairo.

a) Dress up b) Take off c) Put on d) Wear down

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21 It is very healthy to .... sport every day.

a) take b) do c) go d) win

22 I like students who depend on themselves and do their homework ....

a) lonely b) by them c) on their owe d) on their own

23 My daughter is always busy .... for the exams.

a) studying b) to study c) to studying d) studied

24 I took my family on a journey to Luxor where they .... very much.

a) enjoyed them b) enjoyed themselves

c) pleased them d) amused them

25 To be fit, it's recommended to .... sports and eat less fat.

a) practise b) practice c) practitioner d) practised

26 Marwan always finds it easy to .... friends at school. He is very sociable.

a) give b) take c) do d) make

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

27 He must be happy because he had .... his final exams.

a) passed b) succeeded c) failed

d) succeeded in e) managed

28 My son managed to do all his work .... No one helped him.

a) lonely b) of his own c) on his own

d) only e) alone

29 The president faces the difficult task of putting the economy back on its feet. The synonyms of the word "face" are .... and ....

a) confront b) encounter c) withdraw d) irritate e) detest

30 They followed the plan that the manager had worked out. The antonyms of the word "followed" are .... and ....

a) pursued b) chased c) neglected d) succeeded e) ignored

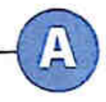




Lessons 1 & 2

B Language

1 Indefinite articles (a/an) أدوات النكرة



What Is The Difference Between A & An?

A

- تستخدم a قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يبدأ بصوت ساكن.

a boy/ a house/ a friend/ a table/ a problem/ a car



- تستخدم a قبل الاسم المفرد فى الكلمات التى تبدأ بحروف تنطق كأنه (u) مثل حروف (e-eu-ew).

a unit / a university / a uniform / a union / a European citizen / a useful tip / a ewe نعجة

- تستخدم a قبل الاسم المفرد فى الكلمات التى تبدأ بحرف (o) وينطق كانه (W).

a one-way street / a one-pound coin



An

- تستخدم an قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يبدأ بصوت متحرك.

an apple / an orange / an egg / an elephant / an eagle



- تستخدم an قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يبدأ بحرف ساكن غير منطوق ويليه صوت متحرك.

an hour / an honest man

تستخدم (a/an) فى الحالات التالية:

A/An

١) قبل الاسم النكرة الذى يذكر فى الجملة لأول مرة.

- When I was in the shop, I saw a boy with his two sisters.

٢) قبل الوظائف والمهن والحرف.

- My father is a carpenter.
- She is an engineer.

٣) قبل تعبيرات الكمية والأرقام مثل:

- a pair زوج - a couple زوج - a hundred مائة - a thousand ألف - a third ثلث - a quarter ربع - a fifth خُمس - a dozen دستة

- My son bought a dozen of pens. (This means that my son bought 12 pens.)

٤) قبل اسم مفرد عند تعريف الكلمات.

- A teacher is someone whose job is to teach others, especially in a school.
- An egg is a round object with a hard surface, that contains a baby bird, snake, insect etc.

٥) مع تعبيرات السرعة والزمن والنسبة والمسافة والسعر وعدد المرات بمعنى (فى: per)

- 100 pounds a kilo. (This means that 100 pounds per kilo.)
- 90 kilometres an hour.
- Two times a day.

٦) قبل الصفة إذا جاء بعدها اسم مفرد يعد.

(a/an) + الصفة + اسم مفرد

- My father bought a new book.

أما إذا كان الاسم الموصوف اسمًا لا يعد أو جمعًا لا نستخدم (a/an)

- My father bought new books.

٧) قبل الجنسيات إذا جاء بعدها اسم مفرد يعد.

- I met an American friend.

أما إذا لم يأت بعدها اسم فلا نستخدم (a/an).

- My friend is American.

أما إذا جاءت فى صيغة الجمع وقبلها (the) فتعنى الشعب.

- The Egyptians are very kind people.
- The Chinese are accurate and hard workers.

٨) مع الاختصارات التى تنطق كحروف منفصلة نستخدم (a/an) حسب بداية نطق الحرف.

- I sent an SMS to my friend yesterday.
- I downloaded an MP3 song online last week.
- Dad has a DVD, so he always buys CDs.

2 The definite article (the)

تستخدم (the) فى الحالات التالية:

The

١ قبل الأسماء الفريدة من نوعها (الموجود منها واحد فقط).

- the earth
- the sky
- the sun
- the North Pole
- the universe

٢ قبل الاسم الذى تم ذكره للمرة الثانية.

- I read a book. The book was really interesting.

٣ قبل صفات الدرجة الثالثة (صيغة التفضيل).

- Ali is the tallest boy at his school.

أما فى حالة وجود صفات الملكية (my – his – her – its – our – their – your) أو ('s) للملكية لا نستخدم قبلها (the).

- Nora is my best friend at school.
- Ali is my father's oldest uncle.

٤ قبل أسماء أو اختصارات البلاد التى تحتوى على:

Republic : جمهورية / Union : اتحاد / Kingdom : مملكة / State : ولاية /
Federation : اتحاد / Emirates إمارات

- The Arab Republic of Egypt = The A.R.E.
- The Kingdom of Saudi Arabia = The K.S.A.
- The United States of America = The U.S.A.

أو قبل أسماء الدول الجمع ... مثل:

- The Netherlands هولندا
- The Philippines الفلبين

أما أسماء الدول الباقية فلا يأتى قبلها (the) ... مثل:

- Egypt
- France
- Germany
- Sudan
- England

٥ قبل أسـماء الأنهار والبحار والمحيطات والقنوات ومجموعات البحيرات وسلاسل الجبال الجمع والكتب المقدسة والصحارى ومجموعة الجزر الجمع والصحف.

- the Pacific Ocean
- the Red Sea
- the River Nile
- the Alps
- the Great Lakes
- the Suez Canal
- the Caribbean Islands
- the Sahara
- the Quran
- the Times

أما إذا جاء الجبل مفردًا أو جاءت البحيرة مفردة أو الجزيرة مفردة ... فلا نستخدم (the).

- Lake Nasser بحيرة ناصر
- Kilimanjaro جبل كلمنجارو
- Sicily جزيرة سيشل

٦ قبل الآلات الموسيقية إذا جاء قبلها : (play - listen to - learn - teach - study - practise)

- I like listening to the piano with my family.
- Hany enjoys playing the guitar every day.

٧) قبل الاختراعات والاكتشافات.

- The mobile is one of the most important inventions.

أما إذا جاء اسم الاختراع جمع فلا يأتي قبله أداة.

- Mobiles become necessary in our lives.

أما إذا قصدنا من الاختراع الجهاز وليس الاختراع بشكل عام يسبق بـ(a/an).

- My father bought a mobile yesterday.

٨) قبل فصائل الحيوانات أو الطيور.

- The lion is very strong.

أما إذا جاء اسم الحيوان أو الطائر جمعًا فلا نضع أداة.

- Lions are very strong animals.

أما إذا قصدنا عددًا واحدًا من فصيلة الحيوان أو الطائر يسبق بـ(a/an).

- I saw a lion at the zoo yesterday.

٩) قبل الصفة للإشارة إلى الجمع.

the rich = rich people الأغنياء / the poor = poor people الفقراء /
the disabled = disabled people المعاقون

- We collected a lot of money to help the poor.

١٠) قبل أجزاء الزمن واليوم.

the future/ the past/ in the morning/ in the afternoon

١١) مع أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات والمناخ.

the government/ the police/ the United Nations/ the climate/ the weather/ the press/ the army/ the police/ the environment

١٢) قبل بعض الكلمات التي تفيد الترتيب ... مثل:

first/ second/ third/ only/ last

- Mohammed was the last one to arrive.
- It is the only chance for you.

١٣) قبل صفة المقارنة بمعنى (كلما .... ، كلما ....)

The + صفة مقارنة + فاعل + فعل + ..., the + صفة مقارنة + فاعل + فعل + ...

- The more you eat, the fatter you become.
- The faster you run, the earlier you arrive.

١٤) عندما نقصد شخصًا واحدًا لا يوجد غيره.

the President of Egypt/ the King of Denmark/ the Queen of England

١٥) مع بعض الأماكن (عادة أماكن التسلية والترفيه والخدمات) ... مثل:

the cinema/ the theatre/ the club/ the library/ the shop/ the post office

١٦) للإشارة إلى فترات زمنية وخاصة عقد من الزمان (فترة ١٠ أعوام) أو قرن (فترة ١٠٠ عام)

the twenties العشرينيات/ the sixties الستينيات/ the nineties التسعينيات

- I like reading for the great novelists of the 1900s.
- My mother hated the fashions of the 1960s.

١٧) قبل اسم العائلة الجمع للإشارة إلى كل أفراد العائلة.

- The Johnsons have lived in this house for many years.

١٨) قبل أجزاء جسم الإنسان.

- Moahmed Salah was wounded in the knee.
- How's the hand? Is it still hurting?

١٩) قبل ذكر التواريخ.

- I married on the 3rd of November, 1990.

٢٠) قبل بعض أسماء الأمراض ... مثل:

the measles الحصبة/ the flu الإنفلونزا/ the mumps النكاف/ the bubonic plague الطاعون الدبلى

- If one of the children got the measles, we all got the measles.

لاحظ أن هناك بعض الأمراض لا يأتى قبلها أداة ... مثل:

AIDS/ cancer/ malaria

- There are several medications that can be used to treat malaria.

٢١) قبل الأسماء (التى تشير إلى أحداث أو تغييرات) إذا جاء بعدها of.

- The **growth** of the steel industry is very big in our country.
- The **arrival** of our guests was very late.

٢٢) للتخصيص.

- The man who stole my money, was my neighbour.
- My brother lives in the big villa with a black door.

Got it

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

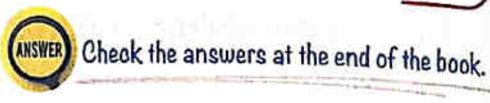
- Sam, where is .... chair which I asked you about?

a) a
b) an
c) the
d) no article

الإجابة هى (c) لأن الاسم chair تم الحديث عنه من قبل ويذكر للمرة الثانية.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The boy who saw .... thief went fast to warn his neighbours.
   a) a b) an c) the d) his
2. No problem! I'll buy you .... new one you saw online.
   a) a b) an c) the d) some
3. We dream of climbing .... Alps one day.
   a) an b) a c) the d) many
4. What do you know about ....?
   a) an ant b) ants c) the ants d) ant
5. Don't move! There is .... snake near you!
   a) the b) some c) a d) any



لا نستخدم أدوات نكرة أو معرفة فى هذه الحالات:

No article

١) عند التحدث عن الجمع بوجه عام دون تخصيص.

- Children are sometimes noisy.
- Vitamins are very important for our bodies.
- Men should be patient and hard working.

أما فى حالة التخصيص فنستخدم (the):

- The children in our street are sometimes noisy.

٢) مع الوجبات بوجه عام دون تخصيص.

breakfast/ lunch/ dinner/ supper

- I usually have breakfast at 7 o'clock.

أما فى حالة التخصيص فنستخدم (the):

- The breakfast at this restaurant is very expensive.

٣) مع الأسماء المعنوية بوجه عام.

advice/ freedom/ love/ sadness/ happiness/ beauty/ education/ success

- All countries try to develop education.
- The education in Egypt is in great progress.

٤) مع الألقاب المتبوعة باسم علم.

King Lear/ Professor Zewail/ President Nasser/ Doctor Magdy Yacoub

٥) مع كلمة home بعد أفعال (go – come – return).

- Mona **returned** home early last night.

لاحظ الجمل التالية:

- There's a home for the elderly at the end of our street.
- Ahmed moved out of the family home a year ago.

٦) مع كلمة work إذا جاءت بمعنى مكان العمل.

- I usually go to work in my car.

لاحظ الجملة التالية:

- The work here is very tiring. (وهنا يقصد طبيعة العمل وليس مكان العمل)

٧) قبل الأسماء التى لا تعد والكميات ومنها.

- oil/ water/ milk/ money/ meat/ juice, etc.: أسماء الطعام والشراب
- English/ Arabic/ science/ history/ physics: المواد الدراسية
- glass/ wood/ gold/ silver/ paper: المواد الخام
- football/ tennis/ basketball/ volleyball/ swimming: الألعاب الرياضية

٨) مع أسماء القارات.

Africa/ Europe/ Asia/ South America

٩) مع أسماء المدن والقرى.

Alexandria/ London/ New York

١٠) مع أسماء اللغات.

English/ French/ Turkish/ Chinese

أما إذا جاء بعد اسم اللغة كلمة (language) نستخدم (the):

- the English **language** / the Turkish **language**

١١) مع كلمة space إذا جاءت بمعنى الفضاء.

- I like reading about the history of space travel.

أما إذا كان المقصود مكانًا فارغًا فنستخدم قبلها the:

- The space between the house and the garage is very big.

١٢) مع كلمة television إذا كنا نقصد المعروض فى التليفزيون.

- Can you tell me what is on TV tonight?

أما إذا كنا نقصد جهاز التلفزيون فنستخدم the:

- **A:** Can you tell me what is on the TV?

  B: I think it's a vase.

١٣) مع الأماكن الآتية إذا كان الذهاب إليها أو استخدامها للغرض الذى أنشئت من أجله.

school/ bed/ hospital/ prison/ court/ church/ mosque/ college

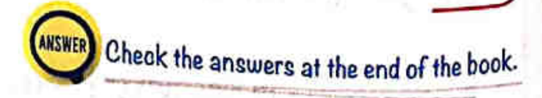
- I go to school to learn. **(I am a student.)**
- He made an accident and was taken to hospital. **(He was a patient.)**
- He committed a crime and was sent to prison. **(He was a prisoner.)**
- I went to bed early. **(I went to sleep.)**

أما إذا كان الذهاب إليها لغرض آخر ... فنستخدم (the):

- I went to the school to meet the headmaster. **(I was a visitor.)**
- He went to the prison to visit his friend. **(He was a visitor.)**
- My sister is standing by the bed. **(The word "bed" here means a piece of furniture.)**

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hytham is .... university student.
   a) a b) an
   c) the d) no article
2. During the eclipse, you must never look at .... sun directly.
   a) a b) the
   c) an d) No article
3. .... Egypt is a pioneering country in Africa and the Middle East.
   a) The b) A
   c) An d) No article
4. I think Omar Khairat is .... best musician in Egypt.
   a) a b) an
   c) the d) no article
5. Dad goes to .... work at 7, so he doesn't have .... breakfast with us.
   a) no article/the b) no article/a
   c) no article/no article d) the/a





Language Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Although Mai's father is .... engineer, she doesn't like maths.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

2 I bought a good basket made of .... plastic.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

3 I know that .... Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
مدرسة الفتح - الباجور - المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

4 Ali never tells lies. He is .... honest boy.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

5 My family members are interested in visiting .... United Kingdom.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

6 Nagwa likes playing .... violin before sleeping.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

7 Everyone should sleep at least 7 hours .... day to be fit.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

8 I work in .... European company. إدارة القناطر - القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
a) an b) no article c) some d) a

9 Nothing in our life is more important than .... happiness.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

10 .... is a difficult, but an interesting subject.
a) A physics b) An physics c) The physics d) Physics

11 We all know that .... brain can't be transplanted.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

12 It is .... first time that we have seen the temples of Luxor.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

13 The charity is trying to collect money for .... disabled.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

14 There are millions of stars in .... space.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

15 My father went to .... school as the headmaster wanted to meet him because of my troubles.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

16 Hatem always goes to .... school wearing a uniform.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

17 .... made the world a smaller place.

a) The planes have b) The plane has

c) Some planes have d) This plane has

18 They are talking to .... 8-year-old boy called, Ali. إدارة المقطم والخليفة - القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) an b) a c) no article d) any

19 I often like to listen to .... music to feel relaxed.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

20 My son had a nightmare yesterday. In .... nightmare, he was kidnapped by a gang.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

21 .... one-way road is needed to be constructed on the west bank of Aswan. إدارة وسط الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

a) A b) An c) The d) No article

22 I went shopping and bought .... computer for my son.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

23 I have just received .... SMS from my best friend. مدرسة أسوان الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢

a) a b) an c) some d) no article

24 .... are necessary for all kinds of jobs all over the world.

a) A computers b) An computers c) The computers d) Computers

25 Carpenters use .... glass and .... wood to make windows.

a) the/no article b) a/no article

c) an/no article d) no article/no article

26 .... Great Lakes are in .... North America.

a) The/no article b) A/no article

c) An/no article d) No article/no article

27 The journey to .... Cairo by train takes .... hour.

a) the/an b) a/no article c) no article/a d) no article/an

28 My father speaks Italian well. This means that he speaks .... well.

a) an Italian language b) the Italian language

c) Italian language d) an Italian

29 All giraffes are long-necked animals. This means that ....

a) the giraffes have long necks b) the giraffes have a long neck

c) the giraffe has a long neck d) the giraffes are long necks

30 We should do our best to help people who are deaf. This means that ....

a) we should do our best to help all people

b) we should do our best to help the deaf who need people

c) we should do our best to help the deaf who need urgent help only

d) we should do our best to help the deaf

Test Yourself





Unit 4
Lessons 1 & 2

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I read a wonderful book about .... of Gamal Abdel Nasser.
a) a life b) the life c) life d) living

2 My .... position when I play football is a goalkeeper.
a) favourite b) cool c) stressed d) distant

3 I had no close .... with other boys at school, so I feel lonely.
a) articles b) conversations c) advice d) friendships

4 I don't use a computer for writing. I write with a pencil and ....
a) papers b) the paper c) a paper d) paper

5 Please, do not hesitate to .... me if you want anything.
a) communicate b) connect c) collect d) contact

6 Click here to .... to the internet and send the email.
a) go b) attach c) join d) connect

7 He will know if he has passed or failed his exams as the exam results are on the ....
a) connection b) conversation c) advice d) noticeboard

8 Kamal finished high school, then he .... university to achieve his dream.
a) detached b) confronted c) joined d) contacted

9 My son, Mohammed, plays .... violin very well.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

10 The man who stole the car was taken to .... prison.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

11 There were over .... thousand people at the party of the new singer.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

12 When someone had broken into my house, I called .... police.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

13 The Egyptian government tries to give due care to .... education.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

14 To get the job, you need .... experience with the computer.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

15 I am going to spend .... week in Alexandria with my friends.

a) a
b) an
c) the
d) no article

16 I'm .... teacher of English and I often listen to radio programmes in .... English.

a) the/no article
b) a/no article
c) a/the
d) no article/no article

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Mount Kilimanjaro is the highest mountain in Africa. Marcus was one of a group of climbers who decided to climb it to raise money for charity. This is his account of the final part of the climb. I wake up after two hours of fitful sleep. Everyone looks frightened. The effect of altitude has made everyone look tired. It is playing tricks on my mind. People around me are just standing still as they try to get their breath. I try to encourage them to keep walking. When I check my watch I see, with surprise, that I have been walking for three hours already. I feel as if I am fighting every step of the way. All I want to do is to turn round and go down, but I must reach the top! I begin to wonder if I am strong enough. I begin to see spots in front of my eyes. My breathing is very rapid.

Someone tells me we have another hour and a half to go. I have to concentrate really hard because one slip could be fatal. I gasp for breath. Someone at the top is telling me to make one last effort. I scramble up the last few metres and suddenly I realise I've done it! I'm there! I'm at the top of Africa!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 What is the best title for this passage?

a) Deadly climb.
b) Kilimanjaro.
c) Gilman's Peak.
d) A challenging climb.

2 According to the passage, the word "raise" means "................".

a) admit
b) collect
c) respect
d) reject

3 Why was Marcus' breathing rapid?

a) Since there was lack of oxygen.
b) As he wasn't as fit as before.
c) As he had a phobia of heights.
d) Because he was in a horrifying place.

4 Which of the following is/are possible causes for the group's exhaustion?

a) Lack of oxygen. b) The climb.

c) The high altitude. d) a, b & c.

5 "I feel as if I am fighting every step of the way." It can be inferred from this sentence that the writer was very ....

a) thirsty b) upset

c) confused d) exhausted

6 The altitude has a/an .... effect on Marcus and his group.

a) encouraging b) negative

c) positive d) innovative

7 Marcus is ....

a) well-determined b) a brave climber

c) generous d) all of these

8 The moral of this story is that ....

a) determination is the key to success

b) don't climb dangerous heights

c) climbing mountains is an exciting sport

d) generosity is necessary to succeed

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Many young people use the internet to make new friends and spend hours chatting[1] with them.

....

....

2. School libraries contribute[2] much to the development of our children's minds[3] and awareness[4].

....

....

3. No doubt[5] that friends are either good or bad. Some of them are worthy[6] of respect while others are hateful[7] ones.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- يجب أن نتعاون جميعًا مع وزارة[٨] البيئة للتخلص[٩] من الكميات الهائلة من القمامة والمخلفات[١٠] فى شوارعنا.

....

....

٢- لقد أصبحت الكهرباء جزءًا أساسيًا فى حياتنا فالإنسان لا يستطيع أن يحيا بدونها[11] فهى الحرارة والطاقة.

....

....

٣- من الواضح أن الجرائم قد زادت بمعدل[12] كبير هذه الأيام فلا يكاد يمر يوم دون أن نسمع عن جريمة فى التلفزيون أو الإنترنت.

....

....

How to translate

١- لقد + ماض بدون ذكر وقت محدد تترجم مضارعًا تامًا have – has + P.P.

لقد حققت الكثير من الإنجازات I have made a lot of achievements.

٢- لقد + ماضٍ مع ذكر وقت محدد فى الماضى تترجم (ماضيًا بسيطًا).

لقد حققت الكثير من الإنجازات العام الماضى I made a lot of achievements last year.

٣- حرف الـ (ف) فى مثل: (فالإنسان لا يستطيع أن يحيا ...) يتم ترجمته على أنه سبب as – because.

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

1. Ways of making new friends.
2. The experience of your first day at the new school.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. .... | I used the right structure. .... | I used a topic sentence. .... | I wrote the conclusion. .... | I used the right punctuation. ....

(1) دردشة	(3) عقول	(5) لا شك	(7) كريه	(9) get rid of	(11) do without
(2) يساهم	(4) وعى	(6) جدير	(8) ministry	(10) waste	(12) rate





Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

bullying (n)	تنمر/بلطجة	nursing (n)	التمريض
bully (v) (n)	يتنمر/متنمر/بلطجي	phone-in (n)	برنامج إذاعي أو تلفزيوني (يسمح فيه بتلقي الاتصالات)
cheat (v) – ed*	يغش	police officer (n)	ضابط شرطة

* You're not supposed to cheat during the exam.

Vocabulary on Reading

behave (v) – d	يتصرف	host (n)	مضيف
continue (v) – d	يستمر	list (n)	قائمة
copying (n)	نسخ	lonely (adj)	وحيدًا
debate (n)	مناظرة	nasty (adj)	مؤذٍ/ردىء الطبع
effect (n)	تأثير	negative (adj)	سلبي
fight (v)	يتشاجر/يتعارك	radio show (n)	برنامج إذاعي
hard (adj)	صعب/قاسٍ	rucksack (n)	حقيبة الظهر
hate (v) (n) – d	يكره/الكره	scared (adj)	خائف/مذعور
hide (v)	يخفي	terrible (adj)	فظيع
hostess (n)	مضيفة		

Workbook Vocabulary

exciting (adj)	مثير	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
laugh (v) – ed	يضحك	soon (adv)	سريعًا/حالاً

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

a 15-year-old boy	ولد عمره ١٥ عامًا	(be) on the line	على الخط (خط التليفون)
as far as I'm concerned	على قدر اهتمامى	start conversations with	يبدأ محادثات مع
get along well with	يتناغم بشكل جيد مع	take a photo of	يلتقط صورة لـ
get good marks	يحصل على درجات جيدة	take time to	يستغرق وقتا لكى
make ... clear	يوضح	take turns to	يتبادل الأدوار
on social media	على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى	laugh at	يسخر من
add to	يضيف إلى	list in	يدرج فى قائمة
angry with	غاضب من (شخص)	nice to	لطيف مع
effect on	تأثير على	point at	يشير إلى
I'm well	أنا على ما يرام	sure about	متأكد من

Derivatives

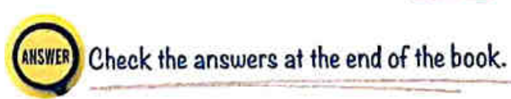
Verb		Noun		Adjective	
affect	يؤثر على	effect effectiveness	تأثير/أثر فاعلية/كفاءة/جدوى	effective	مؤثر
behave	يتصرف/يسلك	behaviour	سلوك/تصرف	behavioural	سلوكى
cheat	يغش	cheat cheating	غشاش/مخادع غش/تضليل	cheated	مخدوع
fight	يحارب/يكافح/يتشاجر	fighting fighter	اشتباك/مكافحة محارب/مكافح	----------	
host	يستضيف	hostess host	مضيفة مضيف/حشد	hospitable	مضياف
laugh	يضحك	laugh	ضحك	laughable	مثير للضحك/هزلى
police	يحفظ الأمن والنظام	police policing	شرطة ضبط الأمن والنظام	----------	

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
continue	يستمر	resume/proceed	stop/cease يتوقف
exciting	مثير	inspiring/thrilling	boring/dull ممل
hard	صعب/قاسٍ	difficult/exhausting	easy/facile سهل
hate	يكره	dislike/detest	love/adore يحب
hide	يخفى	conceal/cover	reveal/uncover يكشف
host	مضيف/مقدم البرامج	presenter/owner/ moderator	guest/visitor ضيف/زائر
nasty	مقرف/كريه	disgusting/offensive	agreeable/nice مقبول/لطيف
negative	سلبى	bad/harmful	positive/beneficial إيجابى/مفيد
scared	مذعور	frightened/afraid/fearful	unafraid/bold/brave غير خائف/شجاع
terrible	فظيع	horrible/awful	beautiful/nice/wonderful جميل/رائع

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Since travelling abroad, I have felt very ....
   a) a lone b) only c) lonely d) lone
2. .... others' videos or books without permission is illegal.
   a) Copying b) Making c) Watching d) Doing
3. It is easier to have a lot of friends on .... media.
   a) society b) sociable c) community d) social
4. Students have to take .... while answering the exercise.
   a) turns b) parts c) places d) heads
5. My daughter hopes to be an air .... when she graduates.
   a) host b) guest c) hostess d) hostage



Check the answers at the end of the book.

What is the worst problem a student might face at school?

Listening Text (1)

Radio show host : Good evening, everyone. Welcome to the show. Tonight, we're talking about bullying[1]. Unfortunately, a lot of teenagers are bullied at school, and this can have some very negative effects[2] on them. We're going to talk to a 15-year-old boy called Ali, who is being bullied. Ali ... are you on the line?

Ali : Hi, Seleem. How are you?

Radio show host : I'm well, thank you. How are you this evening?

Ali : I'm OK, but last week was really hard. Two boys in my class are bullying me because I am not very good at football. I like to play chess more than football. Last week they hid[3] my rucksack[4]. It had all my school books in it. I hate going to school now!

Radio show host: Oh, no! That's terrible[5]. Did you tell a teacher?

Ali : No, I didn't. I was too scared[6]. I've just moved to this town, so I don't know the teachers very well.

Radio show host : Well, Ali, I really think you should talk to a teacher. Your teacher can talk to the bullies[7] and make it clear that they shouldn't behave like this. If you do nothing, the bullying will just continue[8].

Ali : Yes ... you're right ... There's one teacher that I get along well with[9]. I'll talk to him.

(1) تنمر/بلطجة
(2) أثار سلبية
(3) أخفى
(4) حقيبة ظهر
(5) رهيب
(6) مفزوع
(7) المتنمرون
(8) يستمر
(9) يتناغم بشكل جيد مع

Do you think Ali was right to move to another town? Why?



What can we learn from people who are different to us?

Listening Text (2)

Ola : So, do you think moving[1] to a new school in another town is a good thing or a bad thing for teenagers[2]?

Lina : As far as I'm concerned, it's not a good idea. If you move to a new school, you have to leave your old friends behind and it's really difficult to make new friends.

Ola : I'm not so sure about that. I think you can make new friends if you're nice to other people and start conversations[3] with them. For example, I'm sure you would make lots of new friends!

Lina : That's true. It is possible to make new friends, but it takes time. You'll be really lonely[4] for the first few months.

Ola : In my opinion, it's a good experience to have because it makes you stronger.

Lina : I know that it can make people stronger, but I would prefer[5] to just stay with the people I know.

(1) الانتقال
(2) مراهقون
(3) محادثات
(4) وحيدًا
(5) يفضل

How do you think newcomers can overcome the lonely feeling they might have the first three months?

Workbook Text

Hassan is a good friend. Last week, however, he borrowed[1] my phone without asking. Then he dropped[2] the phone. Fortunately[3], the phone did not break but I was very angry with him. Now he's not talking to me.

Maged

Fawzi always gets good marks at school, but he is not always a good student. He often tries to make us all laugh[4]. Last week, he was talking in a lesson and the teacher was angry with him. He had to leave the classroom. Now he doesn't want to make us laugh any more.

Omar

There is a girl in my class and she always says unkind things about me. My friend tells me that she is also saying things about me on social media. Last week, she took a photo of me without asking. Today she was pointing[5] at me and laughing with her friends. It makes me feel very unhappy.

Hoda

(1) استلف
(2) أوقع
(3) لحسن الحظ
(4) يضحك
(5) تشير إلى

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

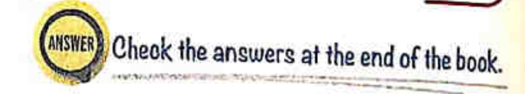
1 Smoking has a lot of .... effects on our lungs.
a) positive
b) impressive
c) negative
d) important

2 I couldn't find my shoes and I discovered that my little son was .... them.
a) heading
b) hitting
c) heeling
d) hiding

3 He felt .... when he realised his bad mistakes.
a) terrible
b) terrific
c) pleased
d) terrifying

4 I reached the station 10 minutes late, but .... the train was still there.
a) unfortunately
b) likely
c) unluckily
d) fortunately

5 After .... to our new flat, I felt lonely as I had few neighbours.
a) transforming
b) camping
c) moving
d) staying


Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use



Notes on Vocabulary

1

a 15-year-old boy
ولد عمره ١٥ عامًا

- I will play a game with a 15-year-old boy. He is my son's friend.

15-year-old boys
أولاد عمر كل منهم ١٥ عامًا

- All the players in our team are 15-year-old boys.

- لاحظ عدم جمع الكلمات الآتية إذا جاء قبلها عدد وبعدها اسم:

second/minute/hour/day/week/month/year/decade/century

- We usually have a five-minute break for coffee at midday.
- Our company held five-hour meetings.

- فى حالة وجود كلمة (time) بعد الكلمات السابقة نستخدم ('s) فى حالة المفرد و(s') فى حالة الجمع:

- He has an appointment with the doctor in two days' time.

2

debate
مناظرة (جدال) غالبًا أطراف الجدال مختلفون

- The law was passed after a long and sometimes angry debate.

discussion
مناقشة (إعطاء آراء عن شيء مهم)

- After a long discussion with her father, she decided not to take the job.

3

too = as well
فى نهاية الجملة المثبتة بمعنى أيضًا

- I like English, and he likes it too.
- I will travel to Paris as well.

either
بمعنى أيضًا فى نهاية الجملة المنفية

- I don't like English, and he doesn't like it either.

4

move to ينتقل إلى
move in يسكن فى مسكن جديد
move out ينتقل من بيته
move off يبدأ رحلته

- I've just moved to this town.
- We moved in a new house.
- We moved out to live in a new flat.
- I waved to my friends as the bus moved off.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- I hate going to school now.

يتبع الفعل hate فعل مضاف إليه ing ولكن أحيانًا يتبعها المصدر + to.

- As far as I'm concerned.

تستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن وجهة نظر الشخص من خلال خبرة سابقة.

- I would prefer to just stay with the people I know.

الصيغة would prefer يتبعها المصدر + to واستخدام just هنا بمعنى فقط وليس حالًا.

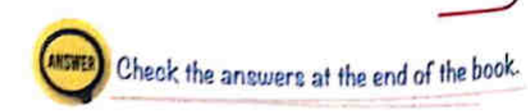
- He doesn't want us to laugh any more.

تأتى any more فى نهاية الجملة المنفية وتساوى فى المعنى any longer لكن يمكن أيضًا استخدام longer no للنفى بمعنى لم يعد.

He no longer smokes. = He doesn't smoke any more/any longer.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Passing exams is the most important .... for any student.
   a) mission b) profession c) task d) position
2. We don't use our old car ....
   a) no longer b) never c) ever d) any longer
3. In a .... time, I will be a member of Al Ahly club.
   a) weeks' b) week c) week's d) weeks
4. I don't eat lamb meat, I can't stand its soup, ...
   a) too b) also c) either d) again





Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

After we memorised the new vocabulary and read the notes, we need to practise. I think number one will be (a), do you agree?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 The little boy doesn't like to go to school as he is always .... by the older children.
a) bullied b) bullying c) hosted d) gusted

2 Good people never .... or tell lies. They are respected characters.
إدارة نجع حمادى التعليمية ٢٠٢٢
a) behave b) beat c) cheat d) wear

3 She has decided to go into .... because she likes helping people.
a) nurse b) nursing c) nursery d) nurses

4 Dalia .... eating meat or chicken when they are not fresh. She prefers healthy food.
a) likes b) prefers c) objects d) hates

5 I think you .... very badly towards your elder sister. You should apologise to her.
a) bullied b) behaved c) scared d) laughed

6 The students always .... what is written on the board to study it at home.
a) copy b) remove c) list d) neglect

7 There has been a lot of .... about the educational system and its effects on students. A lot of parents hate change!
a) chat b) passion c) debate d) agreement

8 Aya .... with her family on how to spend the holiday. الزقازيق الثانوية بنات - الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
a) cheats b) debates c) fights d) controls

9 My father's advice had a strong .... on me and my life style.
a) affect b) effective c) defect d) effect

10 My father's words had .... me and my lifestyle.
a) affected b) effective c) defected d) effected

11 Unless the government .... quickly, there will be some troubles concerning the new law.
a) points b) removes c) moves d) affects

12 I'd prefer .... a P.E class because I don't like drawing.
a) to have b) having c) have d) that have

13 I can't stay even a day in such a .... hotel.
a) terrific b) terrified c) terrible d) terribly

14 I telephoned and expressed my opinion about the loss of our team in a .... that was shown on the television.
a) phone-in b) phone-up c) phone-out d) phone-by

15 Sama is learning foreign languages and Mido is doing this, ...
a) either b) too c) neither d) also

16 I asked my colleague to .... a photo of me and our manager.
a) have b) make c) take d) do

17 Travelling has many benefits including acquiring .... and knowledge.
a) experiences b) experiments c) experts d) conversations

18 You have to .... the names of the students alphabetically to find their names easily.
a) list b) contain c) last d) drag

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

19 I am not sure .... what I saw on the street yesterday. Please, don't ask me.
a) for b) that c) with d) about

20 The boys put a spider in her bed for a .... But I think it wasn't funny.
a) laughter b) laughing c) laughed d) laugh

21 As far as I'm ....; the government is working hard to help us live well.
a) amazed b) concerned c) concerning d) frightened

22 The phone rang and I replied, but there was no one .... the line.
a) at b) on c) in d) with

23 A good teacher is the one who can get .... with his students.
a) up b) together c) away d) along

24 It is a kind of bullying to laugh .... your friends.
a) at b) with c) to d) about

25 .... is a very bad behaviour that we must all stand against.
a) A cheat b) Cheated c) Cheating d) Cheater

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 I couldn't drink this juice because it wasn't nice . The antonyms of the adjective "nice" are ....

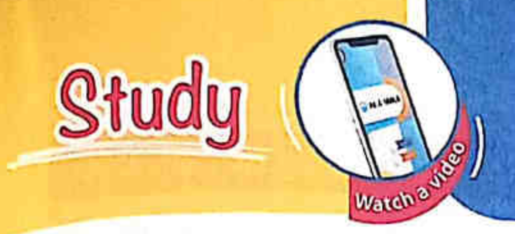
a) awful b) interesting c) stingy d) nasty e) pleasant .

27 Don't let that nasty old dog come up here. The synonyms of the word "nasty" are .... and ....
a) thrilling b) exhausting c) disgusting d) agreeable e) offensive

28 Sohaila continued to work after she had her baby. The synonyms of the word "continued" are .... and ....
a) resumed b) concealed c) ceased d) proceeded e) adored

29 Smoking has a very bad .... on our health.
a) affect b) impact c) effective d) influence e) compact

30 I hate .... horror films as they make me frightened and worried.
a) watching b) to watching c) watch d) watches e) to watch





Lessons 3 & 4

B Language

Countable and Uncountable nouns

Countable nouns

هى الأسماء التى يكون لها شكل مفرد ويأتى قبلها (a/an) أو شكل جمع

Examples:

1. **Regular plurals (add s)**

a car	2 cars
a dog	2 dogs
an apple	2 apples

2. **Nouns ending in (s,ss,sh,ch,x,z) add es**

a bus	2 buses
a box	2 boxes
a quiz	2 quizzes

3. **Nouns ending in consonant + y (remove y and add ies)**

a baby	2 babies
a city	2 cities
a story	2 stories

4. **Nouns ending in f/fe (remove f/fe and add ves)**

a loaf	2 loaves
a wife	2 wives
a wolf	2 wolves

5. **Irregular nouns**

a man	2 men
a child	2 children
an ox	2 oxen
a mouse	2 mice
a tooth	2 teeth
a goose	2 geese
a woman	2 women
an oasis	2 oases
a foot	2 feet

1 sheep	2 sheep	**no change**
1 deer	2 deer	
1 fish	2 fish	

Uncountable nouns

هى أسماء لا تعد ولا تجمع ومن ثم لا يأتى قبلها a-an وهذه الأسماء تعامل معاملة المفرد

Examples:

1. **Liquids**
   water/coffee/oil/milk/soup/blood/tea/juice/petrol
2. **Gases**
   oxygen/nitrogen/hydrogen/carbon dioxide
3. **Languages**
   Arabic/English/French/Italian/Spanish/German
4. **Meals**
   breakfast/lunch/dinner/supper
5. **School subjects**
   psychology/statistics/science/mathematics/physics/chemistry/biology/economics
6. **Sports**
   football/dominos/billiards/tennis/gymnastics/squash/athletics/chess
7. **Food**
   meat/rice/butter/macaroni/cheese/sugar/salt/bread/toast/beef
8. **Abstract nouns**
   happiness/knowledge/freedom/business/hatred/education/honesty/advice/luck/courage/sadness/fun/peace/progress/behaviour/fear/confidence/help/sorrow/horror/information/beauty

Countable nouns الأسماء المعدودة

يأتى معها فعل مفرد أو جمع.

- That painting is beautiful.
- Those paintings are beautiful.

يأتى قبل الاسم المفرد منها (a/an).

- Is there a park here?
- He ate an apple.

Uncountable nouns الأسماء الغير معدودة

يأتى معها فعل مفرد فقط.

- Swimming is a popular sport.
- That petrol was expensive.

لا يأتى قبلها (a/an).

- This table is made of wood.
- We play football every week.



لاحظ استخدام الكلمات الآتية

a lot of – some – any – much – many – few – a few – little – a little

a lot of + مفعول a lot بدون مفعول	فى الجملة المثبتة (كثير من)	He always drinks a lot of water. He was tired as he worked a lot.
some + عدد/كمية	فى الجملة المثبتة فى أسلوب العرض و الطلب	I have some good friends. Can I have some tea, please? Would you like some soup?
any + عدد – كمية	فى السؤال فى الجملة المنفية	Do you want any money? I don't have any chances. There isn't any water in the bottle.
many + اسم جمع	فى الجملة المنفية والسؤال من الممكن فى الإثبات مع there are – so – too	How many brothers have you got? I didn't see many films, only a few. There are many books on the desk.
much + اسم لا يعد	فى الجملة المنفية والسؤال من الممكن فى الإثبات مع there is – so – too	How much money do you need? There isn't much furniture here. There is much sugar in the tea.
a few/few + اسم جمع يعد	فى الجملة المثبتة بمعنى قليل للعدد	I have a few books here. يكفى I have few books here. لا يكفى
a little/little + اسم لا يعد	فى الجملة المثبتة بمعنى قليل للكمية	I have a little money. يكفى I have little money. لا يكفى

Important Notes



بعض الكلمات فى ظاهرها جمع ولكنها تعامل معاملة المفرد:

athletics/politics/gymnastics/mathematics/maths/news/economics/statistics/physics/genetics/classics/electronics.

- Mathematics is my favourite subject.
- Statistics shows progress in our economy.
- Gymnastics helps us to keep fit.
- The good news is "we passed the test."

هناك بعض الكلمات تشير إلى مجموعة. وهذه الكلمات من الممكن أن تكون مفردًا أو جمعًا حسب المقصود منها:

team/staff/family/government/company/committee/army/couple/crew/crowd/gang/group/navy/population/university.

- The English staff is the best one in our school.

كلمة staff مفرد لأن المقصود بها القسم كواحد من ضمن الأقسام فى المدرسة.

- The English staff in our school are all wonderful.

وهنا جمع لأننا نقصد مجموعة المدرسين فى القسم.

تعتبر المبالغ المالية/الفترات الزمنية/المسافات شيئًا واحدًا لذا تعامل معاملة المفرد:

- Ten million pounds is a lot of money.
- Fifty litres of petrol fills my car.
- Five hours is a long time to do this.

بعض الكلمات التى لا تعد يمكن أن تسبقها الأداة a/an إذا جاءت قبلها الصفة:

- She completed her education in 1995.
- We usually have lunch at 2.00 p.m.
- We had a wonderful lunch at a big restaurant yesterday.
- She had a good education.

هناك كلمات أخرى يمكن أن تكون countable أو uncountable مع اختلاف المعنى مثل:

paper – glass – coffee – time – cold – light – orange – iron – chicken

- I'd like some writing paper. (ورق الكتاب/لا يعد)
  I'm going to buy a paper. (= a newspaper) صحيفة (تعد)
- The window's made of unbreakable glass. (الزجاج/لا يعد)
  Would you like a glass of water? كوب
- Have you got any coffee? القهوة (سائل لا يعد)
  Could I have two coffees? (cups of coffee) فنجان قهوة (يعد)
- Don't hurry. There's plenty of time. الوقت (لا يعد)
  He went to London three times. مرات
- He has black hair. شعر (لا يعد)
  I'm starting to get a few grey hairs. قليل من الشعر (يعد)

▸ There are two oranges on the table.	برتقال
I don't like orange. I prefer red.	اللون البرتقالى (لا يعد)
▸ This table is made of iron.	الحديد (لا يعد)
She bought an iron yesterday.	مكواة
▸ Do you like chicken? (= chicken meat)	لحم الدجاج
We bought a chicken.	دجاجة
▸ The sun gives us light.	الضوء/لا تُعد
We need two lights in this room.	مصباح كهربى

هناك كلمات مثل trousers/glasses/shoes/gloves تعامل معاملة الجمع. أما إذا جاء قبلها a pair of فتعامل معاملة المفرد.

- My trousers are of a good material and they don't cost much.
- A pair of trousers is very expensive if it is imported from abroad.

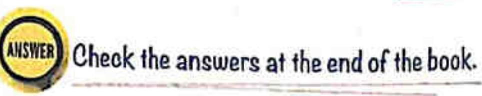
من الممكن استخدام ألفاظ التجزئة مع الكميات لتحويلها إلى اسم يعد:

a piece of jewellery	a piece of furniture	a piece of luggage	a piece of information
a slice of cake/cheese	a loaf of bread	a jar of jam	a cup of coffee
a glass of lemonade	a tube of toothpaste	a bar of soap	a sheet of paper
a bottle of milk	a bar of chocolate	a piece of advice	a bag of chips

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Would you like .... cup of coffee?
   a) a　b) any　c) some　d) an
2. .... books are very useful, but others are not.
   a) Any　b) Some　c) A lot　d) Much
3. I don't have .... furniture. I feel more comfortable with less furniture.
   a) many　b) much　c) some　d) a
4. One of the players in our team .... very tall.
   a) are　b) is　c) be　d) is being
5. I have found a job in .... clothes factory.
   a) an　b) a　c) no article　d) any



Check the answers at the end of the book.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



– Have you seen .... UN identity card before?
a) a　b) an　c) any　d) no article



Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Fortunately, the news .... as bad as we had expected.
a) wasn't b) weren't c) haven't been d) don't

2 My mother gave me .... food. I was still hungry but I didn't tell her.
a) a few b) few c) a little d) little

3 There .... too many passengers on the train. I can't get on it.
a) aren't b) isn't c) are d) is

4 Would you like .... tea after the meal?
a) some b) much c) a d) any

5 The police .... to question يستجوب two men about the robbery.
a) want b) wants c) has wanted d) is wanted

6 Mohamed doesn't have .... money. إدارة غرب شبرا - القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) much b) many c) some d) few

7 .... exercise keeps your body fit, so you should join a gym class.
a) Many b) Much c) A lot d) Few

8 A bag of money .... from my father while walking last night.
a) was stolen b) is stolen c) were stolen d) are stolen

9 Most of our furniture .... in Damietta.
a) are made b) is made c) makes d) is making

10 Three days .... long enough for a good holiday.
a) weren't b) aren't c) haven't been d) isn't

11 Can you tell me how .... times you have seen this film?
a) many b) any c) much d) often

12 Would you like to have .... help with this project?
a) any b) an c) the d) some

13 The money of the clothes .... on that table. إدارة نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٢
a) was b) were c) has d) had

14 It is very good that I don't have .... luggage; I can move easily.
a) many b) some c) much d) a lot

15 Mariam was listening to .... music on the radio.
a) a b) many c) one d) some

16 Everyone knows that athletics .... us fit and healthy.
a) keep b) are keeping c) keeps d) have kept

17 My son bought a new pair of shoes which .... very expensive.
a) are b) were c) was d) have

18 My football team .... all students in the secondary stage.
a) is b) have c) are d) was

19 I want you to enjoy your trip and have .... good time.
a) many b) a c) a few d) any

20 Five million pounds .... a lot of money for this villa. مدرسة بنى محمد سلطان - المنيا٢٠٢٢
a) is b) is being c) are d) are being

21 My friends managed to get a lot of useful information, but I haven't got ....
a) some b) many c) any d) few

22 One should drink enough .... of water daily.
a) lots b) many c) quantity d) a lot

23 A: .... coffee have you drunk today?
B: Two cups.
a) How many b) How much c) How d) How long

24 What Mr Osama does .... because he has been very ill recently.
إدارة شرق طنطا - الغربية٢٠٢٢
a) is b) are c) has d) have

25 I was very angry when I found .... in my soup at the restaurant.
a) any hairs b) no hairs c) a hair d) the hair

26 The train is .... of transport. I really like using it.
a) means b) the means c) a means d) some means

27 If you want to know the news, you can read it in ....
a) much paper b) many paper c) some paper d) the papers

28 I have got no information about the accident. This means that ....
a) I have little information about the accident
b) I have some information about the accident
c) I don't have any information about the accident
d) I have very little information about the accident

29 One of the following sentences is not correct?
a) We need some water to drink during the journey.
b) He told me an important information about the crime.
c) I saw lots of students waiting for their results at school.
d) I met some kind people while I was in the village.

30 One of the following sentences is correct?
a) My trousers are very expensive and of a good material.
b) Lentils soup are my favourite kind of appetizers.
c) Gymnastics aren't easy sports as they need a lot of practice.
d) Two hours are very long to wait for the doctor.



Lessons 3 & 4

C General Skills

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.



(I) Life Skills



Asking for opinions	Giving opinions
• What is your opinion of/about ....? • What do you think of/about ....? • Could you tell me your opinion ....?	• I think ..... is/are/ • In my opinion ..... is/are/ • If you ask me, I think .....
Accepting	**Not accepting**
• I agree with you. • Yes, I couldn't agree more. • That's what I think. • You are right. • I completely agree with you.	• I don't agree with you. • I disagree with you. • I don't think so. • I think it is a very worrying problem.

(II) Writing

Writing an email

Writing Tips:



From : .... اسم وعنوان الراسل الإلكترونى إذا وجد:

To : .... اسم وعنوان المرسل إليه الإلكترونى إذا وجد:

Subject : .... الموضوع باختصار:

(invitation - congratulation - complaint - apology - request)

Dear ...., اسم المرسل إليه

How are you? I want to tell you that ....

....

....

....

.... موضوع الرسالة:

Best wishes

اسم الراسل: ....

You can have more information about writing emails in the booklet.

Test Yourself





Unit 4
Lessons 3 & 4

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Our company has a .... It is a very ambitious one.
   a) three-year-business plan b) three-year-business plans
   c) three-year's-business plan d) three-years'-business plan
2. Carrying a .... over your shoulder for a long time is likely to harm you.
   a) money b) wallet c) purse d) rucksack
3. I don't understand why someone would do that unless they are .... and cruel.
   a) favourite b) dear c) nasty d) dirt
4. After a long .... with his family, Ali decided to move to a new flat.
   a) agreement b) fight c) discussion d) quarrel
5. There is a/an .... between those in favour of the work of women and those who are against.
   a) agreement b) effect c) defect d) debate
6. The last time I went to the dentist, I was .... as I fear his medical instruments.
   a) scared b) broken c) amazed d) delighted
7. Hany from Cairo is on the .... He wants to participate in our programme.
   a) row b) line c) ground d) paper
8. The medical and .... staff plays a great role in fighting the coronavirus all over the world.
   a) farming b) engineering c) nursing d) advertising
9. I bought a .... of toothpaste last night.
   a) sheet b) slice c) jar d) tube
10. There isn't .... traffic on the ring road today.
    a) few b) some c) much d) many
11. **A:** How .... coffees do you want to have? **B:** Two, please.
    a) much b) many c) little d) few
12. There is plenty of meat in the fridge, but there isn't .... bread.
    a) much b) many c) little d) a lot
13. .... the police know how the accident happened?
    a) Do b) Does c) Is d) Was
14. Three hours .... a long time to wait for her to come.
    a) is b) are c) have been d) were
15. I am going to buy .... to have my breakfast.
    a) some breads b) many bread c) a bread d) some bread
16. **A:** Can I borrow your scissors? **B:** Mine .... sharp enough.
    a) isn't b) doesn't c) aren't d) don't

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A good education has the ability to change the world. When we pay attention to quality education, the results can be transformational for an individual, a community and society at large. The value of investing in education is indisputable: it improves economic development, promotes peace, and lifts people out of poverty.

The right to education is not only the right to access education but also the right to receive an education of good quality. Education must be available and accessible but also acceptable and adaptable. Students must receive a quality education that enables their personalities, talents and abilities and to live a full and satisfying life within society.

The aims of education go far beyond acquiring numeracy and literacy skills. Basic skills also include life skills such as the ability to make well-balanced decisions; to resolve conflicts in a responsibility, critical thinking, creative talents, and other abilities which give children the tools needed to pursue their options in life.

Also, schools should have a sufficient number of trained teachers. All teachers should be paid competitive salaries. There should be an appropriate number of classrooms, accessible to all, with adequate and separate sanitation facilities for girls and boys.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The benefits of a good education can be noticed on ....
 a) people and their families
 b) people, their community and their society
 c) countries, continents and islands
 d) poor people and workers

2 When we invest in education, this will ....
 a) make people poor and powerless
 b) improve economic development and ignorance
 c) encourage wars and illegal competitions
 d) improve people's income and bring peace

3 The education provided to students must ....
 a) enable their abilities and characters to live properly
 b) be for free and be online
 c) provide good salaries to students and their families
 d) activate violence among them to motivate them

4 The underlined word "indisputable" means ....

a) can't be separate
b) can't be agreed on
c) must be agreed on
d) not obvious

5 Education should provide students with the techniques that ....

a) make them join the Faculty of Medicine
b) follow their options in life
c) enrich their argumentative abilities
d) strengthen their flexibility in life

6 In order to ensure a quality education, teachers should ....

a) get paid competitive salaries
b) arrest students who make troubles
c) have power and authority
d) wear formal clothes with much money

7 Educational institutions should have ....

a) sanitation materials and yoga sessions
b) only one classroom for all students
c) large playground with whiteboards
d) enough classrooms and separate toilets

8 The best title for this passage is "................".

a) How Can Education Be Good?
b) Quality Education and Teachers
c) Classrooms and Schools
d) Education Investment

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. We have to rationalise(1) the consumption(2) of water, electricity and food to face the increasing(3) rise(4) in prices.

....

....

2. The educational institution seeks(5) to deepen(6) the democratic thought and train the young generations in positive participation.

....

....

3. The government and the individuals should work together to offer more support and help the handicapped(7) and the children with special needs(8).

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- يشكل الوالدان شخصيات أبنائهما منذ بداية طفولتهم فهما يعلمانهم القيم والعادات وأيضًا يشاركانهم الاهتمامات والألعاب.

....

....

٢- للعولمة[9] تأثير خطير على الدول النامية. ويجب على هذه الدول أن تبدأ بجدية للاستفادة من ثمار التكنولوجيا.

....

....

٣- إن الفقر والبطالة[10] هما قنبلة موقوتة، فلو لم نبذل جهودًا غير عادية لاستئصالهما[11] سنعانى كثيرًا، ولا تستطيع الحكومة أن تقوم بهذا وحدها.

....

....

How to translate

١- لـ + اسم (بمعنى له – لها – يمتلك) يتم ترجمتها have – has – had.

لمصر أهمية كبيرة فى إفريقيا. Egypt has a great importance in Africa.

٢- لـ + اسم (بمعنى الغرض) يتم ترجمتها to + inf.

نحاول بجد لحل المشكلة. We are trying hard to solve the problem.

٣- لـ + فعل (معنى الغرض – لكى) يتم ترجمتها to + inf.

يذاكر جيدًا ليحصل عل الدرجة النهائية. He is studying hard to get the full mark.

٤- لو لم (إذا لم) تترجم إلى جملة مثبتة + If OR unless + جملة منفية.

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

1. What we can do to overcome the problem of unemployment.
2. Bullying at schools.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.

(1) يرشد (2) استهلاك (3) متزايد (4) ارتفاع (5) يسعى (6) يرسخ (7) المعاقين (8) احتياجات (9) globalisation (10) unemployment (11) eradicate



Chapter 4 (Treasure Island)

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

as usual	كالعادة
branch	فرع شجرة
close	قريب
continue	يستمر
correct	صحيح
count	يعد/يحصى
crutch	عكاز
diseases	أمراض
downstairs	الطابق الأسفل
expect	يتوقع
expression	تعبير
follow	يتبع
forever	إلى الأبد
glasses	نظارات
hold onto	يمسك فى
hills	تلال
immediately	فى الحال
marked	مشار إليه
mistake	خطأ
organise	ينظم
plan	خطة
prefer	يفضل
pretty	جميلة
relax	يسترخى
rocky tops	قمم صخرية
shore	شاطئ
thought	فكر
trust	ثقة
whistle	صفارة/يصفر

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

along the beach	بمحاذاة الشاطئ
as fast as I could	بأسرع ما يمكننى
climb out of	يقفز من
close to	قريب من
fight them for	يقاتلهم من أجل
find out	يكتشف/يعرف
jumped out of	قفز من على
prefer to	يفضل أن
walked off	خرج
excited to	متحمس لـ



Novel Exercises

Chapter (4)

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I usually put my .... in my son and he really deserves it.
a) truth b) trust c) true d) truly

2 The referee .... and the game was over.
a) whistled b) ran c) coughed d) sneezed

3 I didn't find what I wanted in this shop, so I went to their new ....
a) root b) trench c) branch d) trunk

4 Don't worry, you should .... and think again.
a) relax b) hesitate c) worry d) quite

5 When I go to Matrouh, I only stand on the .... and look at the sea.
a) bank b) branch c) edge d) shore

6 Eating healthy food can protect us from many serious ....
a) illness b) diseases c) dangers d) sick

7 I was very .... when I saw him walking after the operation.
a) surprise b) surprising c) surprised d) annoying

8 I decided to spend my next holiday .... an island in the Pacific.
a) on b) at c) in d) into

9 I realised that something bad had happened when I saw a sad .... on his face.
a) impression b) explanation c) preparation d) expression

10 When I saw my son and daughter walking together .... the beach. I felt happy.
a) a long b) in c) along d) away

11 My niece looked .... in her fascinating wedding dress.
a) ugly b) pretty c) terrible d) keen

12 I feel .... when I hear that there is a match for my favourite team.
a) excited b) surprised c) terrible d) exciting

13 They saw some low .... and began to climb them easily.
a) hells b) hills c) wells d) shells

14 I have done all my homework and asked my teacher to .... my mistakes.
a) collect b) realise c) connect d) correct

15 A criminal was punished for holding up a man with a ....
a) gun b) hill c) pun d) sun

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Our bus was late and so we missed our ....
a) communication b) contact c) connection d) link

2 .... of clothing were lying all over my daughter's room.
a) Articles b) Slices c) Lists d) Grades

3 My offer was received rather .... which made me angry.
a) cold b) eagerly c) coldly d) eager

4 There should be more .... on learning foreign languages in schools.
a) pressure b) press c) stress d) practice

5 The female parrot sits on the eggs while her .... hunts for food.
a) colleague b) matt c) gate d) mate

6 The old woman was .... an expression of delight on her face.
a) wearing b) dressing c) putting on d) acting

7 There are two .... in our local health centre and they are open 24 hours a day.
a) plays b) practices c) locations d) positions

8 I feel very relaxed when I .... my babies in my arms.
a) dress b) press c) pinch d) nurse

9 The report about the starving children .... many people to tears.
a) removed b) moved c) made d) nursed

10 They invited me to their wedding party and I .... for long whether to go or not. Finally, I decided not to go.
a) discussed b) agreed c) debated d) frowned

11 The store sells only the highest .... of clothes, so they are very expensive.
a) grade b) degree c) greed d) regard

12 It is clear that the sheets are starting to .... out a little. We need to buy new ones.
a) put on b) dress c) wear d) weep

13 I'm sorry, I can't buy a modern car for you. It is too ....
a) bear b) dear c) fear d) ear

14 During the last holiday, I spent nearly five .... pounds.
a) thousands b) thousand's c) thousand d) thousands'

15 Everyone likes talking about .... and what they have done.

a) himself b) herself c) ourselves d) themselves

16 There were only .... people in the meeting, so the manager cancelled it.

a) little b) many c) a few d) few

17 My uncle is a sailor who spends most of his time at ....

a) the sea b) a sea c) an sea d) sea

18 We have hardly heard .... news of her since she travelled abroad.

a) some b) any c) much d) many

19 Make .... and cook the food, Mona.

a) a bed b) bed c) the bed d) any bed

20 I like watching .... road running during the Olympics.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

21 My father booked .... seat No. 20 in .... carriage 2.

a) no article/no article b) no article/the

c) the/the d) the/no article

22 The police found the dead man's .... including his will.

a) paper b) a paper c) papers d) newspaper

23 Our teacher told us that during the exam, there is no .... for mistakes.

a) a room b) rooms c) room d) many rooms

24 My father has too .... and it all should be finished before 8 o'clock.

a) much work b) many jobs c) many professions d) much time

25 My father once saved .... one-year-old boy from a fire.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

26 My friend's father was .... FBI agent when he was living in the U.S.A.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

27 By .... day, I work as an office clerk, but at night, I work as a waiter.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

28 France is part of .... European Union.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

29 My brother lives next door to .... Jacksons.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

30 I took last Friday off to go to the doctor. I spent .... whole day sitting in his office.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

Unit 4



Al-Adwaa Test



● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 Mona is .... a very nice dress for her friend's wedding. Everyone admires her look.

a) putting on b) dressing c) dressed in d) wearing e) putting

2 There's so much to do and I don't know where to start. The antonyms of the word "start" are .... and ....

a) finish b) initiate c) end d) neglect e) pursue

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3 One of the main jobs of the special forces is to .... the city centre and other important buildings.

a) police b) nurse c) close d) stop

4 Don't look at my answer sheet. That's ....

a) cheating b) cheat c) cheated d) cheater

5 I liked him because he .... bravely in a very difficult situation.

a) continued b) behaved c) added d) copied

6 If you want the job, you'll have to .... for it.

a) relax b) stand c) continue d) fight

7 Doctors have to inform patients of the .... side effects of the drug.

a) positive b) nice c) negative d) superior

8 After Ali's operation, Mrs Radwa .... him back to health.

a) cheated b) policed c) bullied d) nursed

9 When I was in Japan, I found .... Japanese generally shorter than I am.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

10 .... oldest lion is roaring in its cage now.

a) A b) An c) The d) No article

11 When I leave school, I want to be .... tour guide.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

12 She asked me for .... advice about how to revise her lessons.

a) an b) any c) some d) few

13 Walking to .... work is part of my daily routine.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

14 I was so thirsty and asked for .... of water.

a) the glass b) glass c) a pair of glass d) a glass

15 .... intelligent you are, the better marks you will get.

a) The much b) The most c) The more d) More

16 There isn't .... pharmacy near us. We can't get any medicine.

a) many b) some c) few d) a

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many researchers, engineers and environmentalists are expressing deep concern about changes in the overall climate of the planet. Fossil fuels are being continuously used to produce electricity. The burning of these fuels produces gases like carbon dioxide, methane and nitrous oxides which lead to global warming. Desertification is also leading to warmer temperatures. The hazard of global warming is continuously causing major damage to the earth's environment.

Most people are still unaware of global warming and don't consider it a big problem in the years to come. What most people don't understand is that global warming is currently happening and we are already experiencing some of its withering effects. It severely affects ecosystems and disturbs the ecological balance, therefore some solutions must be devised.

Alternative energy sources: solar, wind, hydro, geothermal, and biomass need to be seriously pursued. Finding and using renewable sources is one of the methods to combat the ever-increasing global warming effectively since the continuous rise in the temperature of the planet is really upsetting. When sunlight reaches the earth 30% of the earth's sunlight is sent back into space, while the remaining is absorbed by oceans air and land. This heats up the surface of the planet. It is caused by anthropogenic activities.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Desertification means .... a wide area of trees.

a) clearing b) planting c) irrigating d) spraying

18 The underlined word "its" refers to ....

a) desertification b) global warming

c) environment d) carbon dioxide

19 Scientists recommend .... fossil fuels in an attempt to solve the problem.

a) using b) misusing c) reducing d) reusing

20 Burning fossil fuels .... global warming.

a) causes of b) results of c) leads to d) results from

21 The synonym of the underlined word "ecological" is ....

a) environmental b) biological c) chemical d) material

22 Using nonrenewable sources of energy is not safe because it ....

a) produces gases like carbon dioxide

b) can be stolen easily

c) can be flamed

d) can't be moved from a place to another

23 According to the passage, we .... the destructive effects of the global warming.

a) will face

b) faced

c) are already facing

d) have never faced

24 The best title for this passage is "................".

a) National Disasters

b) Global Disasters

c) Trees and Nature

d) Anthropogenic Activities

25 **Translate into English:**

- يجب أن نعمل كثيرًا ونتكلم قليلًا، فالعمل الجاد هو الطريق الوحيد لرفع مستوى المعيشة كما يجب أن نقوم باستغلال كل الموارد الاقتصادية المتاحة بدون اسراف.

....

....

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

Egypt had to call for an international conference aiming at stability in peace process and combating terrorism.

....

....

27 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

The best way to reach success is patience and hard work.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Unit 5



Communication

Objectives

Reading	: A science article on how we may communicate in the future
Writing	: An essay on IOT; a blog on how to stay safe online
Listening	: A radio discussion about the dangers of the internet
Speaking	: Give a presentation
Language	: Future forms *will*, *be going to* and *present continuous*
Life Skills	: Self-management; Decision making





Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

app = application (n)	تطبيق حاسب آلي	the internet (n)	شبكة الإنترنت
communication (n)	نظام الاتصال/تواصل	security (n)	أمن
connected (adj)	متصل	smartphone (n)	الهاتف الذكي
hack (n) (v) – ed*	اختراق/يخترق	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا

* Someone hacked my phone and stole important files.

Vocabulary on Reading

accident (n)	حادث	electric (adj)	كهربائي
business (n)	عمل تجاري	empty (v) – ~~y~~ ied	يفرغ
cause (v) – d	يسبب	enough (adv)	كافٍ/بقدر كافٍ
check (v) – ed	يفحص	flexible (adj)	مرن
control (v) – led	يتحكم في	heating (n)	التدفئة
create (v) – d	يخلق/ينتج	imagine (v) – d	يتخيل
criminal (n) (adj)	مجرم/إجرامي	latest (adj)	أحدث
develop (v) – ed	يتطور	lighting (n)	إضاءة
device (n)	جهاز	lightning (n)	البرق
disadvantages (n)	عيوب/مساوئ	link (v) – ed	يتصل/يرتبط
driverless (adj)	ذاتية القيادة (بلا سائق)	machine (n)	ماكينة

major (adj)	رئيسى	rubbish bin (n)	سلة قمامة
network (n)	شبكة	safe (adj)	آمن
online (adv) (adj)	عبر الإنترنت	sat-nav (n)	نظام الملاحة عن طريق الأقمار الصناعية
organisation (n)	منظمة	system (n)	نظام
petrol (n)	بنزين	tablet (n)	كمبيوتر لوحى (تابلت)
possible (adj)	محتمل	use (n) (v) – d	استخدام/يستخدم
power stations (n)	محطات توليد الطاقة	worldwide (adv) (adj)	عالمى/فى جميع أنحاء العالم
protect (v) – ed	يحمى		

Workbook Vocabulary

camping (n)	التخييم (الخروج فى معسكرات ومخيمات)	recent (adj)	حديث
illegally (adv)	بشكل غير قانونى	shopping (n)	التسوق
particular (adj)	خاص	survey (n)	دراسة/استطلاع

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

(be) known as	معروف كـ	make a decision	يتخذ قرارًا
a driverless car	سيارة بدون سائق	on your phone	على تليفونك
as often as I can	بقدر ما أستطيع	lose money	يخسر مالًا
collect + (someone)	يصطحب/يوصل شخص بسيارة	important to	مهم لـ
collect information	يجمع معلومات	information about	معلومات عن
outside world	العالم الخارجى	listen to	يستمع إلى

break into	يقتحم
communicate with	يتواصل مع
connect to	يتصل بـ
hack into	يخترق
by accident	بالصدفة
do a survey	يقوم ببحث شامل
in particular	على وجه الخصوص
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق
do the shopping	يقوم بالتسوق
protect from/against	يحمي من/ضد
send messages to	يرسل رسائل نصية لـ
the use of	استخدام
worried about	قلق بشأن
live on	يعيش على

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
apply	يطبق	application applicant	تطبيق/نموذج طلب وظيفة طالب الوظيفة	applicable applied	قابل للتطبيق مستعمل/مطبق
communicate	يبلغ/يتصل	communication communicator	تواصل/اتصال محاور	communicative	صريح/تواصلي
control	يتحكم	control controller	تحكم/قيادة مراقب/مشرف	controlling controllable controlled	متسلط/مسيطر مطيع/مذعن مراقب/موجه
create	يخلق	creation creativity creator	خلق/تكوين إبداع خالق/بديع	creative	إبداعي/مبتكر
develop	يتطور	development developer	تطور/تنمية مطور	developed developing	متطور نامٍ (في مرحلة التطور)
hack	يخترق	hacking (uncountable) hack (countable) hacker	اختراق اختراق مخترق/قرصان	hacked	مُخْتَرَق
imagine*	يتخيل	imagination imaginings	خيال خيالات/تصورات	imaginable imaginary imaginative	ممكن تخيله خيالي واسع الخيال
incriminate	يتهم شخصًا بجريمة	crime criminal	جريمة مجرم	criminal	إجرامي
secure	يؤمن	security	أمان/حماية	secure	مأمون/مطمئن

* - I can't imagine that we lost the cup.
- Films help us use our imagination.
- The new employee has imaginative thoughts.

The antonym of "link" is ....

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
connected	متصل	linked/joined	disconnected/detached غير متصل/منفصل
control	يتحكم في	command/dominate	follow/surrender يتبع/يستسلم
develop	يتطور	advance/flourish	decline/decrease يتدهور
disadvantages	عيوب	demerits/drawbacks	advantages/merits مزايا
empty	يفرغ	clear/evacuate	fill/occupy يملأ
enough	كافٍ	adequate/sufficient	inadequate/insufficient غير كافٍ
heating	التدفئة	warming/boiling	cooling/freezing تبريد/تجميد
illegal	غير قانوني	unlawful/banned/ unauthorised	legal/lawful/authorised قانوني
major	رئيسي	main/primary/leading	minor/secondary/trivial ثانوي/تافه
safe	آمن	secure/protected	insecure/risky غير آمن/خطير
security	أمن	safety/protection	insecurity/danger عدم الأمان/الخطر

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We now use .... to help us communicate with other easily.
   a) intelligent phones b) smartphones
   c) smile phones d) start phones
2. Teachers must have the ability to take .... of their classes.
   a) contact b) communicate
   c) control d) connect
3. I think .... is cheaper than staying in expensive hotels.
   a) visiting b) heating
   c) climbing d) camping
4. Mohamed Salah is a .... football player. We are all proud of him.
   a) worldwide b) international
   c) local d) minor
5. Mostafa is a .... officer for one of the most famous companies in Cairo.
   a) secure b) securing
   c) security d) safety

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Workbook Text

Internet use in Egypt

Every year, more and more people are connected[1] to the internet in Egypt. A recent survey[2] found that around 50 million people use the internet on a computer or smartphone.

In the survey, many people said that they used the internet every day, usually for communication[3] so they could talk to friends or family. Many used apps on their phones so they can listen to music or watch films.

Other people said they never used the internet. This was usually because they did not understand[4] the technology. Many people also said they did want to use the internet when shopping. They were worried[5] about security and the possibility that their computer might be hacked[6].

(1) متصل
(2) دراسة حديثة
(3) تواصل
(4) يفهم
(5) قلق
(6) يتعرض للقرصنة

Reading Text

Are you with or against connecting all devices around the world? Why?

The Internet of Things

Linking[1] the world

Communication is no longer[2] about people talking to one another, but about machines talking to machines. This is known as the Internet of Things (IOT). Technology is developing so fast that experts[3] believe everyone will be connected to the IOT in a few years.



Connecting our homes

Many things in our own homes are going to be connected to the IOT. Already, people can control their heating[4] and lighting[5] from their phones, but in the future computers will make the decisions for us. They'll even be able to say when the rubbish bins need to be emptied[6] and control how much water we use!

No more driving

Cars can already connect to the internet using smartphones, but imagine[7] if you can get a driverless[8] car to come and collect you using an app on your phone. All driverless cars will be electric[9] and much cleaner than petrol ones. Experts think our roads will be safer as there will be fewer accidents using driverless cars.

Possible problems

Many people don't think IOT is safe enough yet. Computers collect information about people and businesses which criminals[10] can steal. They use this information to hack into[11] organisations like hospitals, power stations and airports, and cause[12] major security problems.

(1) ربط/اتصال
(2) لم يعد
(3) خبراء
(4) تدفئة/تسخين
(5) إضاءة
(6) تفرغ
(7) تخيل
(8) بلا سائق
(9) كهربى
(10) مجرمون
(11) يخترق/يقرصن
(12) يسبب

What more do you imagine the IOT may be able to do in the future?

Never forget to use an English-English dictionary.

Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

app تطبيق حاسب آلى
- a computer program designed to perform/do a specific function

communication نظام الاتصالات
- systems to send and receive information

connected متصل
- when more than one thing is joined or linked

hack اختراق
- when a computer system is broken into illegally

internet شبكة الإنترنت
- a worldwide computer network

security أمن
- to protect a place or person

smartphone التليفون الذكى
- a device that can connect to the internet

technology تكنولوجيا
- the use of science to create devices for everyday use

Notes on Vocabulary

1

(be) able to + (inf.) قادر على	Birds are able to fly using their wings.
(be) capable of + (v-ing) قادر على	Birds are capable of flying using their wings.
(have) the ability to + (inf.) لديه القدرة على	Birds have the ability to fly using their wings.
(someone/something) + enable + (someone/something) + to + (inf.) .... يمكّن .... من	Wings enable birds to fly.

Word	Example
electric (adj) كهربائى أى يعمل بالكهرباء (لوصف الأدوات والأجهزة)	I have a modern electric washing machine. Engineers designed electric cars that use batteries.
electrical (adj) كهربائـى أى يتعامـل مع الكهربـاء (لوصف الأعطال والأشخاص)	The fire started with an electrical fault. My father works as an electrical engineer.
electricity (n) الكهرباء	We can't do without electricity in our daily life.
electrician (n) عامل فنى كهرباء	A company needs four electricians to be employed.
electronic (adj) إلكترونى	The manager sent me an electronic mail yesterday.

Word	Example
experience الخبـرة (ما يكتسـبه الشـخص مـن معرفة ومهارات من خلال عمل معين) (لا تعد)	They offered me the job because I had a lot of experience in the field of engineering.
experiences مواقف أو تجارب أو خبرات فى الحياة (تعد)	She had some interesting experiences while she was travelling to many countries.
experiment تجربة عملية/علمية (داخل معمل)	Teachers usually do simple experiments in the laboratory.

Word	Example
task مهمة أو عمل صعب أو غير محبوب يقوم به شخص	I was given the task of organising the school trip.
mission بعثـة أو مأموريـة ينتقل فيها الشـخص من مكان لمكان آخر للقيام بها	He went on a mission to Japan.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- Technology is developing so fast that experts believe ....

تستخدم الصيغة so + adj + that بمعنى (..... جدًا لدرجة أن ......).

- All driverless cars will be electric and much cleaner than petrol ones.

يمكن استخدام much قبل صيغة المقارنة سواء كانت صفة قصيرة أو طويلة.

▸ Many people don't think IOT is safe enough yet.

فى السـابق تم دراسـة اسـتخدام yet فى النفى مع زمن المضارع التام ولكن يمكن استخدامها مع أزمنة أخرى مثل المضارع البسيط والماضى البسيط.

▸ Many people said that they did want to use the internet when shopping.

يستخدم الفعل المساعد did أو does أو do قبل المصدر فى الجملة الخبرية للتأكيد وكلمة when يمكن أن يتبعها (v-ing) وفى هذه الحالة تساوى while.

▸ Around 50 million people/persons ....

تأتى كلمة ... hundred, thousand, million, بعد أى رقم بدون إضافة (s) ولكن الاسم الذى يليها يكون دائمًا جمعًا.

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

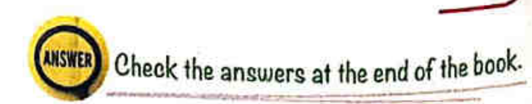
1 A recent .... shows that a large percentage of people are getting into debt now.
a) survive b) survey
c) app d) bill

2 Many .... on our phones are used to listen to music and watch some videos.
a) tabs b) gaps
c) taps d) apps

3 I got a/an .... to install electrical systems in my new flat.
a) electricity b) electrical
c) electrician d) physician

4 To get the job, the applicants need to have at least 5 years ....
a) experience b) experiences
c) experiment d) experts

5 My computer is connected .... the internet to help me with my work.
a) with b) to
c) into d) up





Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

I think number one is (c), what do you think?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 The university asked the new students to bring .... photos of them.
a) modern b) recently c) recent d) secure

2 Smoking is one of the .... causes of lung diseases.
a) minor b) major c) mainly d) mean

3 The underground railway .... covers all areas of Egypt.
a) net b) circle c) website d) network

4 I haven't heard the .... news. Can you tell me what has happened?
a) late b) later c) latest d) lately

5 Electricity is produced in what we call ....
a) power stations b) energy stations c) power cut d) solar energy

6 People like to have many electronic .... at their homes. إدارة غرب شبرا التعليمية ٢٠٢٠
a) cars b) bikes c) devices d) carpets

7 **A:** Are you going to Al-Fayyoum for a .... reason? **B:** No, just for a holiday.
a) flexible b) particular c) recent d) lighting

8 I found learning Chinese to somehow an impossible ....
a) work b) mission c) task d) profession

9 .... for the job should be sent to the personnel manager.
a) Applications b) Communications c) Developments d) Movements

10 Nowadays, there is little real .... between parents and their children.
a) comment b) comparison
c) application d) communication

11 My account was easily .... into as my password was so easy.
a) broken b) picked c) hacked d) backed

12 The children need the .... of a stable home environment to be well.
a) safe b) security c) atmosphere d) liberty

13 Through his speech, I don't think he is .... enough to be a politician.
a) smart b) safe c) developing d) empty

14 I am sorry. I didn't mean to step on your foot. It was a/an ....
a) chance b) opportunity c) incident d) accident

15 It is hard for small .... to survive at the present time due to the economic depression.
a) tablets b) tasks c) businesses d) surveys

16 I don't think that you have a real .... for your complaint. You have to go now.

a) reason b) cause c) process d) both a & b

17 I have to .... my work for mistakes before I hand it in.

a) collect b) create c) check d) calculate

18 I admired the car so much but I didn't have .... money to buy it.

a) a lot of b) some c) enough d) a little

19 One of the advantages of this job is the .... working hours.

a) rough b) tough c) strict d) flexible

20 A Smartphone has a wide range of .... for business to use. أولاد على الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢

a) caps b) apes c) abs d) apps

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21 All driverless cars will be .... مدرسة السعيدية ٢٠٢٢

a) electricity b) electric c) electrical d) electrically

22 I don't know how some families live .... 2000 pounds a month.

a) on b) with c) at d) into

23 We all must work together for the .... of our country.

a) develop b) developed c) developer d) development

24 We met our old friends in the street .... accident, so we were all so happy.

a) in b) through c) by d) for

25 My friends and I .... helping the old man who needed help yesterday.

a) can b) were able to

c) had the ability d) were capable of

26 Our teacher is a very .... person. He has different ways to illustrate lessons which are all very interesting.

a) imaginary b) imaginative c) imaginable d) imaginary

27 This part of the form is only .... to those who are orphans.

a) applicable b) application c) applicant d) apply

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

28 Studying hard and revising regularly is very important .... any student.

a) to b) with c) for d) by e) from

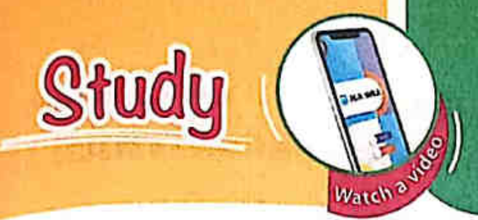
29 I asked my teacher to .... him if I want to inquire about any information.

a) connect to b) contact c) communicate

d) communicate with e) contact with

30 This room has under floor heating, isn't it wonderful? The antonyms of the word "heating" are .... and ....

a) warming b) cooling c) signing d) deleting e) freezing



Lessons 1 & 2

B Language

Future forms

TIMELINE

هناك العديد من أشكال التعبير عن المستقبل وهى:

١- will + inf.

٢- (be) going to + inf.

٣-(am – is – are) + v-ing مضارع مستمر

٤- present simple مضارع بسيط

past — present — future

1 Subj. + will + inf. مصدر الفعل

Usage الاستخدام

① **For prediction with no evidence (based on guesswork)**
تنبؤ بدون دليل (يعتمد على التخمين).

- He will win the first prize as I think he is clever.
- We will probably be there for about five or six days.

② **For future facts** للتعبير عن حقيقة فى المستقبل

- I'll be forty seven next year.

③ **For quick decision** لاتخاذ قرار سريع

- My phone is ringing, I will answer it.

④ **Offer & request** العرض والطلب

- Will you open the door for me, please?
- I will lend you the money you need. Don't worry.

⑤ **Threat & promise** الوعد والتهديد

- If you pass the exam, I'll get you a nice present.
- I'll call the police if you do this bad thing again.

⑥ **We can use "will" with present evidence with adverbs like (probably – definitely – certainly – surely ...)** مع بعض الظروف مثل:

- Look at those dark clouds; it will probably rain.

7. **We can use "will" with the following words:** مع الكلمات التالية
promise – expect – predict – hope – think – believe – perhaps – I'm sure
- Scientists predict that we will live on the moon in the future.
- I am sure we will be happy when we finish our exams.

8. **For first conditional** في الحالة الشرطية الأولى
- If you study hard, you will get high marks.

9. **With some time conjunctions** مع الروابط الزمنية
After/As soon as/Before/until/when/by the time/...
- When Samir comes/has come, he will take his brother to the cinema.
- We won't send the email until the manager confirms/has confirmed it.

2) be going to

Subj. + (am / is / are) going to + inf. مصدر الفعل

Usage الاستخدام

1. **For future plans, decisions and intentions.** خطط مستقبلية وقرارات ونوايا.
We can use "going to" with the following:
(plan – intend – intention – (have) decided – (have) made a decision)
- I am going to buy some clothes online this afternoon.
- **A:** Why are you turning on the TV?
B: I'm going to watch the news.
- I am going to study medicine. That's my plan.
- I have decided to travel. - I am going to travel to London.
- Watch out! You are going to fall in the hole.

ولكن لاحظ الجملة التالية:
- Watch out or you will be robbed.

2. **For predictions with evidence.** التنبؤ بدليل.
- Look at the sky. It is going to rain.
- She is pregnant. She is going to have a baby.

3. **Something is about to happen** شيء على وشك الحدوث
- Look! He is going to win the race.
- Be careful! The child is going to fall to the ground.

Important Notes



١) لاحظ الجمل التالية:

promise – expect – predict ... الفاعل + will + inf.

- He promises he will do his best to come first.

promised – expected – predicted ... الفاعل + would + inf.

- He promised he would do his best to come first.

أما مع عدم وجود فاعل أو إذا كانت تتبع بمفعول نستخدم بعدها (to + inf.).

- He promises/promised me to do his best to come first.

٢) يتم استخدام will غالبًا للتفاصيل والتعليقات على الحدث.

- I am going on holiday. I will be away for a week.
- I am going to do some walking. Oh, that'll be nice.

٣) لاحظ الجمل التالية:

- Liverpool is a very good team. I think it will win the final match. (تنبؤ قائم على رأى شخصى)
- These players are very big. I think the match is going to be very difficult. (تنبؤ قائم على دليل مرئى)

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I expect he .... his exams easily.
   a) would pass
   b) is passing
   c) will pass
   d) is going to pass
2. Sally .... her friends soon. That's her plan.
   a) is meeting
   b) is going to meet
   c) meets
   d) will meet
3. She is travelling to Paris tomorrow. She .... the Eiffel Tower.
   a) will probably visit
   b) is probably going to visit
   c) is going visiting
   d) probably visits
4. If you are too busy to clean your room, I .... it for you.
   a) am going to clean
   b) are cleaning
   c) would clean
   d) will clean
5. How old .... next month?
   a) are you going to be
   b) will you be
   c) are you being
   d) would you be



Check the answers at the end of the book.



Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

I think number one is (d), isn't it?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The twins .... seventeen next week. What presents will we buy for them?
a) turning b) turn c) are going to turn d) will turn

2 Tomorrow, I .... the match with my friend. I have intended to do that.
a) will watch b) am watching
c) watching d) am going to watch

3 Look at this careless driver! He .... into the car in front of him.
a) will crash b) is going to crash c) is crashing d) crashes

4 I .... in the hospital where I have applied for the training post.
a) am probably working b) will probably work
c) am probably going to work d) would probably work

5 That's the phone. I .... answer it. مدرسة السعيدية - الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
a) will b) am going to c) shall d) could

6 I have applied for the job and I hope I .... it.
a) will get b) am getting
c) get d) am going to get

7 I .... hire a car to travel around London as planned.
a) am going to b) may c) would d) will

8 I am sure it .... an exciting match tomorrow.
a) is going to be b) is c) is being d) will be

9 The ceiling of this room doesn't look very safe. It looks as if it .... down.
a) will fall b) is going to fall c) is falling d) falls

10 **A:** Do you have any plans for the weekend?
B: I .... my friends on Saturday morning.
a) will meet b) am going to meet c) meet d) will be met

11 **A:** I'm going on holiday to Europe this October. Should I take an umbrella?
B: Yes, perhaps it ....
a) is raining b) will rain c) probably rains d) rains

12 Don't raise your voice in the class or you .... out.
a) will send b) will be sent
c) are going to send d) are going to be sent

13 Do you believe that Moustafa .... the job?
a) is going to get b) will get c) is getting d) would get

14 Look! He .... off his bicycle.
a) will fall b) is going to fall c) falls d) has fallen

15 I have planned. I .... lunch with my uncle.
a) will have b) am having c) am going to have d) would have

16 Be careful or you .... your finger. مدرسة أسوان الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢

a) will cut b) are going to cut c) are cutting d) cut

17 I am the first one who congratulated Ali. His birthday .... tomorrow. مدرسة بني محمد سلطان - المنيا ٢٠٢٢

a) is going to be b) is being c) will be d) will have been

18 My brother is saving money, he .... a new bike.

a) is buying b) is going buying c) will buy d) is going to buy

19 I think my brother .... a doctor. All of us predict that.

a) will be b) is going to be c) is being d) would be

20 Our team are attacking hard. They .... a goal.

a) are going to score b) will score
c) are scoring d) score

21 We expected that our team .... the match versus Cameroon. مدرسة الفتح - الباجور - المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

a) will win b) 're going to win c) shall win d) would win

22 **A:** Why are you turning on the television?
B: I .... some educational programs.

a) will watch b) am watching
c) will be watched d) am going to watch

23 My friend is very intelligent. I think, he .... the test easily.

a) is going to passing b) will pass
c) is passing d) would pass

24 I am studying medicine. I .... a doctor.

a) will be b) am going to be c) am being d) shall be

25 It was predicted that our school .... in the competition.

a) would participate b) is going to participate
c) is participating d) will be participating

26 The train to Alexandria leaves at 10 o'clock. This is according to ....

a) intention b) quick decision c) prediction d) timetable

27 Will you open the window, Medhat? This sentence expresses a/an ....

a) offer b) request c) intention d) threat

28 Today is Thursday so tomorrow .... be Friday. إدارة المقطم والخليفة - القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) is going b) is c) will d) is going to

29 Which of the following sentences is wrong?

a) I promise I will study hard.
b) The sky is cloudy. I think it is going to rain.
c) Be careful or you are falling.
d) Loujee will be 40 next month.

30 Which of the following sentences is correct?

a) My son will marry again. He has decided to do that.
b) Ali is studying hard. He will get high marks.
c) I promise, I am going to give you a lot of money.
d) Mona will probably attend the party tomorrow.

Test Yourself in 20 min





Unit 5
Lessons 1 & 2

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The telephone lines are down, so .... are very difficult in this area.
a) connections b) communications c) contacts d) conversations

2 There was no evidence that the suspect was .... with the crime.
a) contacted b) communicated c) collected d) connected

3 .... was tightened at the airport before the Prime Mnister arrived.
a) Security b) Maturity c) Community d) Insecurity

4 The word "satnav" is short for اختصار لـ satellite ....
a) navigation b) navy c) naval d) nave

5 The new project is expected to .... at least 2000 new jobs for the youth.
a) consume b) create c) control d) develop

6 There have been major new developments in satellite ....
a) psychology b) physiology c) biology d) technology

7 The secret information on my facebook account was lost in a ....
a) hack b) hacked c) hacker d) hacks

8 We can warm up the room quite quickly with this .... fire.
a) electric b) electrical c) electricity d) electrician

9 My family promised .... me out today for passing my exams.
a) would take b) are going to take
c) to take d) will take

10 This year, I am going on holiday with my family to Italy. I am sure I .... it.
a) are enjoying b) will enjoy c) are going to enjoy d) should enjoy

11 **A:** We haven't got any tea. **B:** OK. I .... some.
a) am going to get b) am getting
c) will get d) would get

12 It's my birthday next Tuesday. I .... 17.
a) am being b) am going to be c) have been d) will be

13 Don't come late again or I .... punish you.
a) are going to b) shan't c) are gone to d) will

14 Look over there! They .... off their bikes.
a) are falling b) are going to fall c) will fall d) fall

15 He is filling the bucket with water. He .... the car.

a) will wash
b) washes
c) has washed
d) is going to wash

16 I expect my son .... high marks in the exam.

a) gets
b) will get
c) is getting
d) will be getting

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It is most necessary for everyone to cut down on their food expenses. Since the early 1970s, the cost of food has gone up faster than the cost of all commodities[1] and services. For all Egyptian families, it swallows more than half the budget of millions of low-income families. The increase has mounted to more than 300%. People suffer from the high prices of food a lot. Is it the fate of low-income families to face starvation[2]? You can reduce your food expenses at least 20% by observing the following pieces of advice. Note the food items you need when your supplies run low. Group the same kind of food together and write a list of your needs. Use your list as you shop and don't buy any items which are not included on the list. Food is sold nowadays in different forms: fresh, canned and frozen. Choose the cheapest and healthiest ones. For vegetarians, who never eat beef or poultry, they can buy fresh vegetables instead of frozen ones because they are cheaper and healthier. Chickens are cheaper than red meat. You can have cheese, beans and eggs instead of meat. One last bit of advice, "Don't go shopping on an empty stomach". Shopping when you are hungry tempts you to buy things you don't really need.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The underlined word "it" in the second paragraph refers to ....

a) the budget
b) food
c) commodities
d) services

2 As food is the biggest item in the Egyptian family budget, people should buy ....

a) all the food
b) frozen food
c) only healthy and cheap food
d) canned food

(1) سلع (2) مجاعة

3 To attract or make someone want to do or have something is to ....

a) refuse
b) distract
c) tempt
d) reject

4 Those who don't eat meat are called ....

a) meat eaters
b) vegetarians
c) vegetables
d) vegetation

5 It's advisable not to go shopping while you are ....

a) angry
b) hungry
c) sad
d) happy

6 Writing a list of what you need is ....

a) useless
b) expensive
c) important
d) a waste of time

7 "To cut down on food expenses" means to spend .... on buying food.

a) many
b) much
c) less
d) more

8 According to the passage, red meat is .... chickens.

a) cheaper than
b) more expensive than
c) as expensive as
d) as cheap as

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Scientists make discoveries and advances which help us to cope[1] with the changes in our world.

....

....

2. In peace, money can be used for building new factories, improving health care and solving the problems of housing[2] and transport.

....

....

3. Modern technology plays an important role in the progress of industry, agriculture, education, medicine and surgery[3].

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- يجب على كل فرد تعلم مهارات الكمبيوتر والإنترنت لأن الحياة أصبحت معتمدة عليهما بشكل أساسى[4].

....

....

٢- لقد أصبح التلفزيون وسيلة لنشر المعرفة(5) ويستمتع بمشاهدته الكبار والصغار على حد سواء(6).

....

....

٣- المواطنة(7) هى أن يتساوى أبناء الوطن الواحد فيما لهم من حقوق(8) وما عليهم من واجبات (9).

....

....

How to translate

١- فى الجملة العربية من الممكن أن نستغنى عن الفعل (يكون) ولكن لابد من وضعه فى الجملة الإنجليزية.

العلم سلاح ذو حدين. Science is a double-edged weapon.

٢- الأسماء المعنوية والأسماء التى لا تجمع لا يأتى قبلها the عند ترجمتها إلى اللغة الإنجليزية.

السعادة كنز لا يقدر بمال. Happiness is a priceless treasure.

٣- لم + فعل مضارع يقابله ماض بسيط منفى .didn't + inf

لن + فعل مضارع يقابله مستقبل منفى .won't + inf

لا + فعل مضارع يقابله مضارع منفى .don't/doesn't + inf

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

1. The pros and cons of modern technology.
2. Your expectations concerning future communications.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.

(1) يساير
(2) الإسكان
(3) الجراحة
(4) mainly
(5) knowledge
(6) equally
(7) citizenship
(8) rights
(9) duties





Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

English	Arabic
antivirus software (n)	برنامج مضاد للفيروسات
click (v) – ed	يضغط على (رابط)
cyberbullying (n)	التنمر/التسلط الإلكتروني
download (n) (v) – ed	تحميل/يحمل من الإنترنت
downloading malware (n)	تحميل برمجيات خبيثة/ضارة
hacking (n)	القرصنة (على الإنترنت)
link (n)	رابط
lock (v) – ed	يغلق
password (n)	كلمة المرور
phishing (n)	التصيد/الاحتيال
posting photos	نشر الصور
scam* (n)	احتيال
uploading personal details	رفع بيانات شخصية على الإنترنت

* Don't reply to this email; it may be a scam.

Vocabulary on Reading

English	Arabic
abilities (n)	قدرات
account (n)	حساب (بنكي/على موقع إلكتروني)
address (n)	عنوان
advert = advertisement (n)	إعلان
bank account (n)	حساب بنكي
change (v) – d	يغير
details (n)	تفاصيل
embarrassing (adj)	محرج
experience (n) (v) – d	تجربة شخصية/يجرب
free (adj) = free of charge = for free	مجانًا
furious (adj)	غاضب جدًا
happen (v) – ed	يحدث
join (v) – ed	يلتحق بـ/ينضم إلى
properly (adv)	تمامًا
recognise (v) – d	يعرف/يميز
socialise (v) – d	يختلط (اجتماعيًا)
support (v) – ed	يدعم
website (n)	موقع إنترنت

Vocabulary on Listening

almost (adv) تقريبًا	google (v) – d يبحث على محرك البحث (جوجل)
bully (v) – ~~y~~ ied يتنمر	horrible (adj) فظيع
careful (adj) حريص	impossible (adj) مستحيل
comment (n) (v) – ed تعليق/يعلق	kids (n) أطفال/صغار
credit card (n) كارت ائتمان	post (n) (v) – ed منشور/ينشر (على الإنترنت)
data (n) بيانات	really (adv) حقًّا
delete (v) – d يمسح	rude (adj) وقح/قليل الأدب
employment (n) توظيف	scary (adj) مخيف
excited (adj) فرحان/مبتهج	surprise (v) – d يندهش
funny (adj) مضحك	ugly (adj) قبيح الشكل

Vocabulary on Reading

allow (v) – ed يسمح	frighten (v) – ed يرعب/يخيف
(be) in trouble (v) يكون فى ورطة	provide (v) – d يزود
believe (v) – d يصدق	steal (v) يسرق
dishonest (adj) مخادع/محتال	trick (v) – ed يخدع
document (n) وثيقة	unwanted (adj) غير مرغوب فيه

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

build friendships	يبنى صداقات	safe place for	مكان آمن لـ
complete a form	يكمل/يملأ استمارة	stay safe online	يبقى آمنا على الإنترنت
do it online	يفعل شيئا على الإنترنت	read about	يقرأ عن
get ... for free	يحصل على شيء مجانا	socialise with	يختلط اجتماعيا مع
get a job	يحصل على وظيفة	steal from	يسرق من
give advice	يعطى نصيحة	think about	يفكر فى
advert for	إعلان لـ	worried about	قلق بشأن
comment about	تعليق على	write about	يكتب عن
complete ... with	يكمل ... بـ	in details	بالتفصيل
delete ... from	يمسح من	make comments on	يعلق على
plenty of	وفرة من	careful about/with	حريص على
keep a note of	يحتفظ بملحوظة من	click on	ينقر على
look like	يبدو كأنه	rude to	وقح مع
on the internet	على الإنترنت		

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
account يمثل/يشرح/يعلل	account حساب/رصيد accountant محاسب accountancy علم المحاسبة	accountable مسئول/ممكن تفسيره
allow يسمح	allowance إجازة/أجر/مصروف	----------------------
care يعتنى	care رعاية/عناية carer راعٍ (مقدم الرعاية)	careful حذر/حريص caring مهتم
embarrass* يحرج/يربك	embarrassment إحراج	embarrassed محرج/خجلان embarrassing مخجل/مربك
employ يعين/يوظف	employee موظف employer صاحب العمل employment عمالة unemployment بطالة	unemployed عاطل عن العمل employable قادر على العمل

* - Dad never embarrasses me.
- He knows well that embarrassment will harm my feelings.
- My cheeks get red when I'm embarrassed.

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
enable	يتمكن	ability inability disability	قدرة عجز/عدم القدرة إعاقة	able unable disabled	قادر عاجز معاق
frighten	يخيف	fright	خوف/هلع	frightened frightening frightful	خائف/مذعور مخيف/مرعب كريه/بغيض
----------------------		fury	غضب/سخط	furious	غاضب/ثائر
trick	يخدع/يحتال	trick trickery trickster	خدعة مراوغة/تحايل مخادع/محتال	tricky trick	خادع مخادع

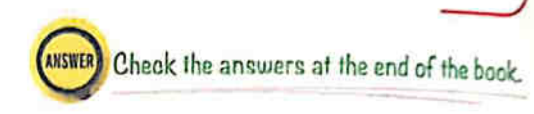
Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

You can make your own notes and mind maps to remember them.

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
careful	حريص	cautious/concerned	careless/incautious	غير حريص/مهمل
change	يغير	alter/adjust	preserve/remain	يحفظ/يظل
embarrassing	محرج	awkward/uncomfortable	elegant/convenient	غير محرج/مناسب
employ	يوظف	hire/enlist/retrain	fire/discharge	يفصل من العمل
free	مجاني	without charge/costless	costly/valuable/pricey	مكلف
funny	مضحك	comical/humorous	serious/unfunny	جاد/غير مضحك
furious	غاضب جدًا	very angry/raging/boiling	calm/quiet	هادئ
horrible	فظيع	unpleasant/awful	attractive/pleasant	جذاب
lock	يغلق	close/shut	open/unlock	يفتح
personal	شخصي	private/individual	public/common	عام/شائع
scary	مخيف	frightening/terrifying	normal/calming	طبيعي/مهدئ
socialise	يختلط (اجتماعيًا)	mix/mingle	dissociate/separate	ينفصل اجتماعيًا
ugly	قبيح	unattractive/bad-looking	beautiful/pretty	جميل

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To open any file, just .... on the menu icon.
   a) pick b) trick c) click d) clip
2. The government salaries are now transferred to the employees' bank ....
   a) maths b) accounts c) boxes d) amounts
3. Several people .... on my last post. I was very happy with what they said.
   a) commented b) excited c) completed d) clicked
4. Please, walk quietly so that you don't .... the birds away.
   a) frightening b) frightened c) fright d) frighten
5. I think it was .... of them not to phone and say that they weren't coming.
   a) wonderful b) rude c) scared d) excited



Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text

What is a password, and why do you need one when you go online?

Last week, I was playing online when I saw an advert[1] for a free game. I clicked[2] on the link and wrote my name, address and some bank details[3]. When I tried to download the game, nothing happened. It was a scam[4]!

My dad was furious[5] because they stole money from his bank account[6] and my computer stopped working properly[7]! Don't click on links you don't recognise[8] and never give your personal details on a strange website. Oh, and remember to use antivirus software to stop thieves!

(1) إعلان
(2) ينقر
(3) تفاصيل
(4) احتيال
(5) غاضب
(6) حساب بنكي
(7) بشكل مناسب
(8) يتعرف على

How does he suggest you can stay safe?

How often do you use the internet and why do you use it for?

Listening Text






Hassan : Last week, I was reading about a new online game and saw an advert[1] that said I could get this game for free[2]. All I had to do was complete a form[3] with my name, email address and credit card[4] details. I don't have a credit card, but I sometimes use my dad's card to buy things. Of course it was a scam[5]. They just wanted the credit card details so they could steal money, but it looked just like a real advert. I think lots of kids would be so excited to get a free game they wouldn't think carefully about it.



Laila : I'm leaving school this year and I want to get a job in a bank. My teacher told me that employers[6] often look online to see what we've posted[7], so I decided to google[8] my name to see what they might find. It was scary[9]. All the photos and the 'funny' comments I'd ever posted were there and I couldn't delete them. I didn't realise it's almost impossible to remove[10] personal data from the internet.



Saeed : I love reading my friend's social media posts, but some people write really horrible[11] things about other teenagers[12]. One of my friends posted a photo of himself on his new bike and he got lots of rude comments[13] about how he looked and how ugly his bike is. I couldn't believe it! These kids would never, never bully my friend at school, so why do it online? I'm really careful about what I say on the internet now!

(1) إعلان
(2) مجانًا
(3) استمارة
(4) كارت ائتمان
(5) حيلة/خدعة
(6) أرباب العمل
(7) نشر
(8) يبحث فى جوجل
(9) مخيف
(10) يزيل
(11) فظيع
(12) مراهقون
(13) تعليقات وقحة

Why do people need to be careful when using the internet?

Think in English and use an English-English dictionary.

Vocabulary in Use



FOCUS on Vocabulary

antivirus software برامج ضد الفيروسات
- software that removes unwanted programs from a computer

click ينقر
- what you can do to go to another page online

cyberbullying التسلط عبر الإنترنت
- when someone is threatened by another person using electronic communication like email

downloading تحميل من الإنترنت
- when someone transfers information from the internet to their computer

hacking اختراق/قرصنة
- using a computer to break into another computer system, such as a bank

link رابط
- a place in an electric document that takes you to another page or website

lock قفل/يقفل
- what you can do to stop other people using your phone or social media accounts

malware برمجيات خبيثة
- computer program or software that is harmful to a computer system

password كلمة المرور
- a secret group of letters or numbers that you must type into a computer before you can use a system or program

phishing احتيال/تصيد
- tricking someone into giving information or money over the internet or by email

posting photos

نشر صور عبر مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي

- when someone transfers one of their photos from their phone or computer to social media

unknown files

حيل أو خدع

- dishonest schemes by someone to get money from another person

uploading personal details

تحميل بيانات شخصية

- when someone adds their name, address and other personal details to an internet site

Notes on Vocabulary

1

allow + مفعوله + to + inf. يسمح لـ...
- I allowed him to play here.

allow + v-ing/noun يسمح بـ
- I allowed playing here.

2

scam غش – عملية احتيال
- The email was only a scam to take my money.

skim يقرأ أو يتصفح سريعًا لمعرفة الفكرة الرئيسية فقط دون تفاصيل
- I usually skim the newspapers in the morning.

scan يفحص أو يتصفح بدقة للبحث عن شيء محدد
- We scanned the list until we found our friend's name.

3

download ... from يحمل أو ينزل من الإنترنت
- If I like anything on the internet, I download it onto my computer.

upload ... to يرفع على الإنترنت
- When I finished my research, I uploaded it to the internet.

unload يقوم بتفريغ الحمولة (سيارة مثلًا)
- He parked his vehicle and began to unload it.

4

upgrade يرقى – يصعد (من أقل لأعلى)
- You must upgrade your computer version as it is very old.

update يحدث
- You must update your computer programs more often.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- I saw an advert for a free game./I could get this game for free.

تأتى كلمة free بمعنى (حر/خالٍ) وفى هذه الجملة معناها (مجانى/بدون تكلفة) والتعبير for free معناه مجانًا.

- My computer stopped working properly.

عندما يأتى بعد الفعل stop فعل مضاف إليه ing تكون بمعنى توقف عن عمل الشىء أما إذا جاء بعدها to + inf. فمعناها توقف من أجل عمل الشىء.

- He was listening to the radio, but he stopped to answer the phone.

- Sometimes teenagers experience bullying .... different opinions and experiences.

كلمة experience جاءت فى الجملة الأولى كفعل بمعنى يمارس و فى الجملة الثانية جاءت اسمًا بمعنى تجربة.

- You have plenty of information.

تستخدم كلمة plenty of قبل الأسماء التى لا تعد بمعنى مزيد من أو وفرة من.

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Children under five usually travel .... on trains.
   a) freelance b) freely c) free d) freedom
2. To get information about my project, I decided to .... it to see what I will find.
   a) goggle b) google c) log d) download
3. It was much .... driving through the desert at night.
   a) scar b) scared c) scare d) scary
4. I like my children to spend time talking and .... with people to build new friends.
   a) social b) sociable c) socialise d) socialising
5. You must be careful when you .... files from the internet.
   a) download b) upload c) overload d) upgrade

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.





Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

I think number one is (b), what do you think?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 You must .... the car when you leave it. It is not safe here.
a) look b) lock c) unlock d) locker

2 There is a strong .... between lung diseases and smoking.
a) link b) connect c) communication d) website

3 When people began fighting each other, the situation became ....
a) relaxing b) exciting c) lovely d) ugly

4 You should give .... of your education and experience on the application form.
a) components b) documents c) accounts d) details

5 It is known that fame always .... people, but not my father!
a) exchanges b) changes c) charges d) challenges

6 Children like to .... new games and movies from the internet. إدارة نجع حمادي التعليمية ٢٠٢٢
a) upload b) download c) downside d) destroy

7 The email said it was from a bank, but we all knew it was really a ....
إدارة المنتزه التعليمية - الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
a) software b) lock c) scam d) hack

8 The streets have changed so much since I last visited my town that I hardly .... it now.
a) recognise b) know c) realise d) understand

9 .... refers to any intrusive دخيل software developed by cybercriminals to steal data from computers.
a) Software b) Hardware c) Malware d) System

10 .... is sending messages online to frighten or worry people. إدارة المرج التعليمية ٢٠٢٢
a) Security b) Anti-virus c) Cyberbullying d) Shoplifting

11 Yesterday, I got up late, missed my train, lost my mobile and injured my leg. It was a/an .... day.
a) incredible b) horrified c) terrified d) horrible

12 The .... we have on our computer and mobiles is very important. We mustn't lose it.
a) knowledge b) date c) data d) accounts

13 .... and hacking technologies have made it possible to steal users' accounts and misuse their private information.
a) Fishing b) Skimming c) Scanning d) Phishing

14 .... on "next" when you have finished filling out the form. إدارة قويسنا التعليمية ٢٠٢٢
a) Download b) Load c) Select d) Click

15 When you want to remove unwanted programmes from your computer, you can install an ....

a) antivirus b) antibiotic c) anticipation d) anticlimax

16 I have to .... this old version of Windows to enjoy having more programs.

a) upload b) download c) upgrade d) overload

17 I usually just .... through the newspaper in the morning. I read headlines.

a) skim b) scam c) scan d) count

18 .... means putting photographs online.

a) Posting photos b) Downloading malware
c) Uploading personal details d) Antivirus software

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

19 You must .... a note of everything you hear from your teachers.

a) make b) do c) safe d) keep

20 Our .... change began in the 1980s.

a) sociable b) social c) society d) socialism

21 My son is a .... person who likes meeting other people and talking to them.

a) sociable b) social c) society d) socialism

22 My brother is an .... in a great company in Alexandria.

a) account b) accountancy c) accountable d) accountant

23 Leen .... her mother in her appearance and lifestyle.

a) looks like b) likes c) is like d) a & c

24 The magician performed a .... in which he made a rabbit disappear.

a) tricky b) trickster c) trick d) truck

25 I saw some adverts .... different jobs in Cairo and Alexandria.

a) with b) for c) on d) from

26 Spending too much time .... the internet is harmful to your mental and physical health.

a) on b) in c) at d) with

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

27 I never allow .... a child at school.

a) bullying b) to bully c) bullied d) anyone bully e) anyone to bully

28 I applied for a job and they asked me to .... an application form.

a) fill out b) complete c) full d) fill in e) complete in

29 Do you remember any funny stories about work? The word "funny" is the antonym of the words .... and ....

a) careless b) serious c) humorous d) attractive e) unfunny

30 Try to be more careful with your exams. The antonyms of the word "careful" are .... and ....

a) careless b) incautious c) raging d) painstaking e) pleasant





Lessons 3 & 4

B Language

Future forms

1 Present Continuous المضارع المستمر

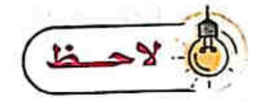
(am, is, are) + v + ing

استخدام المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل.

Usage الاستخدام

① **To talk about things that you have arranged.** أشياء تم الترتيب لها مسبقًا

- I have already booked the tickets; we are travelling abroad next Friday.
- I am meeting my friends in the club tomorrow evening.



- (المناسبات الاجتماعية أو الأنشطة التى تقوم بها المؤسسات مستقبلًا تحتاج إلى ترتيبات ... لذا تستخدم مع زمن المضارع المستمر)

② **We can use "present continuous" with the following:**

(arrange – make arrangements – prepare)

- Amira is visiting her aunt; she has arranged everything.

- عدم القدرة على فعل شىء فى المستقبل تعنى وجود ترتيبات لفعل شىء آخر.

- I can't attend your wedding tomorrow. I'm travelling with my father to France.

2 Present Simple المضارع البسيط

استخدام المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل.

For timetables (Schedules). جدول المواعيد الثابتة.

- The train to Tanta leaves at 6.30 tomorrow morning.
- The English lesson starts at 2.30.

3 Future Continuous (will be + v.ing) المستقبل المستمر

حدث سوف يكون مستمرًا فى وقت محدد فى المستقبل

- Ali will be playing a match with his friends this time tomorrow.
- At 5 tomorrow I will be sleeping.

4 Future Perfect (will have + P.P.) المستقبل التام

حدث سوف يكتمل حدوثه قبل وقت معين فى المستقبل أو فى خلال فترة معينة.

- In two hours, we will have finished our work.
- By 2025, I will have graduated from Tanta University.

Important Notes



لاحظ: استخدام be about to + inf. لحدث فى المستقبل القريب.

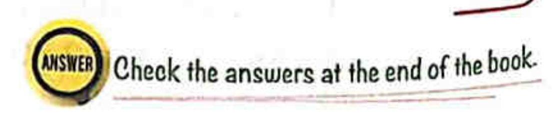
- The audience are in their seats, and the performance is about to start.
- Hurry up. The coach is about to leave.

أيضًا من الممكن استخدام be + to + inf. للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الترتيبات.

- The Prime Minister is to watch the final match in the stadium.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... my next summer holiday in Marina. I have arranged everything.
   a) have spent b) spend c) am spending d) will spend
2. According to the timetable, our exams .... in May.
   a) start b) starts c) will start d) are starting
3. Tomorrow, I .... my friends for dinner. We have already reserved the tables at the restaurant.
   a) am meeting b) will meet c) meet d) meeting
4. He .... to America tomorrow. He's got the tickets.
   a) will fly b) is flying c) flies d) is going to fly
5. Marwan .... married next week. Everything is arranged.
   a) will get b) is going to get c) is getting d) gets





Language Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

I think number one is (c), isn't it?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We .... in the forest next Friday. Everything is prepared.
a) will camp b) are going to camp c) are camping d) would camp

2 According to the timetable, the exam .... at 12 p.m.
a) finish b) finishes
c) will finish d) is going to finish

3 I .... Mr David tomorrow morning. He has accepted my invitation and booked a flight.
a) meet b) am meeting
c) will meet d) am going to meet

4 Look at the schedule! The first train to Aswan .... at 5.00 a.m.
a) leaves b) is leaving c) is going to leave d) will leave

إدارة غرب الزقازيق - الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

5 This museum .... at 9:00 a.m. tomorrow.
a) will open b) opens
c) open d) is going to open

6 We .... a party for my daughter's success tomorrow. Would you like to come?
a) are having b) going to have c) would have d) has

7 A: Are you leaving this evening? B: Yes, my train .... at 7.15.
a) is going to leave b) leaves
c) will leave d) will be leaving

8 Dina can't see her friends this afternoon. She .... her mother in the kitchen.
a) is helping b) helps c) helped d) was helping

9 I .... my uncle at the airport at six o'clock. Everything is arranged.
a) going to meet b) am meeting c) will meet d) meet

10 Amal .... her birthday party next week. She has made a lot of preparations.
a) gives b) will give
c) is giving d) is going to give

إدارة القناطر - القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

11 This train .... exactly at 10.30 in the morning.
a) leave b) leaving c) is leaving d) leaves

12 Salwa .... to London next week. Her flight leaves at 7 in the evening.
a) going to fly b) is flying c) will have flown d) would fly

مدرسة السعيدية - الجيزة ٢٠٢٢

13 I .... to London next Friday. Everything is arranged.
a) will travel b) am going to travel
c) am travelling d) travel

14 When he arrives, I .... dinner with him. I have just decided.
a) am having b) would have c) have d) will have

15 He will introduce us to his friends as soon as we ....
a) arrived b) will arrive c) arriving d) have arrived

16 I hope .... all my dreams in life.
a) will achieve b) would achieve c) to achieving d) to achieve

17 I .... my father what you said. I promise.
a) won't tell
b) am not going to tell
c) am not telling
d) don't tell

18 I can't meet you tonight because I .... my brother at the airport.

إدارة شرق المحلة - الغربية ٢٠٢٢

a) am meeting b) will meet c) had met d) going to meet

19 Somebody is knocking on the door. I .... and open it.
a) am going b) would go c) will go d) have gone

20 Stop piling up يكدس your work and revision. You .... fail.
a) will b) would c) are going to d) will be

21 Hany .... to France tomorrow. He's got the ticket. مدرسة الكويت - إدارة المنتزه - الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
a) is going to travel
b) is travelling
c) will travel
d) travels

22 Al-Ahly is a very good team. It .... the match.
a) would win b) is going to win c) will win d) are winning

23 It is predicted that ordinary people .... on space holidays in the next fifty years.
a) are going b) are going to go c) will go d) will be going

24 Are you .... tennis after school today?
a) going to play
b) played
c) play
d) probably playing

25 I .... that mountain one day.
a) am climbing b) am going to climb c) will be climbed d) will climb

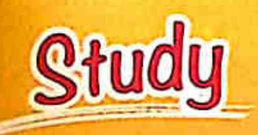
26 Look, the sky is really dark, I .... indoors.
a) will be staying b) will be stayed c) stay d) will stay

27 Everything is prepared for my sister's wedding next week. This means that ....
a) my sister will marry next week
b) my sister is going to marry next week
c) my sister is getting married next week
d) my sister marries next week

28 Jana is about to sleep soon. This means that ....
a) she will sleep soon
b) she is going to sleep soon
c) she is sleeping soon
d) she sleeps soon

29 I'm going to attend the conference tomorrow. This sentence is a/an ....
a) future fact b) intention c) threat d) promise

30 Ramy will join the Faculty of Medicine. This sentence is a/an ....
a) intention b) plan c) prediction d) fact



Lessons 3 & 4



General Skills

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المعادلات.



(I) Writing

A reflective essay

- **It is an essay in which the writer examines his/her experiences in life.**

- مقال التدبر يكتب فيه الكاتب عن خبراته وتجاربه فى الحياة وكيفية الاستفادة من هذه التجارب. ويتكون من:

1. **Introduction** المقدمة:
   It should be more direct to explain what experience that he/she will talk about.
2. **The body** الموضوع:
   It explains how the writer has changed or what he/she has learned.
   What things caused him/her to change.
3. **Conclusion** الخاتمة:
   The writer sums up why the change is beneficial and how it will affect him/her in the future.

A blog

- It is a personal website in which a person can write about his/her personal life and make comments.

The problems children might have with the internet.

Children, who are among the most active internet users, are unfortunately subject to a number of threats and problems. If you allow your children to spend much time surfing the web, it's important to know what threats they face to be able to deal with. The most common problems that face children are loneliness, depression and anxiety. Parents should be aware of what their kids see and hear on the internet. Also, who they meet and what they share about themselves. You must talk with your children, using tools to protect them and keep an eye on their activities. They must never post or reveal personal information such as addresses or phone numbers.

Golden Question

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- Taha Hussein wrote about his life and described his suffering in his book "Al Ayyam". This kind of writing is called ....

a) descriptive b) narrative c) biography d) autobiography

Test Yourself in 20 min



Unit 5
Lessons 3 & 4

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 All drivers should really know how to .... a flat tyre.
a) buy b) change c) take d) have

2 We all .... our colleague Adel to overcome his serious disease.
a) support b) allow c) give d) let

3 Computer .... has become a global threat تهديد عالمى over the last decade. It leads to a lot of problems.
a) downloading b) uploading c) hacking d) account

4 You need to update your .... software regularly to look for and remove viruses on your computer.
a) malware b) antivirus c) antibiotic d) antibodies

5 The largest company in our town has 600 ....
a) employers b) employments c) employees d) employable

6 The special word you need before you can sign in a Facebook account is called a ....
a) key b) secret c) passport d) password

7 I never .... my students to waste their time. I always encourage them.
a) let b) make c) allow d) prevent

8 Readers can .... the author's latest novel to read on a computer or tablet.
a) upload b) unload c) offload d) download

9 I can't watch the film in the cinema with you as it .... at 6.30 and I have work at this time.
a) will be started b) starts c) is going to start d) is starting

10 Tarek! What time .... your friend tomorrow?
a) are you meeting b) you will meet
c) you are meeting d) do you meet

11 There is no doubt that we .... out of petrol one day.
a) will run b) are going to run c) are running d) would run

12 This year, we .... on holiday to Aswan. I am sure you will enjoy it.
a) are going b) will have gone c) go d) would go

13 Mum .... to the dentist on Monday morning. She has arranged everything.
a) will go b) going to go c) will be going d) is going

14 I need to get in shape. I .... on a diet.
a) will go b) am going to go c) am going d) have gone

15 Look at the girl on the edge roof. I think she .... fall down.

a) would b) going to c) is going d) is about to

16 Take your umbrella with you .... you will get wet.

a) and b) so c) or d) but

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There are many periods in a person's life. Each period has its pleasures and pains and the happiest person is the one who enjoys what each period gives him without wasting his time in useless things. Childhood is a time when a child relies[1] on parents who offer him everything he needs, such as food, clothes and money. During this period, there are few responsibilities. A child finds pleasure in playing in the rain or on beach sand. But, a child has pains since he is not free to do what he wishes and he is always told what to do or to be punished for what he has done wrong.

When a child becomes a young man, he or she starts to earn his or her own living[2], and becomes free from the discipline[3] and the control of school and parents, and accepts responsibilities. However, if they work hard, they can have the great happiness of seeing himself make sustainable[4] progress in their professions to build up for themselves their own position in society.

Wisdom and the ability to help other people come with the old age. Old people can enjoy seeing their children doing great things in life. Also, they may feel the happiness of having passed their life safely. At the same time, they may suffer from loneliness and illness.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 There are .... periods of life mentioned in the passage.

a) two
b) three
c) four
d) five

2 The underlined word "they" refers to ....

a) children
b) young people
c) grandchildren
d) old people

3 A child is not free to do what he wishes. The synonym of wishes is "..................".

a) desires
b) dislikes
c) hates
d) refuses

(1) يعتمد
(2) المعيشة
(3) انضباط
(4) مستدام

4 Young people are usually .... according to the passage.

a) lazy
b) wise
c) hardworking
d) inactive

5 Which period has more responsibilities?

a) Childhood.
b) Youth.
c) Old age.
d) Teenage.

6 The happiest persons are those who ....

a) spend much time in bed
b) waste time
c) enjoy good and bad things
d) play all the time

7 There are .... responsibilities in the first period of our life.

a) many
b) a lot of
c) little
d) not many

8 A suitable title for this passage is ....

a) Childhood and its trouble
b) Old age and loneliness
c) Periods of life
d) Youth and hardworking

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. The great development in industry[1] has led to an increase in the amount[2] of carbon dioxide[3] and this has led to climate change and global warming[4].

....

....

2. Our historical monuments are priceless[5] treasures, so we should do our best to protect them.

....

....

3. Co-operation among nations of the world will result in[6] spreading peace and security. They should help each other to improve the living conditions of their people.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- تعتبر حياة الريف أكثر نقاء[٧] من حياة المدينة لما يتمتع به الريف من مناظر طبيعية خلابة وهواء نقي.

....

....

٢- الإنسان بطبيعته محب للطبيعة والجمال، فهو يبحث عن الجمال فى كل شىء حتى بين الأشياء الغريبة.

....

....

٣- لا يستطيع الإنسان بأى حال من الأحوال أن يستغنى[٨] عن الماء والهواء، ولولاهما لهلكت[٩] جميع الكائنات الحية[١٠].

....

....

How to translate

١- لا يوجد ترجمة للمفعول المطلق فى اللغة الإنجليزية ولكنه يترجم على أنه adverb.

يؤثر التدخين تأثيرًا سلبيًا على الصحة. Smoking affects health negatively.

٢- بعض الأفعال فى اللغة الإنجليزية لا يأتى معها حرف جر رغم وجوده فى معناها باللغة العربية مثل:

يعجب بـ .... admire/يستمتع بـ enjoy/يشعر بـ feel/يؤثر على affect

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

1. How can we spend our free time well?
2. How to stay safe online.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

- I used more than 4 new vocabulary.
- I used the right structure.
- I used a topic sentence.
- I wrote the conclusion.
- I used the right punctuation.

(1) الصناعة
(2) كمية
(3) ثانى أكسيد الكربون
(4) الاحتباس الحرارى
(5) لا يقدر بثمن
(6) بسبب
(7) purification
(8) do without
(9) perish
(10) living creatures

Study

Chapter 5 (Treasure Island)

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

allow	يسمح	fresh	منعش
believe	يصدق	group	مجموعة
bottom	الأسفل	interested	مهتم
dangerous	خطير	kneel	يركع
dead	ميت	leader	زعيم/قائد
different	مختلف	sail	شراع
dry voice	صوت جاف	spade	جاروف

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

allow me to	يسمح لى أن	from up the hill	من أعلى التل
at the end	فى نهاية المطاف	in front of me	أمامى
burned by the sun	احترقت من الشمس	knelt down	ركع
come out from behind	يخرج من الخلف	left here by a ship	غادر من هنا على سفينة
dream of	يحلم بـ	on your own	بمفردك
flying above	تحلق فوق	to my surprise	لدهشتى
from the start	من البداية	work for	يعمل لدى



Novel Exercises

Chapter (5)

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 A .... has a long wooden handle and a flat piece of metal and is used for digging.
a) sword b) spade c) spam d) knife

2 I think you are .... to refuse this wonderful offer.
a) crazy b) wise c) dizzy d) lazy

3 My father always advises me not to get into a .... at school.
a) right b) flight c) figure d) fight

4 I'm beginning to .... that teaching profession isn't as easy as I thought it was.
a) decide b) hear c) realise d) kneel

5 The child I met was so short that I .... down to talk to him.
a) kneeled b) reeled c) kicked d) spent

6 We have chosen Ali to be the .... of our group as he is the best one.
a) waiter b) leader c) pirate d) employer

7 I asked the traffic warden رجل المرور to give me .... to the post office.
a) infections b) destinations c) directions d) taxis

8 Communications companies shouldn't .... anyone to obtain يتحصل على personal information about their customers.
a) let b) make c) allow d) prevent

9 I'd like you to write a few notes while the lecture is still .... in my mind.
a) burned b) fresh c) different d) dead

10 I couldn't swim in the sea as the waves were too high and it was ....
a) safe b) attractive c) interesting d) dangerous

11 A sailor is someone who works .... the navy.
a) for b) as c) against d) out

12 I spoke in a very low .... with my mother as my father was asleep.
a) cry b) shout c) noise d) voice

13 It was a pity that nearly all the passengers were .... when the ambulance arrived.
a) alive b) survived c) dead d) death

14 When the minister arrived at our school, some students were carrying .... and waving with them.
a) flats b) flags c) clothes d) signals

15 The wind was blowing hard against the .... and drove the ship so fast that we couldn't control it.
a) sailor b) masts c) sails d) sales

Advanced & Open

General Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Let's strengthen our knowledge.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He was exhausted as he had a lot of ....
a) application b) communication c) job d) position

2 The explorers .... their way through the jungle.
a) packed b) broke c) hacked d) spaded

3 Everyone should .... their children up when they go to school.
a) smarten b) lighten c) frighten d) shorten

4 I don't mind giving a lot of money to a good ....
a) reason b) pause c) result d) cause

5 The atmosphere in the room was .... There were shouts and arguments.
a) electricity b) electrical c) electric d) electrician

6 A bandage is necessary to .... the flow of blood from the wound.
a) check b) chalk c) treat d) cure

7 Once I'd found the missing letter, everything .... into place.
a) checked b) licked c) clapped d) clicked

8 My wife gave the police a full .... of the robbery and the robbers.
a) count b) account c) describe d) prescription

9 This winter, the weather has been really ....
a) frightful b) frightened c) fright d) frighten

10 The atmosphere in our office is very .... and easy. We are all good friends.
a) occupied b) electric c) free d) busy

11 My son likes healthy food and so he always .... the cream of the milk before drinking it.
a) scans b) skims c) scams d) unloads

12 The .... showed that the baby was in the normal position.
a) scan b) scam c) skim d) download

13 Critics dismissed the speech as a political .... for winning support.
a) gadget b) machine c) advice d) device

14 The player said that he was not a football .... as he made mistakes just like anyone else.
a) application b) technology c) machine d) business

15 It's important for the intelligence to build up a .... of professional spies abroad.
a) connection b) business c) device d) network

16 The weather report says it .... hot all day.

a) will be b) is going c) is d) is being

17 Look out! The girl is going to fall from the balcony. This means that the girl .... from the balcony.

a) falls b) has fallen c) fell d) is about to fall

18 The boy is sharpening his pencil, he .... his homework.

a) is writing b) will write

c) writes d) is going to write

19 This museum will be 100 years old next month. This is a/an ....

a) intention b) future fact c) arrangement d) future plan

20 It was predicted that he .... his neighbours with their problems.

a) will help b) was helping c) was going to help d) would help

21 I .... my friends at the club tomorrow. We've made lots of calls.

a) will see b) am going to see c) am seeing d) see

22 Oh dear, it's already 6 o'clock. We .... late.

a) are being b) would be c) are going to be d) must be

23 Lots of lightning and thunder doesn't necessarily mean it ....

a) is going to rain b) will rain c) rains d) is raining

24 Being clever, she .... high marks in the exams.

a) will get b) is going to get c) is getting d) gets

25 The company is making losses. It .... soon.

a) will close b) closes

c) is closing d) is going to close

26 We think that in the future all shopping .... on the internet.

a) will be doing b) will be done c) will have done d) will do

27 **A:** .... to the zoo this week? **B:** OK, it is a good idea.

a) Might we go b) Are we going

c) Are we going to go d) Shall we go

28 We must hurry. The train .... and we will miss it.

a) is leaves b) leaves c) is about to leave d) going to leave

29 At 10 o'clock tomorrow, my brother .... the match on TV.

a) will be watching b) watches

c) going to watch d) would watch

30 It's 10 o'clock now and my brother .... the match on TV.

a) will be watching b) is watching

c) going to watch d) would watch



Al-Adwaa Test



Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 Eating a lot of sweets is a major cause of tooth decay. The antonyms of the word "major" are .... and ....

a) minor b) leading c) warming d) secondary e) adequate

2 Children should be prevented from using the internet ....

a) everyday b) every-day c) every day d) dairy e) daily

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3 The email looked like it came from my bank, but it was an example of ....

a) antivirus b) phishing c) locking d) uploading

4 The email says I have won a prize, but I don't believe it. I think it's a ....

a) scam b) click c) link d) change

5 Upload your .... details. Include your name, address and phone number in the space provided.

a) personnel b) personal c) personality d) personally

6 My schedule is quite .... I could arrange to meet with you any day next week.

a) stuck b) sticky c) flexible d) rubbery

7 The new modern .... are enabling more people to work from home.

a) internet b) hacks c) contacts d) communications

8 The police are searching for them as they entered the country ....

a) legality b) illegally c) lawfully d) easily

9 Don't come late please, the train .... at 5.

a) leaves b) is leaving c) will leave d) is going to leave

10 I've booked two seats for the new play. My family and I .... it in the theatre.

a) are watching b) will watch c) shall watch d) watch

11 The boys are collecting some dry branches. They .... a fire.

a) make b) are making
c) are going to make d) will make

12 Watch out or you .... into the hole.

a) will fall b) are falling c) fall d) are going to fall

13 Hassan has decided that he .... Omra in Mecca next month.

a) will perform b) is performing
c) is going to perform d) will be performing

14 I don't think I .... able to finish this research on time.

a) am going to be
b) would be
c) am being
d) will be

15 I am having dinner with my colleagues tomorrow. We .... at my house at noon.

a) will be met
b) will have met
c) are meeting
d) meet

16 My daughter .... a doctor in 57357 Hospital when she finishes university. That's her plan.

a) is being
b) is going to be
c) will be
d) will have been

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Poverty, lack of education, the absence of religious values, growing amounts of firearms and migratory flows from rural areas, bad company and bad upbringing are causes behind an alarming increase in crime and criminality. As a matter of fact, poverty plays a very important role in criminality. The bad economic situation increases social imbalance and crime rate.

A hungry man is an angry man. The unemployed are inclined to commit crimes such as robberies and murders. Flows from rural to urban areas have, to a great extent, made the authorities unable to meet the needs of the newly-arrived people.

One of the measures to decrease crime is education. Education should be planned correctly. Creation of chances of work in workshops, factories and on farms are healthy measures against crimes. Non-governmental organisations and the private sector can provide means of earning honest living and this can do a lot to decrease violence and crime. Besides, bad upbringing and bad company are responsible for the spread of crimes. Evil company corrupts good manners. A man is known by the company he keeps. Here, parents must take due care of their children so that they may not mix with wicked people who trick them to deviate from the right path.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The most suitable title to the passage can be "....................".

a) Lack of education
b) Religious Values
c) Man's enemies
d) Poverty

18 The unemployed commit crimes such as ....

a) robberies
b) murders
c) thefts
d) all the mentioned

19 The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....

a) children
b) good
c) parents
d) wicked people

20 The word "decrease" can be replaced by ....

a) increase
b) reduce
c) quality
d) raise

21 Rural areas are places in ....

a) cities b) countries c) the countryside d) continents

22 Bad company means ....

a) a man is known by the company he keeps
b) a company of firearms
c) a company that does not provide job
d) bad friends or companions

23 "A hungry man is an angry man". This shows that ....

a) when a man is angry, he is hungry.
b) hunger is the same as anger.
c) hunger is the cause of misery and anger
d) hunger is a blessing.

24 "A man is known by the company he keeps." This refers to the fact ....

a) you cannot live without friends
b) you can make friends with others
c) a bad person builds up a circle of good friends
d) the circle of friends shows a man's character

25 Translate into English:

- تعتبر القراءة من الوسائل الرئيسية والأساسية لنهضة مختلف الشعوب والحضارات؛ ذلك لأنها ترتبط ارتباطا وثيقا بتناقل المعارف والعلوم بين مختلف الأفراد.

....

....

26 Translate into Arabic:

Poverty and unemployment are time bombs. Unless we exert efforts to uproot them, we will suffer a lot.

....

....

27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

What the world would be like without means of communication.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Unit 6

Learning from literature



Objectives

- Reading : A biography on Stevenson; A poem, *The Gardener*
- Writing : A short review of a poem; A book review
- Listening : A conversation about Robert Louis Stevenson
- Speaking : Polite requests
- Language : Verbs + infinitive or -ing form
- Life Skills : Communication; Critical Thinking




Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

currant row (n)	صف من العنب/الزبيب
dig (v)	يحفر
gravel (n)	حصى
literature (n)	الأدب
hay (n)*	قش/تبن
novel (n)	رواية
plot (n)	قطعة أرض زراعية
poem (n)	قصيدة
poet (n)	شاعر
poetry (n)	شعر

* Fortunately, my cat fell on a pile of hay.

Vocabulary on Reading

adventure (n)	مغامرة
case (n)	حالة/قضية
form (n)	شكل
full-time (adj) (adv)	دوام كامل
gardener (n)	جنايني
improve (v) – d	يحسن
kidnapped (adj)	مختطَف
lawyer (n)	محامٍ
line (n)	سطر/خط
lock (v) – ed	يغلق/يحبس
pirate (n)	قرصان
piracy (n)	القرصنة
popular (adj)	محبوب
rhyme (n) (v) – d	قافية الشعر/يتناغم
rhythm (n)	الإيقاع
serious (adj)	جاد/خطير
suppose (v) – d	يفترض
tools (n)	أدوات بسيطة
treasure (n)	كنز
warm (adj)	دافئ
wish (v) – ed	يتمنى

Vocabulary on Listening

biography (n)	السيرة الذاتية	issue (n)	قضية
choice (n)	اختيار	romantic (adj)	رومانسى
consider (v) – ed	يعتبر/يضع فى الاعتبار	publish (v) – ed	ينشر
discuss (v) – ed	يناقش	sailing (n)	إبحار
discussion (n)	مناقشة	Scottish (n) (adj)	إسكتلندى الجنسية
each other	بعضهم البعض	unwell (adj)	مريض/معتل الصحة
helpful (adj)	مفيد		

Workbook Vocabulary

call (v) – ed	يسمى/يدعى	favour (n)	معروف/جميل
compare (v) – d	يقارن	manager (n)	مدير
joy (n)	فرح	sentence (n)	جملة

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

(be) best known for	معروفة كـ	put ... away	يرتب
a piece of writing	قطعة مكتوبة	a variety of forms	مجموعة متنوعة من الأشكال
do a job	يقوم بعمل/ بوظيفة	do a favour	يقوم بعمل معروف
follow rules	يتبع القواعد	from different times	من أوقات مختلفة
do something for	يفعل شيئًا من أجل	get away from	يبتعد عن
keep the gravel walk	يلزم الطريق المفروش بالحصى لكى لا تطأ قدماه النباتات	go for me	يذهب من أجلى
were made into films	حولت إلى أفلام	different from	مختلف عن

make a film	ينتج فيلمًا	form of	شكل من
arranged in	مرتب/منظم فى	kind of	نوع من
compare to	يقارن بين	learn about	يعلم ... عن
a piece of	قطعة من	sail from ... to ...	يبحر من ... إلى ...
bring ... to	يُحضر ... إلى ...	for a while	لفترة من الوقت
hear about	يسمع عن		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
venture*	يغامر	adventure adventurer	مغامرة مغامر	adventurous	جرىء/متهور
------------------------		biography biographer	سيرة حياة شخص كاتب سيرة	biographical	متعلق بسيرة شخص
joy	يمرح	joy	مرح/فرح	joyful	فرحان/مسرور/مفرح
kidnap	يخطف	kidnapping kidnapper	اختطاف/خطف خاطف	kidnapped	مختطف
------------------------		law lawyer	قانون محامٍ	lawful	قانونى/مشروع
------------------------		literature	الأدب	literate literary	متعلم أدبى
popularise	ينشر/يروج/ينتشر	popularity	انتشار/شعبية	popular	شائع/شعبى/متداول
------------------------		seriousness	خطورة	serious	خطير/عنيف
suppose	يفترض/يظن	supposition	افتراض/ظن	supposed	مفروض/افتراضى/مزعوم
treasure	يعز/يبجل	treasure treasurer treasury	كنز أمين صندوق وزارة المالية	------------------------	
warm	يدفأ/يسخن	warmer warmth warming	سخان/أداة تدفئة دفء/حميمية تسخين/إحماء	warm	دافئ/ودى/حميم

* - I like adventures.
- I used to be an adventurer when I was young.
- My actions seemed to be adventurous.

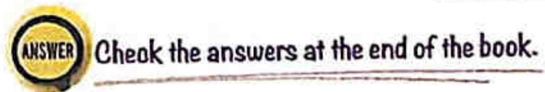
The synonyms of the word "warm" are ___.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
far	بعيد	remote/distant	near/close قريب
improve	يحسن/يطور	enhance/develop	decline/damage يتدهور
joy	فرح	charm/delight	sadness/sorrow حزن
popular	محبوب	favoured/beloved	unpopular/disliked غير محبوب
serious	خطير	dangerous/severe/tough	safe/facile/calm آمن
strange	غريب	unfamiliar/deviating	familiar/common/conventional مألوف/شائع/تقليدي
successful	ناجح	fruitful/favourable/ profitable	unsuccessful/losing/hopeless غير ناجح
warm	دافئ	heated/hot	cold/freezing بارد
wish	يأمل	desire/aspire	spurn/reject يأبى/ينبذ

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. On the beach, the children are always busy .... in the sand.
   a) picking b) dragging c) sailing d) digging
2. You have to consult a .... He also has to be with you in court to defend you.
   a) lawyer b) doctor c) poet d) gardener
3. I like reading about the history and .... of El-Sadat.
   a) autobiography b) autography c) biography d) geography
4. Pollution is one of the most .... problems that face the whole world.
   a) illegal b) serious c) lawful d) warm
5. Watching .... films is one of my hobbies.
   a) adventurer b) adventurous c) adventuring d) adventure



Reading Text

What kind of books do you enjoy reading? Why?



Robert Louis Stevenson was born in Scotland in 1850 and died(1) 44 years later in Samoa, a small island(2) in the South Pacific. He was not always well(3) because the weather in Edinburgh was too cold for him. When he was a child, he couldn't always go to school. He studied to become a lawyer(4) at Edinburgh University, but he always wanted to write. At the age of 21, he decided to become a full-time(5) writer.

(1) مات
(2) جزيرة
(3) بصحة جيدة
(4) محامٍ
(5) دوام كامل
(6) أدفأ
(7) فترة من الوقت
(8) قراصنة

He often travelled to warmer(6) places to try to improve his health. For a while(7) he lived in France and this was where he met his wife, Fanny. She was from the United States, so Stevenson also travelled to America with her.

Although he is best known for his novels, like *Kidnapped* and *Strange Case of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde*, Stevenson also wrote many poems and travel books. His first successful novel was *Treasure Island* – an adventure story about pirates(8). His books are still very popular today and many of them have been made into films.

Why do you think Stevenson travelled to warmer places?

Reading Text

How do you think children with no parents were treated in the past?

The Gardener



The gardener[1] does not love to talk,
He makes me keep the gravel[2] walk;
And when he puts his tools[3] away,
He locks[4] the door and takes the key.

Away behind the currant row[5],
Where no one else but cook may go,
Far in the plots[6], I see him dig[7],
Old and serious[8], brown and big.

He digs the flowers, green, red, and blue,
Nor wishes to be spoken to.
He digs the flowers and cuts the hay[9],
And never seems to want to play.

(1) الجنايني/البستاني
(2) الحصى
(3) أدوات
(4) يغلق
(5) صف من العنب (الزبيب)
(6) قطع أرض زراعية
(7) يحفر
(8) جاد
(9) القش



Listening Text



Teacher : This week we're studying the Scottish writer(1), Robert Louis Stevenson, in particular(2) his poetry not his novels. Have any of you heard(3) about him or read any of his works?

Nesma : Didn't he write *Treasure Island*? I tried reading it last year, but it was a bit boring(4), so I decided to watch the film instead.

Teacher : Did you like it?

Nesma : Yes, it was really good. I love adventure(5) films and I enjoy reading adventure stories too. I just found *Treasure Island* a bit difficult.

Teacher : Well it was written a long time ago. He was born in 1850 and *Treasure Island* was published(6) in 1881. And Waafa, have you read any of his books?

Wafaa : I don't think so. I prefer reading romantic(7) stories and poems.

Teacher : Well, Stevenson wrote poems too. In fact, he wrote all kinds of things. He began writing stories when he was a child and unwell(8). Unfortunately, Stevenson was often very ill and he finished writing *Treasure Island* while he was ill in bed. He continued to write more books, including a collection(9) of poems called *A Child's Garden of Verses* and he also travelled a lot to get away(10) from the cold Scottish weather.

(1) كاتب
(2) بشكل خاص
(3) سمع
(4) ممل
(5) مغامرة
(6) نشر
(7) رومانسي
(8) مريض
(9) مجموعة
(10) يبتعد

Nesma : Where did he go?

Teacher : As a young man, he went to Europe, France and Switzerland mainly. In fact, his first book was about his travels[11] in France. He and his family loved sailing[12] and they wanted to sail from America, where they were living, to the South Pacific. The family chose to build a house in Samoa and the Stevenson family lived there until he died in 1894.

Now for this week's lesson, I want you to choose a story or poem by Stevenson and bring[13] it to class to discuss[14]. Then...

(11) رحلات
(12) إبحار
(13) يُحضر
(14) يناقش

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Ali is a daydreamer. He always .... actions and imagines scenarios.

a) thinks b) drags c) supposes d) digs

2 I .... to meet you one day in a final match. It will be amazing, my brother.

a) 'd better b) wish c) hate d) could

3 I am a .... person. Everyone asks me for help once they see me.

a) helping b) help c) helpful d) helpless

4 This player is .... I saw him play for the national team versus Poland.

a) Scottish b) Scotland c) Polish d) Poland

5 You must .... the rules of the place if you want you to stay here for long.

a) seek b) run c) create d) follow

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use



FOCUS on Vocabulary

Can you tell us the meaning of "dig"?

currant row صف من العنب (الزبيب)
- a line of plants that have small fruits

dig يحفر
- break up and move earth with your hands or a machine

gravel حصى
- small stones

hay قش / تبن
- dried grass that people use to feed animals

keep the gravel walk يلزم الطريق المفروش بالحصى لكى لا تطأ قدماه النباتات
- stay on the path through the garden

novel رواية
- a long story

plot قطعة أرض زراعية
- small pieces of land for growing things on

poem قصيدة
- a piece of writing often arranged in lines that rhyme

poet شاعر
- someone who writes poems

poetry شعر
- a form of writing

Notes on Vocabulary

Knowing how to use the word is extremely important.

1

publish
ينشـر (كتابـًا/مجلة/صحيفة) – يمكـن أن يبنى للمجهول

- She was only 19 when her first novel was published.

come out
يَصْـدُر (كتابًا/مجلة/صحيفة) – لا يمكن أن يبنى للمجهول

- She was only 19 when her first novel came out.

2

biography
سيرة ذاتية لشخص يكتبها شخص آخر

- Famous people have different biographies written about them.

autobiography
سيرة ذاتية لشخص يكتبها الشخص نفسه

- He published his autobiography last year.

3

(be) born in + (مكان/سنة)
ولد فى ...

- My sister was born in Alexandria.
- Ali was born in 2002.

(be) born on + (تاريخ/يوم)
ولد فى ...

- His mother was born on 21st August 1979.

(be) born into ...
ولد فى عائلة

- Nora was born into a good family.

(be) born with + (disease)
مولود (بمرض)

- Madonna was born with a small hole in her heart.

4

at the age of = aged فى سن

- At the age of 30, Ali got married for the second time.

in the age of فى عصر

- They inherited this house which had been built in the age of their grandfather.

5

success
نجاح

- The company achieved a great success under the new leadership.

(be) a success
يمثل نجاحًا/ناجح

- Taking part in the competition was a success.

successful ناجح

- You should work properly to be successful.

kidnap	يخطف شخصًا (طمعًا فى فدية)	▸ Two businessmen were kidnapped by terrorists.
hijack	يختطف (عربة/طائرة)	▸ The plane was hijacked by two armed men on a flight from London to Cairo.
capture	يأسر/يقبض على	▸ The town was captured by enemy troops after 10 days fighting. ▸ She was captured at the airport as she had illegal drugs.
arrest	يلقى القبض على	▸ He was arrested for shoplifting سرقة المعروضات yesterday.
imprison	يسجن	▸ They were imprisoned for possession of drugs.

6

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

▸ His first successful novel was *Treasure Island* – an adventure story about pirates.

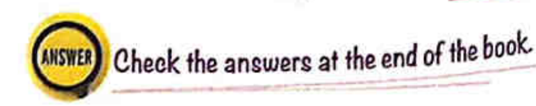
لاحظ هنا أن كلمة adventure ليست صفة ولكنها اسم وأضيفت إلى كلمة story لأن المقصود بالمعنى هو قصة عن مغامرة.

▸ He is one of the most adventurous travellers in the world.

أما الصفة من adventure فهى كلمة adventurous وتستخدم لوصف شخص يريد فعل شىء خطير أو يجرب شيئًا جديدًا.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I am a teacher. Teaching is my .... job and I really like it.
   a) part-time b) full-time c) temporary d) short-term
2. I left the cinema before the end of the film as it was ....
   a) interesting b) bored c) excited d) boring
3. A lot of novels and stories are .... every year by many great writers.
   a) published b) come out c) spread d) punished
4. I want to talk to you about many topics, not something in ....
   a) public b) particular c) general d) private





Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

After we memorised the new vocabulary and read the notes, we need to practise. I think number one will be (a), do you agree?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1. The writer's last novel which was published last year was ....
   a) a success b) succeed c) successful d) a & c

مركز منية النصر - الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

2. Ahmed Shawqi was a great ....
   a) poet b) poem c) poetry d) verse
3. The lion ran away from the zoo, but the police could .... it.
   a) arrest b) kidnap c) capture d) hijack
4. *"Al-Ayam"* is considered a good .... about Taha Hussein. He wrote well about his own life.
   a) biography b) play c) poem d) autobiography
5. .... the age of modern technology, we can live an easier life.
   a) At b) By c) In d) With
6. I like to read English .... with all its wonderful novels, plays and poems.
   a) agriculture b) literature c) culture d) structure
7. 'Far in plots, I see him dig'. The word 'plots' can be replaced by "................".

إدارة شرق المحلة التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

   a) plans b) hay c) fields d) dreams
8. Mohammad Salah's success is really a .... of hard work not a chance.
   a) cause b) case c) reason d) treasure
9. A/An .... is a piece of land that is surrounded by water.
   a) ocean b) forest c) jungle d) island
10. Our English teacher has always been very .... with his students and colleagues.
    a) popular b) populate c) liked d) fame
11. He usually wears suits. It is really .... to see him in jeans.
    a) familiar b) common c) foreign d) strange
12. .... you won the prize and took the car, what would you do?
    a) Unless b) Think c) Suppose d) Suspect

بني سلطان الثانوية - المنيا ٢٠٢٢

13. The path isn't well paved. It is full of ....
    a) barrel b) funnel c) saddle d) gravel
14. He has the ability to write the whole story in ...., he is a talented writer.
    a) rhyme b) rhythm c) verse d) plot
15. She is not a good pianist as she has no sense of ....
    a) rhyme b) rhythm c) verse d) plot

16 I always .... any matter with my parents before making a decision.

a) regret b) remove c) discuss d) improve

17 .... are very bad as they live on attacking and robbing ships at sea.

a) Parrots b) Robbers c) Burglars d) Pirates

18 The government is trying hard to solve the .... of homeless children everywhere.

a) issue b) tissue c) form d) itch

19 The members of the gang were trying to look for a hidden .... in the island.

a) pressure b) treason c) treason d) treasure

20 Hanan left home to travel, hoping for excitement and ....

a) adventure b) furniture c) creature d) structure

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21 Could you do me a .... and go to the market for me? إدارة جنوب الجيزة ٢٠٢٢

a) favourite b) favour c) duty d) help

22 Don't walk on the plants in the garden. You must ....

a) make the gravels walk b) keep the gravel walk
c) make the gravel walk d) keep the gravels walk

23 Ali had to wait for .... when he went to apply for the job.

a) a while b) while c) whole d) hall

24 Literature comes in a .... of forms poetry, novels, etc. مدرسة السعيدية الجيزة ٢٠٢٢

a) various b) different c) many d) variety

25 The writer became well-known because his novel was ....

a) success b) a success c) a successful d) successfully

26 The poor child was born .... a disability that prevents him from walking.

a) into b) on c) in d) with

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

27 The writer's new book .... last week.

a) published b) came out c) was published
d) was come out e) spread

28 The story written by the great writer was .... into a film.

a) turned b) made c) taken d) placed e) put

29 We can walk if it's not far. The synonyms of the word "far" are .... and ....

a) remote b) near c) close d) safe e) distant

30 I could hear strange voices outside the room. The antonyms of the word "strange" are .... and ....

a) familiar b) conventional c) unpopular d) deviating e) safe





Lessons 1 & 2

B Language

1 Verbs followed by (-ing form)

admit (to)	يعترف بـ	involve	يشمل/يتضمن	recommend	يوصى بـ
avoid	يتجنب	resist	يقاوم	fancy	يتخيل
suggest	يقترح	risk	يخاطر	delay	يؤجل
practise	يمارس	postpone	يؤجل	prevent	يمنع
consider	يعتبر	enjoy	يستمتع بـ	escape	يهرب
mind	يمانع	finish	ينهي	forgive	يسامح
imagine	يتخيل	deny	ينكر	miss	يفتقد
understand	يفهم	go	يذهب	dislike	يكره

- The criminal admitted to committing the crime.
- He enjoys meeting people from other cultures.
- My brother suggested spending the weekend on the beach.

2 Verbs followed by (to + inf.)

decide	يقرر	wish	يتمنى	arrange	يرتب
agree	يوافق	swear	يقسم	offer	يعرض
promise	يعد	determine	يصمم	need	يحتاج
hope	يأمل	fail	يفشل	prepare	يجهز/يعد
plan	يخطط	want	يريد	attempt	يحاول
manage	يتمكن	expect	يتوقع	prove	يثبت
refuse	يرفض	threaten	يهدد	neglect	يهمل
seem	يبدو	intend	ينوى	can't afford	لا يتحمل

- I have decided to play a match with my friends.
- He asked me for some money, but I refused to give him any.
- Do you want to come with me to the party?
- Ali proved to be the cleverest in the class.

Make your own mind maps to memorise these verbs and expressions.
You can draw circles on a sheet of paper and write each group in a different circle with different colours.

3 Verbs followed by (object + to + inf.)

advise ينصح	permit يسمح	tell يخبر
recommend يوصى بـ	instruct يعلم/يخبر	order يأمر
expect يتوقع	ask يطلب	warn يحذر
encourage يشجع	persuade يقنع	teach يعلم
force يجبر	allow يسمح	remind يذكر
invite يدعو	promise يوعد	request يطلب

- He advised me to study and revise regularly.
- I managed to persuade my wife not to travel alone.
- Parents encourage their children to be good citizens.



إذا لم يأت بعد هذه الأفعال مفعول يأتى بعدها (v-ing)

advise – recommend – encourage – allow – permit + (v-ing)

- He doesn't allow smoking in his office.
- I often encourage playing football on Fridays.
- The company recommends using their buses instead of private ones.

4 Expressions followed by (-ing form)

feel like يرغب فى	It's no good ليس من الصالح
It's worth يستحق	It's no use لا فائدة من
can't help لا يستطيع أن يساعد	(have) difficulty (in) لديه صعوبة فى
can't stand لا يستطيع تحمل	(be) busy مشغول
can't stop لا يستطيع التوقف	(have) fun يمرح
What/How about ...? ما رأيك؟ (اقتراح)	

- This film is worth watching more than once.
- My mother has difficulty (in) climbing up and down the stairs.
- It's no use eating fast foods.

5 Expressions followed by (to + v-ing)

look forward to	يتطلع إلى	own up to	يعترف بـ
object to	يعترض على	(be) used to	معتاد على
contribute to	يساهم فى	(be) accustomed to	معتاد على
in addition to	بالإضافة إلى	take to	يعتاد على
(be) exposed to	معرض لـ	owing to	بسبب
admit to	يعترف بـ	prefer(v-ing) to v-ing	يفضل ... عن

- We look forward to living in a remote island.
- All people object to using horns late at night.

Check Point 4 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The old man denied .... my money last week.
   a) steal b) to steal c) stealing d) to stealing
2. My son admitted .... her time before the exam.
   a) to waste b) wasting c) of wasting d) b & c
3. She decided .... a new dress before attending the party.
   a) to buy b) buying c) to buying d) buy
4. Ahmed avoided .... his old friends at the wedding yesterday.
   a) meet b) to meet c) to meeting d) meeting
5. My father advised .... early to keep healthy.
   a) to sleep b) sleeping c) to sleeping d) sleep



Check the answers at the end of the book.



Language Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Practice is the best way to apply what we have learnt.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The manager arranged .... some of the workers to know their problems.
a) to meet b) meeting c) to meeting d) meet

2 Please, don't bother me. I'm busy .... my homework.
a) to do b) did c) doing d) will join

3 Menna hopes .... the Faculty of Medicine one day.
a) to join b) joining c) joins d) to joining

4 Do you mind .... some photos of your wedding on Facebook?
a) sharing b) to share c) in sharing d) to sharing

5 My father taught us .... people with respect.
a) treats b) to treat c) treat d) treating

6 The teacher threatened the lazy student .... him out of the class.
a) sends b) sending c) to send d) sent

7 He .... to using the mobile phone at school. إدارة القناطر - القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
a) agreed b) refused c) objected d) enjoyed

8 Do you fancy .... on a day trip to Alexandria next week?
a) to come b) come c) to coming d) coming

9 They couldn't afford .... the house at that high price.
a) buy b) to buy c) buying d) to buying

10 I dislike .... away from my family for a long time.
a) to be b) to being c) be d) being

11 He suggested .... to the club. مدرسة السعيدية - الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
a) goes b) went c) going d) to go

12 We're planning .... to Europe for our holiday next year.
a) flying b) to fly c) fly d) to flying

13 Mona offered .... us do the washing up.
a) to be helped b) helping c) to help d) help

14 Our national team is expected .... in the next World Cup finals. إدارة غرب الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
a) play b) playing c) to play d) to playing

15 Hala agreed .... to her younger sister.
a) apologise b) to apologise c) apologising d) to apologising

16 I can't stand .... around doing nothing.

a) sit b) sitting c) to sit d) to sitting

17 My son was very annoyed. He seemed .... bad marks in the exams.

a) to get b) getting c) to getting d) get

18 My wife was busy .... the flat, so she didn't go out with us.

a) cleaning b) with cleaning c) cleans d) to clean

19 I couldn't talk to him. He couldn't stop .... his homework.

a) do b) to do c) doing d) in doing

20 When you finish .... the report, send it to the manager.

a) writing b) write c) to write d) to writing

21 The salesman .... taking the money from me. He said he hadn't taken it.

a) wanted b) refused c) denied d) admitted

22 Owing .... hard, my daughter could join the university she liked.

a) study b) to study c) to studying d) studying

23 We had fun .... many historic places during the summer holiday.

a) visiting b) to visit c) to visiting d) visit

24 It is a holiday tomorrow, so we could go .... together.

a) sailing b) to sailing c) to sail d) sail

25 My father allowed me .... my friend using his own phone.

a) phoning b) phone c) to phone d) to phoning

26 My father always allows .... our friends using his phone.

a) phoning b) to phone c) to phoning d) phone

27 It's no good .... to revise your vocabulary at the last minute.

a) trying b) try c) to try d) tried

28 We look forward .... Egypt a better place. إدارة الخليفة والمقطم - القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) to see b) to seeing c) seeing d) to being seen

29 Which of the following sentences is INCORRECT?

a) My father suggested leaving his new job.
b) I don't really enjoy going to the opera.
c) She accused her neighbour of stealing her money.
d) He objected to visit that frightening place again.

30 Which of the following sentences is CORRECT?

a) I promised helping her with her problems.
b) She agreed bringing her new laptop with her.
c) I recommend taking the train to Aswan.
d) I don't mind to watch this movie again.

Test Yourself





Unit 6
Lessons 1 & 2

Remembering   Understanding   Applying   Analysing   Evaluating   Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 All the prisoners must be .... in for the night and taken to court then.
a) looked   b) lucked   c) blocked   d) locked

2 The writer's new collection of short stories .... last week.
a) was come out   b) came out   c) published   d) came in

3 The diplomat was .... and two million dollars was demanded for his release أطلاق سراحه.
a) hijacked   b) captured   c) kidnapped   d) arrested

4 My father died .... 66 as a result of heart disease.
a) aged   b) when he was   c) at the age of   d) all mentioned

5 Some animals usually .... holes in the sand to bury their eggs.
a) drill   b) dig   c) look   d) research

6 .... row is a line of plants that have small fruits.
a) Currant   b) Current   c) Bad   d) Fruitless

7 .... is long grass that has been cut and dried, often used as food for cattle.
a) Case   b) Plot   c) Gravel   d) Hay

8 My husband always buys red roses for me on my birthday. How ....!
a) romantic   b) horrible   c) funny   d) comic

9 I am looking forward .... a well-known club when I grow up.
a) to join   b) for joining   c) join   d) to joining

10 Many people in our town objected .... the new bridge.
a) to build   b) to building   c) build   d) building

11 I couldn't neglect .... his invitation to his wedding party.
a) accept   b) to accepting   c) accepting   d) to accept

12 What a hot day! I feel like .... for a swim in the sea in Alexandria.
a) go   b) going   c) to go   d) to going

13 Thousands of people .... looking at the sculptures تماثيل. They are wonderful!
a) decide   b) promise   c) dislike   d) enjoy

14 Children deserve .... well respected and treated.
a) being   b) to be   c) having been   d) be

15 Do you think we will be able to afford .... on holiday this year?
a) to go   b) going   c) to going   d) go

16 I think this nice story is worth .... by all students.
a) to read   b) to reading   c) reading   d) read

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I have always wished that I knew more about the moon, so I did a project about it at school. The moon orbits the earth every 27.3 days, so that is about once a month. However, we only see one side of it. That is because it takes about the same time for the moon to spin once as it takes for the moon to orbit the earth. The side which we do not see is called "the dark side of the moon". However, like the earth, both sides of the moon are illuminated by the sun at different times, so it is not dark all the time. We just can't see it.

Like the sun, the moon rises in the east and sets in the west. A full moon is what we see as a circle. This occurs when the moon is on the opposite side of the earth to the sun. The average[1] temperature on the moon is 107 degrees centigrade[2] in the day and –153 degrees centigrade at night. If the astronauts who visited the moon hadn't worn spacesuits, they would have died. The moon's gravity makes our seas rise and fall twice a day. Gravity on the moon is only 17% as strong as it is on earth. That means you can jump really high there!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the moon's effect on earth?
   - **a)** The size of mountains.
   - **b)** Its gravity.
   - **c)** Its weather.
   - **d)** Seas.
2. Why is one side of the moon called "the dark side"?
   - **a)** It is always dark there.
   - **b)** It is never dark there.
   - **c)** We can't see it from earth.
   - **d)** You can't see it from a spaceship.
3. What do you think would be most dangerous about visiting the moon?
   - **a)** The temperature.
   - **b)** The gravity.
   - **c)** The height of the mountains.
   - **d)** The fact that it is dark.
4. What kind of text is this?
   - **a)** A newspaper article.
   - **b)** A novel.
   - **c)** A diary extract.
   - **d)** A poem.



(1) متوسط/معدل (2) مئوية

5 What does the underlined word "That" refer to?

a) Your ability to jump.
b) The moon's gravity is weaker than the earth's.
c) People are weak on the moon.
d) The earth's gravity is weaker than the moon's.

6 What do you think spacesuits are?

a) Special clothes for astronauts.
b) Special helmets and clothes for pilots.
c) Special shoes and clothes for astronomers.
d) Special hats, trousers and T-shirts.

7 What is the average temperature on the moon?

a) 153-107
b) 701-513
c) 107-153
d) 531-170

8 Another word for "spin" is to ....

a) involve
b) evolve
c) remove
d) revolve

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Man knows well that life is a mixture[1] of success and failure[2], hope and despair[3], happiness and sadness, but in all cases, it should be filled with achievements.

....

....

2. Increasing production and improving its quality is the only way to increase our national income which helps to raise the standard of living[4].

....

....

3. Every child has the right to lead a happy life[5] and the government must do everything possible to make sure that children survive[6] and develop.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- تلعب النوادى الرياضية[٧] دورًا هامًا فى المجتمع، كما تقدم خدمات[٨] عظيمة للشباب، وتساعدهم على قضاء أوقات الفراغ بشكل مفيد.

....

....

٢- تبذل الحكومة قصارى جهدها لحل معظم مشاكل المجتمع ورفع مستوى المعيشة لكل المواطنين.

....

....

٣- من الضرورى أن تجيد تحدث وكتابة اللغة الإنجليزية لكى تحصل على فرصة[9] عمل جيدة فهى اللغة الأكثر تحدثًا فى العالم الآن.

....

....

How to translate

١- الضمير المضاف إلى فعل يكون ضمير مفعول me – him – her – us – them.

٢- الضمير المضاف إلى اسم يكون صفة ملكية my – his – her – our – your – their.

٣- حرف الـ (س) وكلمة (سوف) تدل على المستقبل will + inf.

سيقوم صديقى بزيارتى الأسبوع القادم.

My friend will visit me next week.

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

1. Your favourite writer.
2. A short review of a poem you read.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

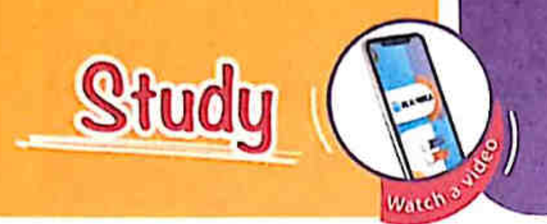
....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. – I used the right structure. – I used a topic sentence. – I wrote the conclusion. – I used the right punctuation.

(1) مزيج
(2) الفشل
(3) اليأس
(4) مستوى المعيشة
(5) يعيش حياة سعيدة
(6) يحيا
(7) sports
(8) services
(9) opportunity





Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

activities (n)	أنشطة	fair (adj)	عادل
candlelight (n)	ضوء الشمعة	*grown-up (adj) (n)	راشد/بالغ
clear (adj)	صافٍ/واضح	hate (v) – d	يكره
describe (v) – d	يصف	hop (v) – ped	يقفز على قدم واحدة
differently (adv)	باختلاف	season (n)	فصل فى السنة/موسم
dress (v) – ed (n)	يرتدى ملابس/فستان	situation (n)	موقف
especially (adv)	خصوصًا	subject (n)	موضوع
exciting (adj)	مثير	verse (n)	بيت (فى قصيدة)

* I'm grown-up now, and I'm aware of what's going on.

Workbook Vocabulary

brief (adj) (v) – ed	مختصر/يختصر	repeat (v) – ed	يكرر
broken (adj)	مكسور	summary (n)	ملخص
narrate (v) – d	يروى (قصة - حكاية)	toy (n)	لعبة أطفال

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

at night	ليلًا	at different times	فى أوقات مختلفة
by day	نهارًا	stay in	يبقى فى
go past	يمر أمام	the other way	على العكس تمامًا
look for	يبحث عن	write about	يكتب عن
in brief	باختصار	in my opinion	فى رأيى

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
break يكسر/يتوقف عن العمل	break كسر/تعطل breakage كسر/حطام	breakable قابل للكسر/هش broken مكسور/متعطل
clear يوضح/يظهر	clarity وضوح/اتضاح	clear واضح/ظاهر
describe* يصف	description وصف	describable يمكن وصفه descriptive تصويرى/وصفى
dress يلبس/يداوى/ينظف الجرح	dress ملابس dresser من يساعد الممثلين على ارتداء ملابسهم dressing ضمادة/خليط من السوائل يضاف إلى الطعام	dressed لابس dressy متأنق/أنيق
narrate يروى	narration سرد/أخبار narrator راوٍ/قصاص	narrative روائى/قصصى
repeat يعيد/يكرر	repeat حدث مكرر repetition تكرار/إعادة	repeated متكرر/معاد repeatable يمكن تكراره
situate يعين/يضع فى مركز معين	situation حالة/موقع	situated قائم/واقع فى مكان معين
specialise يتخصص	special شىء خاص specialist أخصائى/خبير specialty اختصاص/تخصص	special خاص/مخصوص specialised متخصص

* - I can describe the suspect for you.
- I have the description of the suspect.
- The suspect is easily describable.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
brief	مختصر	short/compressed	long/lengthy طويل
broken	مكسور	crushed/damaged	intact/complete سليم/كامل
clear	صافٍ/واضح	apparent/bright/cloudless	ambiguous/cloudy/foggy غامض/غير واضح/غير صافٍ
describe	يوصف	explain/detail	conceal/hide يخفى
especially	خصوصاً	particularly/specifically/exceptionally	generally/normally/commonly عموماً

exciting مثير	inspiring/astonishing	boring/dull ممل
fair عادل	unprejudiced/impartial	prejudiced/partial متحيز
grown-up كبير/بالغ	adult/mature	immature/teenager/ adolescent غير ناضج/مراهق
narrate يروي	describe/detail	conceal/hide/suppress يخفي
repeat يكرر	duplicate/do again	stop/cease يوقف

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The sky is .... today. I think it is going to be a nice day.
   a) clean **b)** clear **c)** cloudy **d)** muddy
2. I asked my teacher to .... what he said as I didn't get it.
   a) hide **b)** delete **c)** break **d)** brief
3. The woman gave the police the .... of the man who took her in.
   a) solution **b)** situation **c)** deduction **d)** description
4. The hotel offers a variety of leisure ....
   a) subjects **b)** toys **c)** activities **d)** problems
5. My wife .... the children while I got their breakfast ready.
   a) put on **b)** cleared **c)** wore **d)** dressed



Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)

Bed in Summer

In winter I get up at night
And dress[1] by yellow candlelight[2].
In summer quite the other way,
I have to go to bed by day[3].
I have to go to bed and see
The birds still hopping[4] on the tree,
Or hear the grown-up[5] people's feet
Still going past me in the street.
And does it not seem hard to you,
When all the sky is clear[6] and blue,
And I should like so much to play,
To have to go to bed by day?



(1) يلبس
(2) على ضوء الشموع
(3) نهاراً
(4) يقفز على قدم واحدة
(5) بالغ
(6) صافٍ

Reading Text (2)

Khaled, 4:04 PM

The words Stevenson has used very clearly describe[1] the situations[2] he's writing about and I really like that. I also think the poem's subject[3] is very interesting because everyone feels differently in different seasons[4]. In my opinion, poets should write about everyday life. However, I think the second verse[5] is too long and its rhythm[6] is too slow.

Hamid, 5:36 PM

I love the language in the poem, especially the way Stevenson describes the light at different times of day. I also think the second verse is great because the rhymes[7] in it are so clever. However, in my opinion, the poem's subject is quite[8] boring because going to bed and getting up aren't very interesting activities[9]. I think poets should write about more exciting things.

(1) يصف
(2) مواقف
(3) موضوع
(4) فصول السنة
(5) بيت شعر
(6) الوزن الشعرى
(7) القوافى
(8) إلى حد ما
(9) أنشطة

Reading Text (3)

Which poems or poets do you like? Why?



My favourite poem is *Bed in Summer* because it describes how I felt[1] when I was young. In summer I had to go to bed when it was light[2] and I hated[3] it. Like the author[4] I wanted to be outside playing and I didn't think it was fair[5] that everyone else was outside having fun.

It's a good length[6] for a poem, only three verses and I like the fact that the words rhyme[7]. I don't like poems which don't rhyme. The first two lines rhyme, 'night' and 'light' and then the next two lines rhyme, 'way' and 'day'. This makes it easy to say and easy to remember[8]! Robert Louis Stevenson was ill when he was a child and stayed in bed a lot. That's why I think he wrote this poem.

(1) شعرت
(2) مُضىء
(3) كَرِهت
(4) مؤلف
(5) عادل
(6) طول
(7) يتطابق فى القافية
(8) يتذكر

Why does she think Stevenson wrote this poem?

Vocabulary in Use



Notes on Vocabulary

1	**quiet**	هادئ	We'll have to be quiet so as not to wake the baby.
	quite	إلى حد ما/تماماً	The food in the canteen is usually quite good.
	quit	يغادر (يترك العمل)	He quit his job after an argument with a colleague.
2	**lay – laid – laid**	يضع/تضع البيض/يجهز	He laid his hand on my shoulder. The flies lay their eggs on uncovered food. John was laying on the table for lunch.
	lie – lay – lain	ينام/يرقد	Don't lie in the sun for too long as it is very harmful.
	lie – lied – lied	يكذب	She lied to her father about her exam results.

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- I love the language in the poem, especially the way Stevenson describes the light at different times of day.

لاحظ أن كلمة especially من الظروف التي تستخدم لوصف جملة كاملة أو فقرة.

- This makes it easy to say.

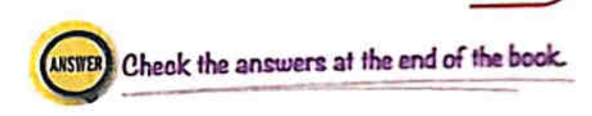
جاء بعد make مفعول وبعد المفعول جاءت الصفة بمعنى يجعل.

- He makes me sleep early.

أما هنا فجاء بعد make مفعول وبعد المفعول جاء المصدر بمعنى يجبر.

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It is wrong for children to go to bed .... day.
   a) on b) by c) in d) for
2. He injured his leg and now he can .... walk without a stick.
   a) hard b) hardly c) harden d) hardy
3. I was angry when I discovered that my son .... to me about his exam results.
   a) laid b) lay c) lied d) laid
4. I could answer the test in half an hour as it was .... easy.
   a) quite b) quiet c) quit d) quietly
5. Taha Hussein is the .... of *Al-Ayam*.
   a) poet b) publisher c) author d) playwright





- I love reading novels, ... Robert Stevenson's ones.
  a) specially b) promptly
  c) especially d) incredibly



Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

After we memorised the new vocabulary and read the notes, we need to practise. I think number one will be (a), do you agree?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 It isn't .... to give him a better mark although we have the same number of mistakes.
a) fare b) fur c) verse d) fair

2 Poems which have a few numbers of .... are my favourite.
a) poets b) verses c) rhythm d) subjects

3 My grandmother was the .... of most of the stories that I know.
a) narrated b) narration c) narrative d) narrator

4 My grandmother was the one who .... most of the stories that I know.
a) narrated b) narration c) narrative d) narrator

5 Children mustn't use the cooker unless .... are there to help them.
a) grown-up b) grown-ups c) kids d) toddlers

6 I asked my son to .... upstairs and get my phone. I was in a hurry.
a) walk b) stay c) hop d) hope

7 He lost all his money and he is in a difficult .... at the moment.
a) situation b) position c) station d) activity

8 Before the new lesson, I always give my students a brief .... of the last one.
a) summer b) situation c) summary d) sum

9 We had to have dinner by .... as there was a power-cut.
a) torch b) wax c) lamp d) candlelight

10 The word "woken" .... with "broken".
a) hops b) plots c) narrates d) rhymes

11 .... is a regular repeated pattern of sounds in music, speech, etc.
a) Verse b) Poem c) Rhyme d) Rhythm

12 After the baby had slept, his mother .... him gently down on his bed.
a) lied b) lay c) laid d) lain

13 I like to have some .... in my house to keep the children amused.
a) toys b) trays c) machines d) keys

14 The students are very worried. The exam .... difficult for them.
a) seems b) appears c) looks d) all mentioned

15 Most Egyptians speak in .... English. They can't speak it perfectly.

a) native b) perfect c) broken d) smashed

16 The club arranges social and cultural .... for its members.

a) activities b) subjects c) toys d) problems

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 I asked my wife to tell me what has happened .... not in detail.

a) in particular b) on brief c) in brief d) on show

18 I was ill in bed and I was eager to be outside .... with my friends.

a) play b) played c) plays d) playing

19 Look .... my key while you're in the street. I think I have lost it there.

a) at b) up c) for d) like

20 Three boys .... past us on mountain bikes last week.

a) went b) made c) did d) took

21 We want to do things .... as we don't want to do the same things.

a) differently b) different c) difference d) differences

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

22 I never liked long walks, especially in winter. The synonyms of the word "especially" are .... and ....

a) generally b) interestingly c) specifically d) particularly e) amazingly

23 I've got some very exciting news for you. The antonyms of the word "exciting" are .... and ....

a) dull b) boring c) interesting d) fair e) clear

24 We stopped by Ali's house for a brief visit. The synonyms of the word "brief" are .... and ....

a) long b) short c) compressed d) lengthy e) mature

25 The main character narrates the story. The synonyms of the word "narrates" are .... and ....

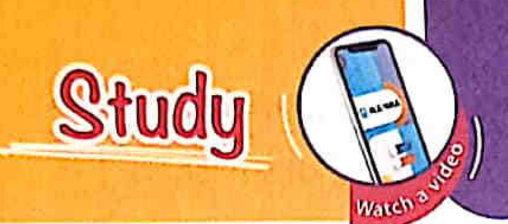
a) dresses b) repeats c) hops d) describes e) details

26 The building of the new tower has been ....

a) a successful b) successful c) success d) a success e) succeed

27 My father died .... 66.

a) in the age of b) for the age of c) aged d) at the age of e) ageing



Lessons 3 & 4



B Language

Important Notes



١) أفعال تتبع بـ ing- أو to + inf. دون تغير في المعنى:

like يحب	love يحب
hate يكره	prefer يفضل
start يبدأ	begin يبدأ
continue يستمر	intend ينوى

- I like to play football. = I like playing football.
- He started to study English. = He started studying English.



لاحظ

١- عند وجود كلمة would أو اختصارها 'd قبل الأفعال السابقة لابد أن يأتى بعدها (to + inf.).

- I'd like/hate/prefer/love to go to school early.

٢- إذا كانت would تعبر عن زمن الماضى.

'd (like - prefer - love ...) to have + P.P.

- It's a pity we didn't visit Ali. I'd like to have seen him again.

٣-استخدامات 'd rather - 'd prefer

prefer	rather
① **'d prefer + to + inf.** - I'd prefer to have lunch.	① **'d rather + inf.** - I'd rather have lunch.
② **prefer + v-ing + to + v-ing** - I prefer studying to sleeping.	② **'d rather + inf. + than + inf.** - I'd rather study than sleep.
③ **'d prefer + to + inf. + rather than + inf.** - I'd prefer to study rather than sleep.	③ **'d rather + فاعل + past simple/past perfect** - I'd rather he played well.

٢) أفعال تتبع بـ ing أو (to + inf.) مع اختلاف فى المعنى:

remember (to + inf.)	يتذكر ثم يقوم بالفعل (الفعل لم يتم بعد).
remember + (v-ing)	يتذكر أنه قام بالفعل (الفعل تم فى الماضى).

- I remembered to phone her. (I remembered first, then I phoned her.)
- I remembered phoning her. (I phoned her and now I remember that.)

forget (to + inf.)	ينسى أن يقوم بالفعل (الفعل لم يتم).
forget + (v-ing)	قام بالفعل ونسى أنه قام به (الفعل تم).

- I forgot to go to that meeting. (I forgot so I didn't go.)
- I forgot going to that meeting. (I went to the meeting, but I forgot the action.)

regret (to + inf.)	يأسف لفعل شىء سوف يقوم به لأنه مضطر لذلك (الفعل لم يتم بعد).
regret + (v-ing)	يندم على فعل قام به (الفعل تم).

- I regret to say that your interview was not successful. (I am sorry to say that.)
- I really regret being so rude to my friend.

(The action here took place in the past and the regretting takes place now.)

stop (to + inf.)	يتوقف لكى يقوم بالفعل.
stop + (v-ing)	يتوقف عن القيام بالفعل.

- When he saw the restaurant, he stopped to eat. (the reason why he stopped)
- He decided to stop smoking as he felt so ill. (He no longer smokes.)

go on + (to + inf.)	ينتقل من عمل لآخر
go on + (v-ing)	يستمر (فى القيام بنفس العمل)

- After he finished his maths homework, he went on to study English.
- My son went on studying English all night.

suggest/recommend + v-ing

= suggest/recommend that + فاعل آخر + inf. or (should + inf.)

- I suggest going for a swim. = I suggest that we (should) go for a swim.

see – hear + مفعول + inf. رؤية واستماع الحدث كله

see – hear + مفعول + v-ing رؤية واستماع جزء من الحدث

- I heard them talk about global warming. It was a very useful programme.
- I saw my friend Ali playing but I left before the end of the match.

the first – the second – the third – the last ... + n. + to + inf.

- Hana was the last person to come to the party.

ask – decide – know – remember – forget – explain – understand

- هذه الأفعال إذا جاء بعدها أداة استفهام نستخدم .to + inf

- We asked him how to get to the station.
- I haven't decided where to go yet.

make + مفعول + inf. = cause + مفعول + to + inf. يجعل ...

make + مفعول + inf. = force + مفعول + to + inf. يجعل/يجبر ...

let + مفعول + inf. = allow + مفعول + to + inf. يسمح ...

- My teacher always makes me study. (= causes me to study)
- I only did it as they made me do it. (= forced me to do it)
- He let me go out with my friends. (allowed me to go out)

- ولكن في حالة المبنى للمجهول نستخدم بعدها .to + inf

- He was made to come early.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Nader suggested that his sister .... with him.

a) going b) go

c) has been d) goes

2 I'd like .... with my family. This makes me happy.

a) to go b) going

c) to going d) go

3 You must stop .... your time if you want to get high marks.

a) to waste b) waste

c) to wasting d) wasting

4 I always have fun .... comic films.

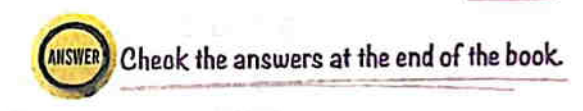
a) watch b) watching

c) to watch d) to watching

5 Noha would rather .... lunch in the club.

a) to have b) have

c) having d) to having





Language Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

I think number one is (a), isn't it?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I love .... during summer. I swim nearly every day.
a) swimming b) to swimming c) swim d) swam

2 I hate .... everything to the last time.
a) to leave b) leave c) to leaving d) leaves

3 I soon began .... what the problems were.
a) to understanding b) understand
c) understands d) to understand

4 My wife prefers cooking at home .... fast food.
a) to buy b) than buy c) to buying d) than buying

5 Would you like .... out for a meal tonight?
a) going b) to going c) go d) to go

6 Could you explain how .... this math problem?
a) answering b) to answer c) to answering d) answer

7 Noha would prefer .... lunch in the club.
a) to have b) have c) having d) to having

8 You should avoid .... friends with such bad people. إدارة نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٢
a) to making b) makes c) making d) to make

9 I'll never forget .... down in the middle of the road. It was terrible.
a) breaking b) to break c) to breaking d) broke

10 The police never allow .... in this area. مدرسة الكويت - إدارة المنتزه - الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
a) parking b) park c) to park d) to be parked

11 What a terrible thing! You forgot .... the important documents.
a) signing b) sign c) to signing d) to sign

12 The postmen have stopped .... letters to the houses in our area. We are in the age of the internet now.
a) deliver b) to deliver c) to delivering d) delivering

13 Jehan regrets .... her time before yesterday's exams. She failed to answer some questions. إدارة شرق المحلة - الغربية ٢٠٢٢
a) had wasted b) wasting c) to waste d) will waste

14 I suggest that she .... to the hospital tomorrow. مدرسة أسوان الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢
a) is going b) will go c) go d) goes

15 I was driving along the motorway when I saw a restaurant, so I stopped .... something.
a) eat b) to eat c) to eating d) eating

16 I forgot .... my medicine, so I took it twice.

a) taking b) to take c) take d) to taking

17 Marwa recommended .... that new restaurant. She said it was good.

a) trying b) to try c) to trying d) that try

18 I regretted .... my mother with the housework yesterday as she was really ill.

a) helping b) to help c) not to help d) not helping

19 I like listening to Dr El-Baz .... on television. I can't miss a word of his speech.

a) talking b) to talk c) to talking d) talk

20 On my first day at school, I remember .... into the classroom and seeing my teacher.

a) to go b) went c) to going d) going

21 My father usually stops .... us some sweets on his way back home.

a) to get b) getting c) to getting d) get

22 Please, remind your brother .... me the book he has borrowed.

a) getting b) to get c) to getting d) get

23 I don't always recommend .... on your own.

a) study b) studying c) to study d) to studying

24 The police forced the criminal .... the truth about the theft.

a) tell b) telling c) to telling d) to tell

25 I consider .... Luxor and Aswan my best memory ever.

a) visit b) to visit c) to visiting d) visiting

26 I remember .... the Queen in London. It was a wonderful day.

a) meet b) to meet c) meeting d) to meeting

27 My brother decided not to eat a lot again to lose weight. This means he ....

a) stopped eating a lot b) enjoyed eating a lot

c) regretted to eat a lot d) forgot eating a lot

28 I have a memory that I had met Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria before. This means that ....

a) I went on to meet Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria.

b) I regret meeting Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria.

c) I forgot to meet Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria.

d) I remember meeting Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria.

29 I remembered to do my homework before going to bed. This means that ....

a) I remembered doing my homework

b) I remember that I do my homework

c) first I remembered, then I did my homework

d) first I did my homework, then I remembered

30 I forgot to bring my mobile. This means that ....

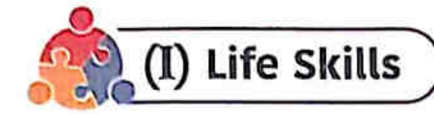
a) my mobile is with me now b) my mobile isn't with me now

c) my mobile will be with me d) I didn't buy a mobile



General Skills

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.



(I) Life Skills

Making polite requests: تقديم طلبات مهذبة:

1. Can you help me + inf./to + inf.?
2. Could you possibly help me ...?
3. I wonder if you could help me ...?
4. Do you think you could help me ...?
5. Could you do me a favour, please?
6. Could you do something for me, please?

Reply to requests:

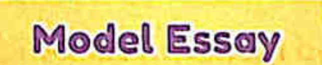
1. Yes, sure I can do this.
2. Yes, of course.
3. Certainly. What is it?

1. No, I'm afraid I can't.
2. Sorry I can't do this.
3. I'm sorry I'm busy now.



(II) Writing

- **When you write a review of anything especially a poem, you should follow the following steps:**
  1. What is the poem you are going to write about?
  2. Who is the author of the poem?
  3. Do you think the rhyming is good or not?
  4. What is the main idea of the poem and why the author wrote this?



Model Essay

A review of a poem

I really like reading poetry and I like short poems in general. My favourite poem is *Bed in Summer* by the poet Robert Stevenson. I like it because it describes how I felt when I was young. In summer, I had to go to bed when it was light and I hated it. Like the author, I wanted to be outside playing and I didn't think it was fair that everyone else was outside having fun. It's a good length for a poem, only three verses and I like the fact that the words rhyme. I don't like poems which don't rhyme. The first two lines rhyme, 'night' and 'light' and then the next two lines rhyme, 'way' and 'day'. This makes it easy to say and easy to remember! Robert Louis Stevenson was ill when he was a child and stayed in bed a lot. That's why I think he wrote this poem.

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The footballer had to .... after his injury in his right leg in the match.
a) hope b) crawl c) run d) hop

2 I like outdoor .... such as hiking or climbing.
a) activities b) subjects c) toys d) briefs

3 At the party, her jewels sparkled in the ....
a) situation b) description c) candlelight d) toy

4 Menna was playing happily with her new .... when her father came.
a) toy b) subject c) activity d) situation

5 My father .... the money on the table to persuade the man to sell his car.
a) lay b) laid c) lied d) led

6 Her mother told her to .... herself in her nicest clothes.
a) dress b) clear c) describe d) narrate

7 Families, ... those with young children, benefit from the health programme.
a) nearly b) especially c) excitingly d) fairly

8 It was impossible to see everything during our .... visit to Paris.
a) bare b) pure c) brave d) brief

9 I really try to forget .... this very bad man who made me annoyed.
a) meeting b) to meeting c) to meet d) meet

10 I regret .... to the cinema. It was not a very good film.
a) go b) to go c) going d) to going

11 I still remember .... to Alexandria as a reward for my success.
a) take b) taking c) to be taken d) being taken

12 My sister hates .... by air. She gets nervous every time she does.
a) to flying b) to fly c) flies d) flew

13 Part of this exam includes .... in Arabic.
a) write b) to write c) written d) writing

14 I advised my children .... their time before the exam.
a) to waste b) wasting c) not to waste d) not wasting

15 I always hear the birds .... in the mornings.

a) to sing b) to singing c) singing d) sings

16 I don't .... meeting you here. What a lovely surprise!

a) expect b) fancy c) predict d) stand

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The World Cup is one of the biggest sporting events in the world. This great football championship features[1] players from thirty-two nations. The World Cup was created in 1928, and the first World Cup games were held[2] in Uruguay in 1930. It was an all-male contest at that time. The first women's World Cup was held in China in 1991. Surprisingly, football is not quite as popular in the United States as basketball, or baseball, but it is still popular around the world.

People all over the continents often get up in the middle of the night or skip work to watch their nation's team compete. People in the winning nations celebrate their teams' victories. When Pelé played for Brazil in 1970, his team won the World Cup. This team is considered one of the greatest. Pelé is regarded as the best football player by many fans. Brazil has won a total of five World Cups, far more than any other nation. Another matchless player was Maradona who was regarded as one of the greatest footballers who played the game, and was awarded FIFA Best Player of the 20th Century, but he was not a good idol like Pelé. He was known for drug addiction and he was arrested in Argentina for cocaine possession.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 From the context of the passage, which is the best antonym for "victories"?

a) Wins. b) Happiness.
c) Results. d) Defeats.

2 Who is Pelé?

a) A cocaine addict.
b) A Brazilian team.
c) An average football player.
d) One of the greatest football players.

3 In America, basketball and baseball are .... football.

a) more popular than b) less popular than
c) as popular as d) more dangerous than

(1) يضم (2) اقيم

4 People all over the world admired Maradona despite ....

a) his bad behaviour
b) leading his team to the World Cup
c) his matchless talent
d) scoring so many goals

5 The FIFA Best Player award goes to players who ....

a) addict drugs
b) have achievements in the game
c) take part in the World Cup
d) deal in drugs

6 People leaving work to watch their nation's team matches are .... the game.

a) crazy about
b) hardly interested in
c) have no affection for
d) might be arrested

7 The first women's World Cup was held in ....

a) Africa
b) Uruguay
c) Asia
d) South America

8 In the last paragraph, the pronoun "He" refers to ....

a) Pelé
b) Maradona
c) the good idol
d) local icon

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. The Suez Canal is the greatest waterway[1] between the east and the west. It has become an important source[2] of national income.

....

....

2. Reading literature[3] introduces us to other people's experiences[4] and cultures[5] which are very different from our own.

....

....

3. We should all work hard in all fields so that Egypt will become one of the most developed and prosperous[6] countries.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- للصحافة دور كبير فى تنمية الوعى[٧] العام تجاه القضايا[٨] الاقتصادية والاجتماعية. فهى تعرض المشاكل وتقدم[٩] لها الحلول.

....

....

٢- تتمتع مصر بالكثير من المواقع الأثرية القديمة والمنتجعات(١٠) السياحية الحديثة، وكل هذا يجعلها من أعظم الدول الجاذبة للسياح.

....

....

٣- إن الأزمات التى تتعرض لها مصر فى بعض الأوقات تبين لنا أن المصريين أسرة واحدة ويتحلون بروح التعاون والود فيما بينهم.

....

....

How to translate

١- الضمائر المستترة فى اللغة العربية يجب إظهارها فى اللغة الإنجليزية.

عليك أن تعمل بجد .You should work hard

٢- يتم ترجمة v. to have لأكثر من معنى (لـ - لدى - يتمتع - يمتلك - يتناول .....).

لمصر مكانة عظيمة بين دول العالم.

- Egypt has a great position among the world countries.

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

1. A novel you have read and enjoyed.
2. The importance of teaching literature at schools.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. .... | I used the right structure. .... | I used a topic sentence. .... | I wrote the conclusion. .... | I used the right punctuation. ....

(1) ممر مائى
(2) مصدر
(3) الأدب
(4) خبرات حياتية
(5) ثقافات
(6) مزدهر
(7) awareness
(8) issues
(9) introduce
(10) resorts

Study

Chapter 6 (Treasure Island)

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

advantage	ميزة
alive	على قيد الحياة
cannon	مدفع
careful	حذر/حريص
contact	يتصل بـ
cry	يبكى
enter	يدخل
fort	حصن
including	بما فيها/متضمنا
medicines	أدوية
move	يتحرك
prevent	يحول دون/يمنع
sinking	غارقًا
slowly	ببطء
supplies	إمدادات
weapons	أسلحة
well defended	محصن
wind	رياح

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

a good servant to him	خادم جيد له
at all	على الإطلاق
at the other side	فى الجانب الآخر
at the same time	فى الوقت نفسه
big enough for	كبيرة بما يكفى لـ
easy for them to	سهل بالنسبة لهم أن
far from	بعيد عن
fell down	سقط
fire his gun	يطلق النار من سلاحه
from a different direction	من اتجاه مختلف
impossible for them	مستحيل بالنسبة لهم
made us all move	جعلنا جميعًا نتحرك
move towards	يتحرك نحو
on the island	على الجزيرة
one side of the boat	جانب واحد من القارب
prevent the boat from	يمنع القارب من
stay on	يبقى على
take it down	ينزله للأسفل
to get there first	للوصول إلى هناك أولًا
to put food and more weapons into	لوضع الطعام والمزيد من الأسلحة فى
walk a little way	يمشى قليلًا
we're finished	انتهينا



Novel Exercises

Chapter (6)

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Stories about .... often include a search for buried treasure.
a) applies b) supplies c) pirates d) flags

2 Our brave soldiers .... our country against any attacks.
a) define b) reflect c) surround d) defend

3 Can you please .... the manager and tell him about our needs?
a) communicate b) connect c) react d) contact

4 He was arrested as he had .... his gun at some people in the street.
a) fired b) fined c) framed d) found

5 The enemies couldn't get into the town as it was ....
a) well organised b) well arranged c) well defended d) well dressed

6 There were 30 students in the class, ... only ten girls.
a) containing b) including c) enclosing d) consisting

7 They had a/an .... over their enemies as they had guns but their enemies didn't.
a) disadvantage b) demerit c) con d) advantage

8 The clever pilot could .... the plane from damaging.
a) predict b) move c) prevent d) remove

9 A .... is a large gun with wheels.
a) canoe b) cannon c) pistol d) rocket

10 The thief .... the woman and tried to rob her.
a) attacked b) attached c) attracted d) attended

11 When we .... the station, the train was about to leave.
a) got b) arrived c) went d) reached

12 All world countries should stand against the spread of mass destructive ....
a) supplies b) forts c) weapons d) medicines

13 The .... was hard to get through as there were hundreds of soldiers around it.
a) fort b) forth c) entrance d) soft

14 They decided to .... this old fence and put up a strong wall.
a) take in b) take down c) take up d) take to

15 It was .... to phone them as there was no signal in my place.
a) possible b) probable c) impolite d) impossible

Unit 6

Advanced & Open

General Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Newspapers have .... up some facts about the famous actor's private life.
a) plug b) dug c) drill d) done

2 Have you got any .... on opening a new school in Cairo?
a) literature b) culture c) tradition d) chaos

3 He was arrested for .... against the government.
a) protecting b) making c) stealing d) plotting

4 Can you think of a .... for "peace"?
a) rhyme b) rhythm c) plot d) verse

5 I think of German as having .... hair but a lot of them are dark.
a) fur b) dark c) fair d) bold

6 The husband wrote his valentine's message to his wife in ....
a) rhythm b) verse c) cold d) reverse

7 ....! I will give you a lift to your workplace.
a) Get off b) Take in c) Run into d) Hop in

8 Please, ... me off for a while. I want to finish my work.
a) lie b) lay c) drop d) take

9 I am really .... with the idea of moving to Cairo for a year.
a) toying b) playing c) making d) doing

10 What have you got .... up for the weekend?
a) run b) lined c) plan d) done

11 He .... his entire savings on the project, but he thinks it is hard to make a profit.
a) adventured b) earned c) gained d) owed

12 Please, be .... and get to the point. We do not have much time for further details.
a) shorten up b) brief c) shut up d) abbreviate

13 People with .... skin are more likely to get a sunburn.
a) dark b) black c) fine d) fair

14 They came to .... the driveway today to make it available for walking.
a) discover b) gravel c) ease d) prove

15 I don't go to movies or watch much television, so my knowledge of .... culture is somewhat limited.
a) similar b) infamous c) popular d) unknown

16 Which sentence of the following is CORRECT?
a) I prefer eating fish than meat.
b) I'd rather to study in the early morning.
c) I regret not to visit my uncle yesterday.
d) I remember friends criticising my style of clothes.

17 **A:** Why .... to Alexandria together? **B:** It's a good idea.
a) go b) to go c) not go d) going

18 No one can stop her .... what she chooses.
a) buy b) to buy c) buying d) to buying

19 My mobile needn't .... It works well.
a) repair b) repairing c) be repaired d) repaired

20 Let's .... noise because the baby is asleep.
a) make b) making c) not to make d) not make

21 He was made .... to the police.
a) lie b) lying c) to lie d) to lying

22 I heard Dr. Magdy Yacoub talking on the radio. This means that ....
a) I heard nothing he said b) I heard everything he didn't say
c) I heard everything he said d) I heard part of what he said

23 My friend seems .... weight.
a) losing b) to losing c) to be lost d) to have lost

24 Try using this medicine. This means that ....
a) I know this medicine must work
b) I know this medicine won't work
c) I hope this medicine won't work
d) I want you to use it and see what will happen

25 Why do you go on .... us the same stories again and again?
a) to tell b) telling c) to telling d) tell

26 I .... sleep late to keep fit.
a) would rather to not b) wouldn't rather
c) would rather don't d) would rather not

27 You keep .... about your ex-fiancée. No wonder she left you.
a) talk b) talking c) to talk d) to talking

28 I want to work abroad, but not if it means .... to live without friends. I don't like that.
a) having b) to have c) to having d) have

29 Ali was alarmed .... the new chairman of the company the following week.
a) to see b) see c) to seeing d) seeing

30 The little boy was clinging to his mother's leg .... that he wanted a candy bar.
a) screams b) screaming c) to scream d) to screaming



Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 I wanted to improve my French to travel to Paris. The synonyms of the word "improve" are .... and ....
a) decline b) describe c) enhance d) dig e) develop

2 Young people's style of life is very different .... ours.
a) with b) for c) about d) to e) from

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3 I tried to .... on my good foot while holding onto my friend Ramy.
a) hope b) crawl c) run d) hop

4 We call a book about the life of someone a/an ....
a) research b) biography c) novel d) autobiography

5 The cause of the accident is a big Mercedes that was coming the .... way.
a) another b) other c) others d) another's

6 The driver of the car was lucky to stay .... after the terrible accident.
a) alive b) a life c) survive d) dead

7 Every parent .... to see their children successful in their lives.
a) locks b) wishes c) becomes d) supposes

8 I found these CDs very .... when I was learning English.
a) helpful b) cooperative c) particular d) hopeful

9 Hesham likes .... a rest in the afternoon as he feels tired.
a) to take b) take c) took d) taken

10 Hany and his sister enjoy .... tennis after school every day.
a) playing b) to play c) to playing d) play

11 Amina admitted not .... how to answer the test.
a) to be known b) known c) to know d) knowing

12 I saw them .... angrily, so I left the room to let them complete their argument.
a) talking b) talk c) to talk d) to talking

13 It is very nice here, but I really miss .... my friends.
a) saw b) to see c) seeing d) seen

14 I regret .... you that Nabil will not join the team. I know you want him with us.
a) telling b) to tell c) for telling d) to be told

15 They expect thousands of people .... Sapporo for the Snow Festival.

a) to visit b) to visiting c) visiting d) visit

16 He encourages his students .... regularly for the exams.

a) revise b) to revise c) revising d) to revising

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It was just before bedtime. Sally was reading a hair-raising ghost story. She loved the excitement of scaring herself before a good night's sleep. She was reading the story halfway when she suddenly heard the squeaky opening of her front door. She was surprised by the scary sound. She felt something was wrong. Sally gently pushed the warm blanket aside and slowly crept out of her bed. She walked down the stairs. Even her very own footsteps on the creaky stairs scared her. She heard the soft sound of footsteps in the kitchen and she stopped to listen. It was surely a ghost from the past since everyone she knew was in their beds fast asleep at this hour.

The darkness also frightened her, but she wanted to find out what was making the strange noise. She turned to enter the kitchen where the noise seemed to be coming. Suddenly, she walked right into a dark figure. <u>The dark figure</u> stretched out a hand and quickly turned on the bright kitchen lights. It was Sally's elder brother Ken! He couldn't help laughing at poor Sally. He had gone out late that night with his friends and had just returned home. Sally felt silly to have thought it was a ghost. She had a good laugh too.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The strange sound, the creaky stairs, the darkness and the dark figure .... Sally.

a) screamed b) scared

c) cared d) entertained

18 Sally .... reading ghost stories.

a) enjoyed b) did not enjoy

c) feared d) avoided

19 Who does the underlined phrase "<u>The dark figure</u>" refer to?

a) The strange noise. b) Sally.

c) Sally's brother. d) The ghost.

20 Sally realised it was not a ghost when her brother ....

a) stretched his hand b) turned on the lights

c) walked down the steps d) laughed

21 "He couldn't help laughing" couldn't help means ....

a) couldn't stop
b) couldn't breathe
c) couldn't give a hand
d) couldn't sleep

22 Ken .... when Sally started reading the story.

a) had been outside
b) had been on the roof
c) hadn't entered the house
d) had hidden under the bed

23 Sally thought it was a ghost because all of her family ....

a) were asleep
b) got out
c) went shopping
d) didn't like tricks

24 The best title to this passage is "................".

a) Reading is Important
b) Scary Tales Effects
c) Ken is Coward
d) Sally's Brother's Trick

25 **Translate into English:**

- إن مستقبل الحياة على الأرض يتوقف على نجاح الجهود التى نبذلها للتخلص من التلوث البيئى. فالتلوث بكل أنواعه يؤدى إلى دمار شديد للبيئة.

....

....

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

Scientific researchers have proved that the early experiences of childhood have an effect on man's personality.

....

....

27 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

The importance of learning a foreign language.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

continue (v) – d	يستمر	soon (adv)	سريعًا/قريبًا
cruel (adj)	قاسٍ/وحشى	surprisingly (adv)	فجأة/باندهاش
encourage (v) – d	يشجع	swing (n)	أرجوحة
mysterious (adj)	سرى/غامض	action (n)	حركة
old-fashioned (adj)	عتيق/قديم الطراز/موضة قديمة	adventure (n)	مغامرة
password (n)	كلمة السر	character (n)	شخصية
penfriend (n)	صديق مراسلة	fun (n)	متعة
pleasant (adj)	مبهج/سار	mysterious (adj)	غامض
reply (n) (v) – ~~y~~ ied	رد/يرد	real (adj)	حقيقى
roof (n)	سقف	situations (n)	مواقف

Vocabulary on Listening

contain (v) – ed	يحتوى على	print (v) – ed	يطبع
copy (v) – ~~y~~ ied	ينسخ	printing (n)	طباعة
cover (n) (v) – ed	غلاف/يغطى	similarly (adv)	بالمثل
judge (v) – d	يحكم	the Dark Ages	العصور المظلمة
paintings (n)	رسومات	weak (adj)	ضعيف

Workbook Vocabulary

access (v) – ed	يصل إلى
balance (n)	توازن
concern (n)	اهتمام
content (n)	محتوى
digital devices (n)	الأجهزة الرقمية
educational (adj)	تعليمى
essential (adj)	ضرورى/جوهرى
pattern (n)	نمط
physically (adv)	بدنيًا
research (n)	بحث علمى
screen (n)	شاشة
skill (n)	مهارة
solution (n)	حل
well-educated (adj)	متعلم جيدًا

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

keep ... on a computer	يحتفظ ... على الحاسب الآلى
on a ship	على سفينة
recommend ... to ...	يوصى ... لـ ...
arrange for	يرتب لـ
copy ... onto ...	ينقل ... إلى ...
bad for	سيئ لـ
send ... away to	يطرد ... إلى
take a long time to	يأخذ وقتًا طويلًا لـ
with care	بالعناية
details about	تفاصيل عن
full of	مملوء بـ

Reading Text (1)

Communication is easy today. Many people use apps on their smartphones to talk to their friends. When we send a message to a friend, we take it for granted that he or she will reply very soon.

Before the internet, people wrote letters and many people had penfriends. These were people they did not always meet, but people they chose to write to about their lives. The letters sometimes took a long time to arrive, but penfriends were very popular.

An example is Nellie Roberts and Daphne Meech. These two Australian women are now 90 years old. They first decided to write to each other in the 1930s, and are now perhaps the longest two people ever to be penfriends. Nellie Roberts first had penfriends when she was 10, but only one penfriend continued to write to her. Like Nellie, Daphe lived on a farm and the two women enjoyed writing about their lives. As well as letters, they sent each other black and white photos. They did not meet until 1962, 30 years after their first letter.

Nellie still prefers writing letters, and says that she is never going to use technology to communicate.

Surprisingly, there are now many online clubs for penfriends. They encourage people to write letters to penfriends around the world, and they are very successful. Many say that writing letters is relaxing and a warmer way to communicate than with an email or text. You do not need apps, passwords or antivirus software. As Nellie says, 'Just a pen and paper will do'.

Reading Text (2)

Most Helpful Customer Reviews

A fantastic adventure story!

In my opinion, Robert Louis Stevenson's *Kidnapped* is not as great as *Treasure Island* or as exciting as *The Strange Case of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde*, but it is full of action and really fun. I enjoyed it very much. The story happens in 1751 and it begins when seventeen-year-old David Balfour goes to stay with his mysterious uncle in Scotland. His uncle is a cruel man and he tricks David. He arranges for a ship to take David away to America. However, David manages to escape with a friend and that is just the start of their adventures. I recommend this book to everyone who likes adventure stories.

James (UK)

Not the best book for me

As far as I'm concerned, this book is too old-fashioned. The story is interesting and there is a lot of action, but I don't think the characters are very real. David Balfour is a seventeen-year-old boy, but his life is very different from mine. The language is also old-fashioned. I prefer to read more modern books. *Kidnapped* is just not my kind of book.

Peter (Canada)

My favourite book!

Kidnapped has so much action and adventure! This really is my favourite book. David Balfour's uncle tries to send him away to America on a ship, but David escapes and makes friends with a man called Alan Breck. Together they travel through Scotland and face many dangerous and exciting situations. I love all the details about the places they visit. You can really feel like you are in Scotland. I will definitely read this book again.

Tara (Ireland)

Do you think that novels can teach us about life? Why? Why not?

Listening Text



Interviewer : Hello, today I'm talking to Professor Marwan Shabana, a history teacher at the University of Cairo. He's just written a very interesting book about the future of technology. And it's not all good news, is it Professor?

Professor : That's true, although no one knows what will happen in the future, of course!

Interviewer : What are you worried about?

Professor : Well, there was a time in history when very few people wrote about what happened in their lives. We call these the Dark Ages, because we don't know much about this time. I'm worried that we are going to have an information Dark Age in the future.

Interviewer : Why is that?

Professor : Today we use computer technology for almost all our information. We use computers for our writing, photographs, music and films. This is fantastic, of course, but what will happen to it in the future? The technology of today quickly becomes old. I think that we'll lose a lot of material because new technology won't be able to read it.

Interviewer : But we'll copy all the important information onto our new technology, won't we?

Professor : I agree, we will. But history teaches us that there are some things we don't think are important today that will be very important in the future. These are the things I worry that we will lose. People won't think something is important to save, or we will forget the passwords to give us this information.

Interviewer : What can we do about this?

Professor : In my opinion, we need to print more, like we did in the past. Look in a museum and you will see wonderful old paintings, photographs, maps and so on. With care, these will be with us for a long, long time.

Interviewer : So, do you think old technology is better than new technology?

Professor : I'm not so sure about that! Of course, we need new technology, but will the software that we use today be on the computers of tomorrow? We need old technology as well. For example, my father kept all of his letters to my mother before they married. I don't have any of the emails I sent to my wife, because we don't usually keep emails! I think we need to print more information as well as keeping it on a computer. Then we won't have another Dark Age.

Interviewer : It's an interesting idea. Thank you for talking to us.



Workbook Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I don't know what to do, so I am going to ask my uncle for .... advice.
a) an b) some c) a d) any

2 There is always a lot of .... before you can go on a plane.
a) bullying b) security c) malware d) calm

3 I .... the Faculty of Engineering when I grow up; it's my intention.
a) will join b) join
c) am going to join d) am joining

4 Most people take clean water for ...., but not all places have it.
a) granted b) given c) having d) done

5 My cousin spends a lot of time .... photos on the internet.
a) post b) posted c) posting d) posts

6 Your computer .... is very easy to guess: it's 1, 2, 3, 4!
a) app b) software c) virus d) password

7 I want to write .... short story. It looks like fun.
a) no article b) the c) an d) a

8 You will find information about the sports club on the school ....
a) communication b) connection c) noticeboard d) notice

9 Ramy promised .... me to finish my school project.
a) helps b) help c) helping d) to help

10 Before you plant a tree, you'll need to .... a hole.
a) dig b) get c) take d) want

11 The teacher suggested .... to the library to borrow some poetry books.
a) go b) to go c) to going d) going

12 There will soon be the .... for us to all travel in cars without drivers.
a) speed b) technology c) scientist d) model

13 .... poem I read yesterday is really interesting.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article

14 They all have smartphones, so they are all .... to the internet.
a) joined b) communicated c) disconnected d) connected

15 We never allow .... in this school.

a) bully b) bullying c) to bully d) is bullied

16 The email said it was from a bank, but we all knew it was really a ....

a) software b) lock c) scam d) hack

2 Complete the text with the past simple or past continuous form of the verbs in brackets:

Space Tourism

Do you think people will (1)...................... able to go to the moon for a holiday in the future? Some people say "Space Tourism" is (2)...................... to generate a lot of money in the future. The training programme (3)...................... cost over $200.000, so it (4)...................... be available to most people. However, some companies have waiting lists of people who (5)...................... hoping to become astronauts in the next two years. Perhaps your grandchildren (6)...................... take their holidays on Mars!

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets:

1 I don't think that people .... (ever live) on the moon.

2 Aisha decided .... (buy) a travel book.

3 Robert Louis Stevenson always wanted .... (be) a writer.

4 I .... (play) volleyball with my cousins at the weekend. Do you want to play too?

5 The phone is ringing. I .... (answer) it.

6 Look at those clouds! It .... (rain).

7 Do you enjoy .... (read) poems?

8 We didn't understand the recording, so the teacher suggested .... (listen) to it again.

4 Translate into Arabic:

1 Do you think man will live on the moon in the future?

2 Young people are able to share in doing voluntary work in different fields.

5 Translate into English:

١- دائمًا أتذكر أن أغير كلمة السر لهاتفي المحمول كل شهر.

٢- علينا أن نستغل أوقات الفراغ في ممارسة الهوايات المفيدة.

6 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Is screen time good?

Many people like to access information and social media easily. But is it bad for us to spend so much time in front of a screen?

On the one hand computers, tablets and smartphones are useful tools for communicating with friends and family. Young people can use the internet for its educational content, learn important research skills and also see a variety of cultures from around the world.

On the other hand, technology can make young people less physically active. And there are also concerns that the light that comes from digital devices can cause health problems. For example, looking at a screen at night can make it more difficult to sleep. The internet is still quite new, so we do not really know what the long-term effects that using it are going to have on our health.

The internet has also introduced us to new words for problems that people did not have in the past.

Your parents did not have cyberbullying, for example. There have always been scams, but problems such as phishing for personal information and hacking into banks are also quite new.

In the end, the solution is about balance. Technology can help us to develop new skills and it can open up the world. We will almost certainly have more technology in the future, too. We need to learn how to use it carefully for the good of everyone. However, physical activity and regular sleep patterns are essential too. Balance both and we can all live in a healthy, well-educated world.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1 According to the text, people like technology because they can ....
   a) play games   b) find information
   c) take pictures

2 According to the text, technology does not improve ....
   a) communication   b) education
   c) physical exercise

3 People are worried that the light from tablets can cause difficulty in ....
   a) sleeping   b) reading
   c) turning off the screen

4 In the past, there were ....
   a) never any scams
   b) no words for some of today's problems
   c) different words for the same problems

B) Answer the following questions:

5 What is the most positive effect of having access to the internet, in your opinion? Why?

6 What sort of new technology will we have more of in the future?

7 In what ways do you balance using technology with staying active?

7 Write what you would say in the following situations:

1 A friend tells you that all sports are boring. You do not agree.

2 The teacher asks you to begin a presentation about the advantages of the internet.

3 A friend asks you if you can help him/her with a project, but you are busy.

8 Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences:

1 The children were all wearing an uniform.

2 Excuse me, can you give me advices?

3 Is this computer connection to the internet?

4 We have our tickets! We will go to London in the summer!

5 You look thirsty, I am going to get you a drink.

6 One day, I think we are all living in very tall buildings.

7 Robert Louis Stevenson wrote stories and poets.

8 Sorry, I forgot buying bread when I went to the shops.

9 I promise phoning you when I arrive at out cousins' house.

10 I don't suppose could you help me carry this bag?

9 Choose one of the Two topics. Write about (150) words on the topic:

1 Write an email to a friend about a problem or a decision you have to make. Include some information about the situation and ask your friend for advice.

2 Write an email to a friend who has moved to a new town. Include some advice about how to make new friends and arrange a time when you can visit them.



Novel Exercises

Chapters (4-6) SB

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People who suffer from starvation usually need food ....
   a) supplies b) surveys c) reviews d) analysis
2. Our brave army soldiers .... our country against enemies.
   a) offend b) defend c) attack d) fight
3. When did you .... to your office?
   a) stay b) reach c) arrive d) get
4. I usually .... my friends by using my mobile phone.
   a) communicate b) connect c) contact d) control
5. A .... is a heavy metal weapon.
   a) knife b) cannon c) pistol d) gun
6. What are the .... and disadvantages sides of the internet?
   a) advantages b) points c) sides d) demerits
7. My mother .... down to take the little girl into her arms.
   a) broke b) fell c) knelt d) raised
8. I used to depend on myself and do the homework .... my own.
   a) on b) of c) from d) with
9. The young man behaved foolishly, so people believed he was ....
   a) wise b) polite c) active d) crazy
10. Captain Smollett had a .... to save the ship from Silver and his men.
    a) plane b) plan c) plain d) pain
11. Archaeologists try to look for the .... of the pharaohs.
    a) pleasures b) pressures c) treasures d) sessions
12. The referee blew his .... to end the match.
    a) whistle b) fire c) gun d) voice
13. If you have a ...., you should see your doctor.
    a) habit b) disease c) review d) custom
14. I saw a lot of boats near the sea ....
    a) shore b) bank c) valley d) canal
15. We .... our friend Ali because he never tells lies.
    a) disagree b) agree c) trust d) distrust
16. In the morning, I usually see a lot of birds on the .... of trees.
    a) roots b) branches c) seeds d) trunks

17 Children played on the .... and made sandcastles.

a) beach b) bank c) shore d) mud

18 Can I .... the poetry competition, please?

a) take place b) take part c) go d) join

19 At work, the team has a great .... who tells each one what to do.

a) fool b) captain c) leader d) fellow

20 The worker used a .... to make a hole on the ground.

a) saw b) spade c) knife d) hammer

2 Read and fill in the missing word, using the words in the box:

guarded **prevent** **role** **treasures**

The ancient Egyptian civilisation is well-known all over the world. Even today, Egyptian archaeologists are trying to find the ....(1).............. of the Pharaohs. Such important things need to be well ....(2).............. to stop people from taking them. We must ....(3).............. anyone from trying to damage or steal anything related to our great civilisation. It is the ....(4).............. of all of us to protect our wonderful monuments.

3 Answer these questions:

1. Do agree that Flint was an evil man? Why? Why not?
2. Describe the Treasure Island. What does it look like? What is on the island?
3. Was Jim mistaken when he decided to go to the island? Why do you think so?
4. Do you think that Jim is right to trust Ben Gun? Why?/Why not?
5. What do we find out about the character of Silver when he goes onto the island?

4 Choose the correct answer:

1 .... jumped behind a tree. So, Jim decided to walk back towards the beach.

a) A huge animal b) Ben Gun

c) Flint d) John Silver

2 Jim thought that Ben Gun was crazy because ....

a) he wanted to kill him

b) he said he had found the treasure

c) he said he was rich

d) he asked Jim to lend him money

3 What happened when Trelawney stood up with a gun and fired at the pirates?

a) No one was killed.

b) They fired at him and he was injured.

c) They cried and ran away.

d) One of them fell.

4 When Dr Livesy and Hunter reached the island, they walked a little way and then they found a fort which ....

a) had been destroyed before

b) was big enough for about twenty-five people and was very well defended.

c) was not big enough and was very badly defended

d) was small and not defended well

5 Match characters with events:

Characters	Events
1. Jim	a) was left on the island by ship and lived on fish and fruit there.
2. Silver	b) said, "We keep the flag! It will show the pirates that we are not frightened of them!"
3. Ben Gun	c) couldn't trust anything Silver said.
4. Captain Smollett	d) helped Captain Smollett to sail the boat closer to the shore.
5. Dr Livesy	e) is the narrator of Chapter 6.

6 Imagine that you are Jim. Write a diary entry about your time on the island.



Al Adwaa Test



Units 4, 5 & 6

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 Do you know how the phone got broken? The synonyms of the word "broken" are .... and ....

a) ambiguous b) damaged c) crushed d) foggy e) mature

2 All we are asking for is a fair wage. The antonyms of the word "fair" are .... and ....

a) lengthy b) prejudiced c) cloudy d) adult e) partial

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3 Ten tourists were .... by a gang in a remote area.

a) kidnapped b) improved c) saved d) disappeared

4 I'll go hunting alone, you have no sense of .... at all!

a) success b) humour c) adventure d) loyalty

5 Each group is named after a fictional خيالى .... like Mickey Mouse.

a) role b) character c) part d) device

6 The police are investigating the .... deaths of children at the hospital.

a) pleasant b) clear c) mysterious d) clean

7 You should never .... a person by their appearance.

a) judge b) teach c) know d) help

8 The company will arrange .... a taxi to meet you at the airport.

a) with b) for c) to d) by

9 It .... along time since I met my friend Ehab.

a) was b) is c) had been d) will be

10 Rania .... late when she was on holiday. She no longer does now.

a) usually sleeps b) is used to sleeping
c) used to sleep d) doesn't sleep

11 On .... his younger brother, he felt something wrong in his speech.

a) was hearing b) heard c) hearing d) hear

12 .... his long study, he did so many researches.

a) As b) During c) When d) As soon as

13 Mido is in Tanta with his family. He .... Paris on business.

a) has gone to b) has been c) has gone d) has been to

14 I can't move and go to my company as I .... my leg.

a) had broken b) have broken c) breaks d) would break

15 I don't fancy .... that film. There is a lot of violence in it.

a) watch b) watched c) watches d) watching

16 She denied .... the dishes as she was afraid of her mother.

a) breaking b) to break c) to breaking d) break

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

"She's coming. Hide it quickly! When Miss Farida entered the classroom, everyone stood up and greeted her. She gave them a smile. The girls noticed that there was sadness in her eyes. Poor miss Farida. They wished with all their hearts that they could do something to help her. Miss Farida explained that she would give anything to stay as their form teacher, but she had no choice. Her father was gravely ill. Her mother was too elderly to be left alone with him.

She simply had to return to her hometown in a neighboring country. Looking at the list of email addresses in her hand, she promised she would keep in touch with them. She encouraged them to study and play hard and to always give their best. Then she got ready to leave. Our class monitor walked over to her and handed her a small package. Miss Farida opened it. "It is from our trip to Siwa the last term. Look at it and always remember us," said our monitor. Miss Farida said, "Thank you. I'll frame it and put it up on the wall of my room." Then she left. Miss Farida is one of the best teachers who devotes all her life to people, and she is never forgotten because of her cooperation and tolerance.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

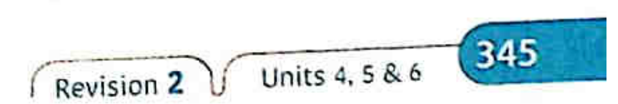
17 The best title to the passage is ".................."

a) Miss Farida's departure

b) The bad relation between Miss Farida and her class

c) The gift from Miss Farida

d) Miss Farida's strong personality



18 Miss Farida was ....

a) the school headmistress

b) a good student at a secondary school

c) the class teacher

d) ungrateful to her parents

19 What did the students hide when Miss Farida entered the class?

a) Homework.

b) A book.

c) Some money.

d) A picture.

20 Miss Farida planned to keep in touch with the students by ....

a) sending letters

b) exchanging emails

c) visiting each other

d) meeting at the nearby club

21 The pronoun "it" prefers to ....

a) Miss Farida's photo at school

b) the pictures of Miss Farida's house

c) the pictures of Miss Farida's parents

d) the gift for Miss Farida

22 The girls wished with all their hearts that they could do something to .... her, but there was nothing that could do.

a) visit

b) go

c) play

d) help

23 Who handed Miss Farida the package?

a) The headmaster.

b) The headmistress.

c) One of the teachers.

d) One of the students.

24 The students will remember Miss Farida because of ....

a) the gift they gave her

b) her wealth and happiness

c) her good qualities

d) her care for her parents

25 Translate into English:

- السفر للخارج له الكثير من الفوائد ومنها أنه يساعدنا على تعلم الكثير من عادات وتقاليد وثقافات الشعوب.

....

....

26 Translate into Arabic:

Nowadays, we face a lot of epidemics that threaten our lives. Coronavirus is one of these diseases that scientists should find a cure for.

....

....

27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

What can we do to keep ourselves safe from illness?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

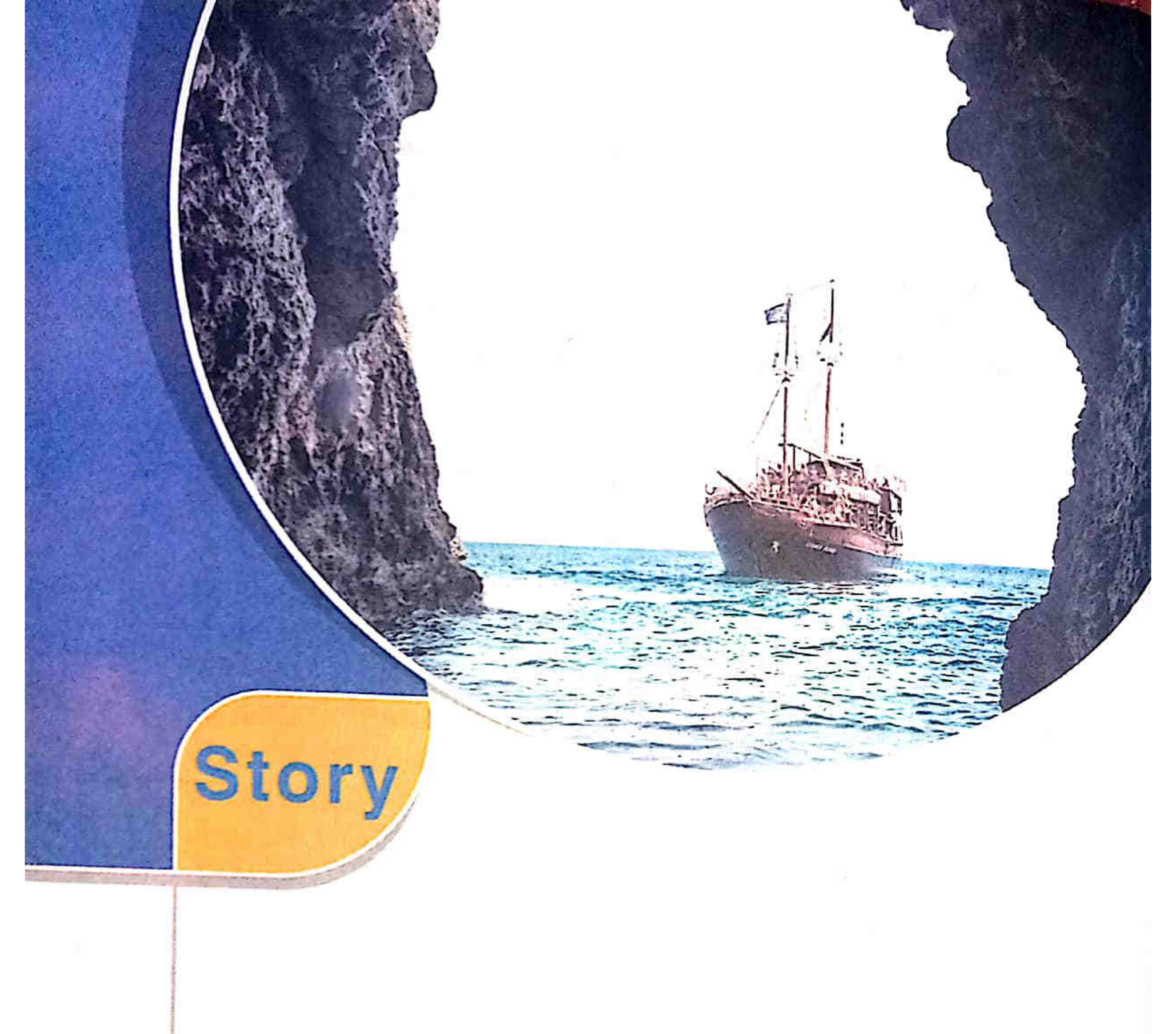
....

....

....

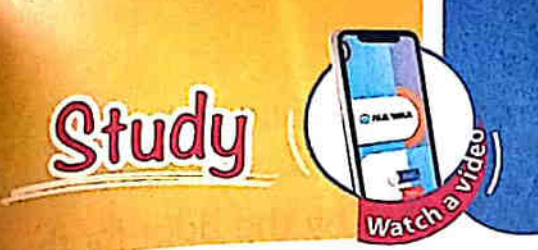
Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!



Story

Treasure Island



Chapter 1

Chapter Text



Jim Hawkins:

I'll start by writing about the time when my father owned an inn called the Admiral[1] Benbow, many years ago. I remember the day when a man walked into the inn[2]. He was tall and strong, with an old blue coat and a scar on his face. He looked around him.

"This is a nice, quiet place. I'll stay here. Please, take this up to my room," he said, pointing to a large wooden box.

"You can call me Captain. And this is for you," he continued, handing my father three or four gold coins.

The Captain was usually a quiet man. He spent his days walking on the beach or on the cliffs[3]. When he came back, he always asked, "Did any sailors visit the inn today?" At first, we thought he wanted to find some other sailors, but later we realised that he didn't want any sailors to find him.

In the evenings, the Captain sometimes told stories about his time at sea. My father was worried that nobody would want to visit the inn because they would be frightened by the Captain' stories, but I think people liked them.

The Captain stayed at the inn for months. He did not give us any more money for his room and my father did not dare[4] to ask him for more.

One morning, the Captain went for a walk along the beach. I was helping my mother to make breakfast when another man walked into the inn. He was thin and pale[5], with three fingers on his left hand. He sat down and asked, "Is this table here for my friend Bill?"

I told him that I did not know Bill and said that the table was for the Captain.

"Well, my friend Bill might say that he's the Captain," he said. "He has a scar[6] on his face and likes to tell a story. Is that him?"

(1) رتبة فى البحرية
(2) حانة
(3) منحدرات
(4) يجرؤ
(5) شاحب الوجه
(6) علامة /ندبة



"Yes," I said. "He's gone for a walk."

"Which way did he walk?" he asked.

I pointed towards the beach. The man stood up and waited by the door for the Captain to return.

When the Captain saw the man, he looked pale and ill.

"Black Dog!" the Captain said.

"That's right," **he replied.** "I've found my friend Bill! We've had a lot of adventures[1] since I lost these fingers!"

I left them to talk. Then suddenly there were loud shouts[2] and both men stood up and ran outside. The Captain had a sword and then I saw Black Dog running away with blood on his arm. The man continued running until we could not see him.

The Captain walked back into the inn. He looked ill and suddenly he fell over. I thought perhaps he was hurt from the fight. At that moment, the doctor arrived to see my father who was sick.

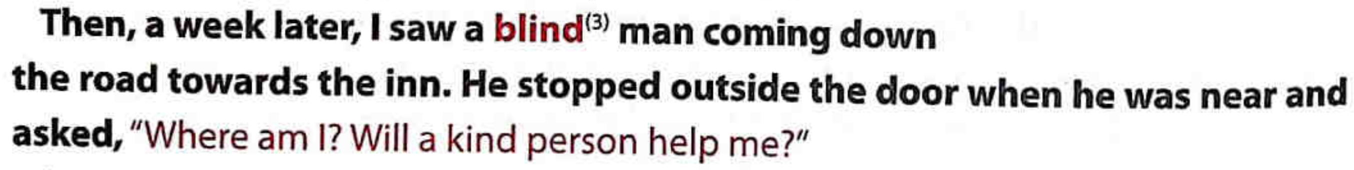
"Help us, Dr Livesy! The Captain is hurt!" said my mother.

The doctor looked at him and said, "He is not hurt, but he is very ill. Help me to take him upstairs."

We took the Captain up to his bedroom and the doctor gave him some medicine. The Captain stayed in bed, but he was not quiet. He told me about his travels at sea, and said that he had something which people wanted.

"Black Dog is not as bad as some of the other men." he said, "They all want to find me. Tell me if you see them!"

That evening, my father died. I felt terrible and forgot all about the strange things that the Captain told me.



Then, a week later, I saw a blind[3] man coming down the road towards the inn. He stopped outside the door when he was near and asked, "Where am I? Will a kind person help me?"

"You are at the Admiral Benbow Inn in Black Hill Cove," I told him.

At that moment, he grabbed[4] my hand.

"Take me to the Captain!" he said. "Take me to him now!"



(1) مغامرات (2) صياح/أصوات عالية (3) كفيف (4) جذبَ

I walked with the blind man into the inn and took him to the Captain. The Captain looked very surprised to see him.

"Now, Bill, stay where you are. I can hear you. Take this." He then put something in the Captain's hand, turned round and left.

The Captain looked at what the man gave him.

"Ten o'clock!" **he said.** "I have time!"

Then the Captain suddenly fell to the floor. He was dead.



I found my mother and we talked about what we should do. We knew that the Captain had a box in his room and it probably had money in it. The blind man and Black Dog probably wanted this. I thought about taking the box to Dr Livesy, but I did not want to leave my mother. We knew that we were in a danger[1]. We decided to go to the nearest village and ask our neighbours for help guarding the inn.

However, none of the people in the village wanted to help us. They did not come back with us, but one man went to tell Dr Livesy. Another man said that we could have his gun.

It was dark when we returned to the inn. We found the key to the box in the captain's jacket. I also saw the message that the blind man gave to the Captain. It said, "You have until ten o'clock tonight."

We went upstairs and my mother soon opened the box with the key. Inside, we found some clothes, some guns, some papers and other things. We also found a bag with some coins[2] inside.

"We only have time until ten o'clock," **I said.** "Let's leave before the blind man and Black Dog return."

"I'll only take the money which the Captain owes us," my mother said, opening the bag.

We stood up to leave, and I decided to take the papers from the box, too. We walked as quickly as we could back towards the village, but as we walked, we heard the sound of people in the road behind us.

"Take the money and run," **said my mother.** "I'm too weak[3] to continue."

I did not want to leave her, so we stopped under a bridge[4], where we could hide[5] in the dark.

(1) خطر
(2) عملات معدنية
(3) ضعيف
(4) كوبري
(5) يختبئ





Chapter (1) Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 In the past soldiers used .... to fight others during wars.
a) swords b) knifes c) tanks d) submarines

2 I didn't .... to tell my father about my exam result.
a) guard b) attack c) owe d) dare

3 The thief .... the woman's bag and ran away quickly.
a) released b) grabbed c) guarded d) brought

4 The police should .... these important places for fear of being robbed.
a) steal b) frighten c) guard d) owe

5 The wound after the accident might leave a/an .... on her cheek.
a) scar b) scare c) scarce d) scaring

6 My friend .... me a lot of money and I need them urgently.
a) owns b) owes c) has d) possesses

7 I want to find a small .... to have a meal and spend the night at it.
a) pool b) inn c) beach d) prison

8 My brother is very ill, so he looks so ....
a) healthy b) powerful c) strong d) pale

9 If you want to visit a remote ...., you need to have a ship.
a) sword b) inn c) island d) scar

10 Sorry, I can't climb this high rocky .... with climbing equipment.
a) island b) cliff c) pool d) beach

11 My friend needs someone to help him cross the road as he is ....
a) strong b) powerful c) wealthy d) blind

12 A wife that cooks well, cleans, and monitors her children carefully is a real ....
a) treasure b) guard c) adventure d) scar

13 No one dared .... into the old house at night alone as it is frightening.
a) with going b) for going c) to go d) by going

14 The teacher pointed .... me and said that I was a loser.
a) at b) with c) for d) towards

15 Mom! There's someone at the door asking .... Dad.
a) at b) for c) with d) by



Chapter 2

Chapter Text



I could see the road from where we were hiding, and soon I saw eight men. One of them was the blind man. I saw them walk down the road to the Admiral Benbow Inn. They were surprised to see that the door was open, then they all ran inside. I heard someone shout, "Bill's dead!"

"Go and find his box," said the blind man.

A little later, a window opened from the Captain's bedroom and a man called out, "Someone has opened the box!"

"Is it **there**?" said the blind man.

"Only the money is there," replied the man.

"It's the boy and the woman from the inn!" shouted the blind man. "Let's find them!"

The men started to look around the house.

"If you find **it** you'll all be rich!" said the blind man.

At this time, we heard horses coming down the road. When the men heard the horses, they started to run in all directions.

The horses arrived, so I ran out to see who was riding them. One of them was the boy who went to get Dr Livesy, and the rest were policemen. Two men took my mother to the village, where she soon felt better, and the others tried to catch[1] the men. But it was too late: we heard that they escaped[2] on a boat.



I returned to the Admiral Benbow with the police.

"What did they want?" said Mr Dance, the head[3] of the police.

"I think that they wanted this," I said, showing him the papers that I still had in my jacket. "I'd like to take them to Dr Livesy."



(1) يمسك/يلحق (2) هرب (3) رئيس/قائد

"That's a good idea," said Mr Dance. "He's a magistrate[1] as well as a doctor. He'll know what to do. I'll come with you."

We found that Dr Livesy was not at home, but was eating at the house of Mr Trelawney, an important rich man. Mr Trelawney asked us into his house. I showed Mr Trelawney and Dr Livesy the papers that the Captain had in his box.

"I think this might be a clue as to where Flint buried his treasure!" said Dr Livesy.

"That is why those men were not interested[2] in money," agreed Mr Trelawney. "If you are right, we should take the next boat from Bristol and go and find the treasure[3] ourselves!"

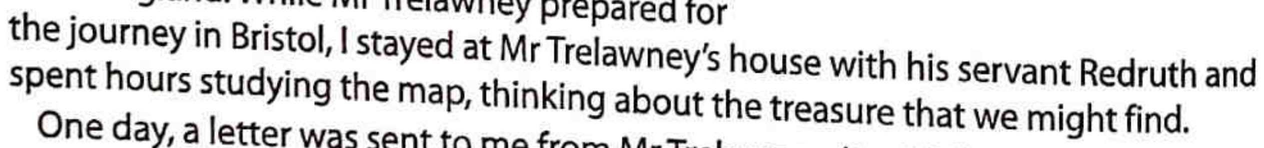
"If Jim here agrees," said the doctor, looking at me, "we should look at these papers now."

The doctor looked at the papers. Some of them seemed to describe the ships that the Captain and his men had robbed[4] of money. Then we looked at the other papers and saw a map[5] of an island, with a big cross[6] on it next to the words, "most of treasure here."

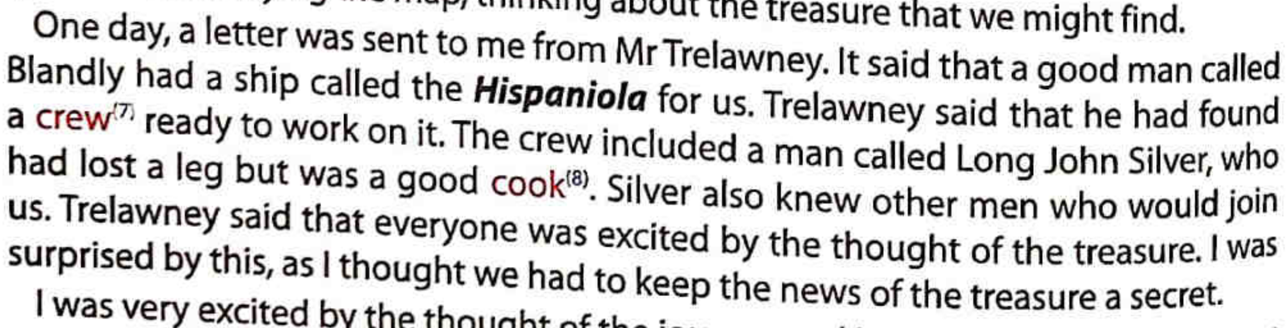
"Dr Livesy, we should go to Bristol tomorrow," said Mr Trelawney. "In a few days, we'll find the best ship in England. Jim Hawkins here can come as our ship's boy. You can be the ship's doctor."

"I agree," said the doctor, "but those men who tried to find the map will now be looking for us. We are not safe anymore. We must not tell anyone else what we know."

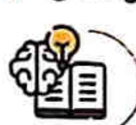
It took us longer than we thought to be ready to leave England. While Mr Trelawney prepared for the journey in Bristol, I stayed at Mr Trelawney's house with his servant Redruth and spent hours studying the map, thinking about the treasure that we might find.



One day, a letter was sent to me from Mr Trelawney. It said that a good man called Blandly had a ship called the ***Hispaniola*** for us. Trelawney said that he had found a crew[7] ready to work on it. The crew included a man called Long John Silver, who had lost a leg but was a good cook[8]. Silver also knew other men who would join us. Trelawney said that everyone was excited by the thought of the treasure. I was surprised by this, as I thought we had to keep the news of the treasure a secret.



I was very excited by the thought of the journey and I went to say goodbye to my mother at the Admiral Benbow Inn. I was very sad to leave her the next day, when I travelled to Bristol with Redruth. We had just one night in the city before we were going to sail[9].



(1) قاض (2) مهتم
(3) كنز (4) سرق
(5) خريطة (6) علامة
(7) طاقم (8) طباخ
(9) يبحر



Chapter (2) Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The .... of the plane were very cheerful and treated us kindly.
a) engine b) sailors c) crew d) staff

2 To solve this crime, the police should find a clear ....
a) clue b) secret c) head d) map

3 The .... decided that she wasn't the killer, so she was set free.
a) crew b) magistrate c) pilot d) pirate

4 We need to hire a .... to clean the house and take care of our food.
a) landlady b) magistrate c) servant d) captain

5 Along the new road, there are signs which give us .... easily.
a) treasures b) secrets c) drawings d) directions

6 The .... of the company should take important decisions from time to time.
a) captain b) head c) heart d) magistrate

7 Yesterday, some thieves tried to .... the bank, but they were arrested.
a) deceive b) hide c) steal d) rob

8 He tried to .... from prison, but he was arrested last week.
a) hide b) catch c) escape d) cross

9 During the storm, the ship's .... tried to control it, but they failed.
a) cookers b) sailors c) magistrates d) cookers

10 In new towns, electric cables are .... beneath the streets.
a) buried b) caught c) escaped d) included

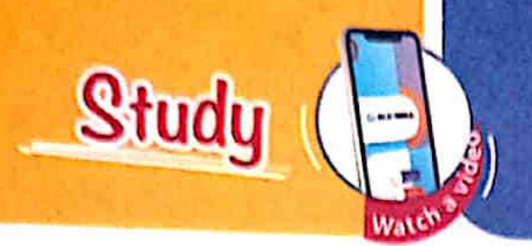
11 Please, there's no need to ....! I can hear you!
a) cross b) escape c) agree d) shout

12 He was hit by a car when he tried to .... over the road near Euston station.
a) shout b) catch c) cross d) escape

13 I've got money you can borrow if you run ....
a) over b) out c) at d) away

14 The players of the team are busy preparing themselves .... the final.
a) for b) at c) with d) to

15 The police are still looking .... the escaped prisoner.
a) at b) after c) after d) for



Chapter 3

Chapter Text



The next morning, Mr Trelawney asked me to take a note to Long John Silver. I went to the inn which Silver owned. It was full of people, but I soon saw a tall, strong man with one leg. He looked very happy and seemed to know all of the people there. I walked up to him and gave him the note. When he saw that it was from Mr Trelawney, he looked surprised and said, "Ah, you must be the new ship's boy!"

At that moment, one of the men in the inn quickly left the room. I saw that he had three fingers on one hand.

"It's Black Dog!" I called. "Stop him!"

"Yes, stop him! He did not pay for his food!" called Silver to one of his helpers[1]. The helper ran after the door.

"Do you know that man? Black Dog, is it?" Silver asked me.

"Yes, he was one of the men who attacked my home. Did Mr Trelawney tell you about that?" I replied.

"Ah, yes. I've seen him in my inn before. He sometimes comes with a blind man."

"The blind man is called Pew," I said. "He was with Black Dog when they attacked."

"Then we must catch them both," said Silver. However, the helper returned and said he could not catch Black Dog.

"Well, we must return to Mr Trelawney," said Silver.

We walked back along the harbour[2] past boats of different sizes, all preparing to go to sea.

Silver told me all about the boats and I knew that he was a great sailor.

We found Dr Livesy with Mr Trelawney when we returned to his hotel, and told them about Black Dog.



(1) مساعدين (2) مرسى/ميناء

"There is nothing we can do now," said Mr Trelawney. "We leave at four o'clock this afternoon. Get your hat, Jim, we'll go on the ship now," he said to me.

It took some time to reach the *Hispaniola*. When we walked onto the big ship, the captain, Smollett, did not look happy to see us.

"What's the problem?" asked Mr Trelawney.

"I don't like the men on this ship and I'm not happy about where we're going," he said.

"Why not?" asked Dr Livesy.

"I was told that the destination(1) of the journey was a secret(2)," he explained. "But the crew tell me we're looking for treasure. I know that looking for treasure always means danger. And when I go on a journey, I like to be able to choose my own crew."

"Don't you like the crew we chose?" asked Mr Trelawney.

"If I sail with them, I want you to stay at the front of the ship for all the journey, and to keep guns(3) with you. And don't show anyone the map," said Smollett.

"Are you worried there will be a mutiny(4)?" asked Dr Livesy.

"It's my job to keep you safe, that's all,' said Smollett, and walked to another part of the ship.

"I think you've two good men on the ship," said Dr Livesy. "That's Long John Silver and Captain Smollett."

"I know Long John Silver is a good man," said Mr Trelawney, "but I don't think Captain Smollett is."

I agreed with Mr Trelawney. I did not like Captain Smollett.

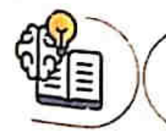
The *Hispaniola* finally left Bristol and our long journey began. Silver was able to walk around the ship on one leg, using only a crutch(5). All the men liked him and he was a good cook, his kitchen always clean. When he wasn't working, he looked after his parrot(6). He called it Captain Flint and said it was 200 years old. The parrot could talk, too, which always made me laugh.

One night, before I went to bed, I decided to eat an apple. The apples were kept in a big barrel which I climbed inside, because it was nearly empty. Before I left the barrel, I heard a man talking nearby. It was Silver and what he said was terrible.



"On that journey, Flint was the captain," he said. "It was then that I lost my leg and Pew became blind. After that journey, I put a lot of money in the bank. It was a great journey, and most of the same crew are on this ship today."

(1) جهة الوصول
(2) سر
(3) أسلحة
(4) تمرد
(5) عكاز
(6) ببغاء



"You won't be able to return to Bristol after this journey," said another sailor called Dick. "What will happen to your inn?"



"I've sold it," said Silver. "My wife has the money and is waiting for me to return in a secret place. And after this journey, you'll have lots of money, too."



Another man joined them and said, "I'm tired of waiting. When can we attack Captain Smollett?"

"You must be patient," said Silver. "Trelawney has the map, so we wait until they have found the treasure. We might also want Smollett to take us home before we attack."

"We shouldn't wait that long," replied another sailor.

"You're like the others," said Silver. "You want to do things quickly. That's what Pew and Flint wanted to do. What happened to them? Pew is blind and Flint is dead."

I began to realise that Silver was not only a cook, but he was also a pirate[1], and the other crew were part of his gang[2].

"No, we wait," continued Silver. "When the time is right, I'll kill Trelawney and his friends! Now, Dick, can you get me an apple?"

When I heard these words, I was very frightened[3]. However, before Dick came to the barrel, I heard another sailor call out:

"I can see land!"

It was this news that saved me, because the sailors now all forgot about apples. We were near the Treasure Island.



(1) قرصان (2) عصابة (3) خائف



Chapter (3) Exercises

Remembering | Understanding | Applying | Analysing | Evaluating | Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My friend told me a/an .... and asked me not to tell anyone about it.
a) public b) tip c) advice d) secret

2 Why are you ....?! The lion is in its cage.
a) tired b) frightening c) pleased d) frightened

3 This area isn't safe. You can't go sailing because of the ....
a) patriots b) pilots c) pirates d) rescuers

4 They led a/an .... against the captain, but they failed to take the ship over.
a) crew b) note c) barrel d) mutiny

5 My son wants to buy a/an .... that can sing and repeat what we say.
a) monkey b) kitten c) parrot d) puppy

6 The coach should depend on his .... to study the other teams.
a) helpers b) servants c) pirates d) parrots

7 The police .... and arrested seven of the terrorists last week.
a) saved b) attacked c) paid d) lost

8 The price of oil .... is increasing daily and this will lead to a disaster.
a) parrots b) pipes c) barrels d) bottles

9 A .... of thieves were arrested while robbing the bank.
a) barrel b) pirate c) sailor d) gang

10 My next .... is Paris. I'm going there next week.
a) destination b) mutiny c) crutch d) location

11 I was on .... for three months after the operation.
a) pirates b) crutches c) pipes d) barrels

12 If you want to .... your goals, you should work hard.
a) lose b) mistake c) reach d) fail

13 My father paid .... my driving lessons because I want to buy a car.
a) with b) by c) at d) for

14 Susan looked .... us very well. She's an excellent cook.
a) after b) for c) up d) at

15 I have spent all day running around .... the kids. They are noisy.
a) up b) after c) for d) at



Chapter 4

Chapter Text



I heard people running to look at the island, and I quietly climbed out of the barrel. I then walked up to join the sailors at the side of the ship. We could see two low hills[1] and one big one. The island was now very close.

"I've been here before," said Silver. "I know where the ship should stop."

"I have a map here," said Captain Smollett. "Can you take us to that place?"

I saw that Silver was excited to take the map, but it was not the one with the treasure marked on it.

"Yes, I can see it. You must go here," he said, pointing to a place on the map.

Then he turned to me and said, "You'll love this island. You can swim and climb trees and walk up the hills!"

I smiled at Silver, but inside I was very frightened of him now. I could not trust anything that he said.

I soon found Dr Livesy and quietly said to him, "I must speak to you, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. I have some terrible news."

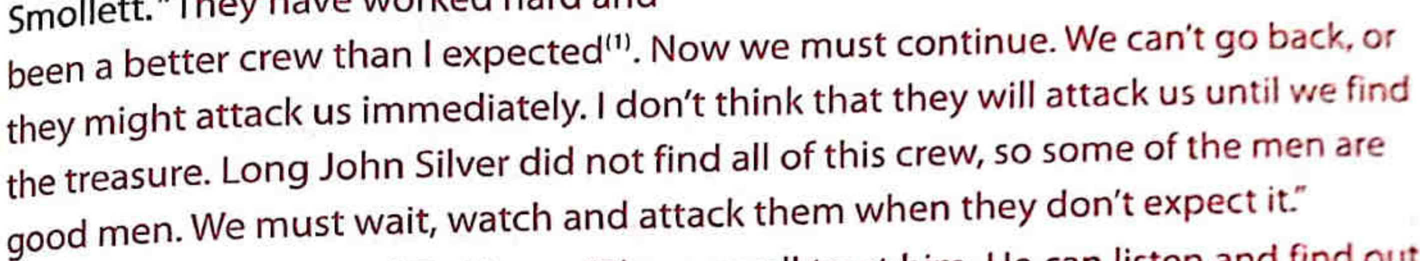
Dr Livesy's expression did not change. He asked me to find his glasses[2] downstairs and walked off to talk to Mr Trelawney and Smollett.

I waited downstairs and soon the three men joined me.

"What do you want to tell us?" asked Mr Trelawney.



(1) تلال (2) نظارة



I told them everything that I had heard in the barrel. When I finished talking, they thanked me.

"Captain," said Mr Trelawney. "You were right and I was wrong. What shall we do?"

"I'm surprised too," said Captain Smollett. "They have worked hard and been a better crew than I expected[1]. Now we must continue. We can't go back, or they might attack us immediately. I don't think that they will attack us until we find the treasure. Long John Silver did not find all of this crew, so some of the men are good men. We must wait, watch and attack them when they don't expect it."

"Jim can help us," said Dr Livesy. "The men all trust him. He can listen and find out who we can trust."

I did not like this thought. I counted[2] the men that Silver did not find for the crew. There were seven from a crew of nineteen, and I was one of them.

The next morning, the ***Hispaniola*** stopped close to the island. There were many trees, and above the trees I saw the rocky tops of the hills. Silver helped Captain Smollett to sail the boat closer to the shore[3]. It was very hot and very quiet. It smelled like bad eggs.

"This place is only good for diseases," said Silver.

The crew worked hard on our journey to the island, but now they did not seem to want to work. I remembered Dr Livesy talking about a mutiny. Perhaps it was near. Only Silver worked as hard as usual.

Later, Captain Smollett told us that he had a plan[4].

"Let's ask the men if they'd like to spend the afternoon on the island. If they go, we can take the ship. If they don't go, we know we need to fight them for the ship."

Mr Trelawney agreed. We decided to tell all the men we could trust[5] about our plan and gave them all guns. Captain Smollett then told the crew that they could all have the afternoon on the island to relax, if they wanted to.



(1) توقعت
(2) عددت
(3) ساحل
(4) خطة
(5) يثق



"When you hear a gun at the end of the day, it'll be time to come back," he said.

All the crew suddenly looked happy and they all agreed to go. Perhaps they thought that they could find the treasure immediately.

Captain Smollett asked Silver to organise the men. Six men would stay on the Hispaniola and thirteen would take the small boats to the shore. I realised that there were six of Silver's men on the ship. The men in our group would not be able to take the ship, so I decided I would go with Silver onto the island. I got on one of the boats quietly, but Silver saw me. Had I made a big mistake[1]?

The boat I was in was fast, and we were nearly on the beach first when I held onto[2] the branch of a tree and jumped out of the boat. I heard someone calling me, but I did not listen and began to run as fast as I could.

When I stopped, I felt happy. Silver did not know where I was. This part of the island was open, with just a few trees. I could see the hills in front of me. As I walked, I saw pretty flowers, snakes and small birds.

Suddenly a cloud of birds flew into the sky and knew that something was coming towards me. I was correct, because I then heard people talking. I decided to hide behind some trees.

I realised that one of the people was Silver, but I could not hear what he was saying. Soon the birds returned, and I knew that the men had gone. I told myself that it was my job to find out what these men were planning to do. So I decided to follow them, without them seeing me. After a few minutes, I saw Silver and another sailor talking near a beach.

"I want you to join us, Tom, because I know you're a good sailor. I'm telling you this to save you!" said Silver.

"Silver," Tom replied, "you're a good man and you shouldn't work with these pirates. I'd prefer to lose my hand than work with them!"

I knew then that here was a man that we could trust. Then came news of another. I suddenly heard a terrible shout, then all was quiet.



(1) خطأ (2) تمسكت

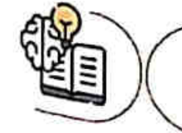
Silver smiled and said, "That? Oh, I think that was Alan."

"Alan!" cried Tom. "He's a good man. If your men have hurt him, then you are no friend of mine. I won't help you!"

Tom began to walk away from Silver along the beach. Silver suddenly threw his crutch at Tom, and it hit[1] him hard on the back. He fell[2] to the ground, and before he could stand again, Silver killed him with a knife.

Silver now blew a whistle[3] and I knew that more of his men would soon arrive on the beach. I was very frightened. I walked quietly back into the trees, then ran as quickly as I could.

As I ran, I began to think. What could I do now? When we heard Captain Smollett's gun, could I go back to the beach to be with these men? If I did, I knew that they would kill me. I would have to stay on the island forever.



(1) ضرب (2) سقط (3) صفارة



Chapter (4) Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The referee blew his .... to start the final match.
a) sword b) whistle c) flute d) branch

2 I .... my friend Ahmed because he is honest and I'm sure he won't do anything bad or wrong.
a) doubt b) lie c) trust d) blow

3 Vodafone opened a new .... in our street. This will be very helpful to me.
a) coast b) shore c) hill d) branch

4 My father needed to .... as he was very busy doing important tasks.
a) relax b) shout c) trust d) doubt

5 Cancer is a very dangerous .... which needs a lot of money to be treated.
a) fight b) branch c) whistle d) disease

6 The place of our street is .... on Google maps.
a) relaxed b) marked c) held d) trusted

7 I noticed the .... on our teacher's face, so I knew that he is angry.
a) expression b) thought c) idea d) disease

8 Alexandria is on the north .... of the Mediterranean.
a) shore b) coast c) island d) sea

9 Birds lay their eggs on the .... of the sea.
a) sure b) barrel c) shore d) wave

10 My daughter came first .... usual in the final exam.
a) like b) if c) so d) as

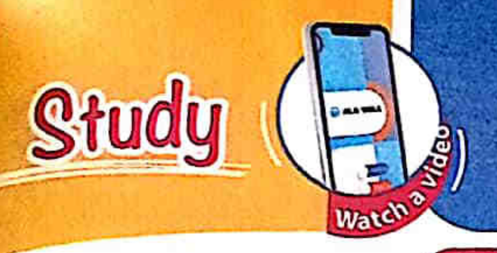
11 I had to apologise to my teacher as I made a .... in the class.
a) cake b) achievement c) wrong d) mistake

12 They walked .... the beach during the sun rise time.
a) along b) a long c) long d) longing

13 When the teacher entered the room of the headmaster, I walked .... to let them speak freely.
a) of b) at c) off d) in

14 My father was very excited .... our school football team.
a) with b) for c) to d) by

15 The young boy held .... the branch of the tree not to fell down.
a) into b) to c) at d) onto



Chapter 5

Chapter Text



I finally stopped running and saw that I was close to the bottom of one of the small hills. The air was fresher here and the trees were taller. Suddenly, from up the hill, something jumped behind a tree. I did not know if it was a man or an animal but it looked big and dangerous. I decided to walk back towards the beach, but then I saw him again. I realised it was a man, but he was running very fast from tree to tree. I remembered that I had a gun and this made me feel safer. I decided to walk towards the man.

When he saw me walking towards him, to my surprise, he came out from behind the tree and **knelt down** in front of me.

"Who are you?" I asked.

"Ben Gun," he said in a dry voice. "I've not spoken to anyone for three years."

The man had very long hair and skin that was burned[1] by the sun. His clothes were dirty and made of old sails[2].

"What happened to you?" I asked.

"I was left here by a ship," he said. "I've lived on fish and fruit ever since. I dream of eating good food again."

"If I can get back to my ship, I'll give you bread and cheese," I said.

He began to look worried. "If you can get back to your ship?! Why? What's to stop you?" he said.

"It isn't a problem with you," I replied.



"I'm a good man," he told me. "I'm very rich, too!" he said in a quiet voice.

I began to think that perhaps Ben Gun was crazy. Ben Gun saw that I did not believe him.

"I am rich! And you can be rich too, because you found me!" he said. Then he looked worried and said, "You didn't come on Flint's ship, did you?"



(1) محترق

(2) أشرعة

I realised now that this man could help me.

"No, Flint's dead, but some of Flint's crew is on the ship. That is not good for any of us." I told him.

"Is there a man with one leg?" he asked.

"Yes, Silver. He's the cook and their leader," I explained.

"If you work for Silver, I'm finished," he said.

I decided to tell him my story from the start, and he looked very interested.

"You're a good boy," he said at the end. "Don't worry, you can trust me. Do you think that Trelawney would give me money and allow me to come home on the ship if I helped him?" he asked.

"Of course," I replied. "And he'll need your help on the ship home, I'm sure."

"You're right," he said. "You know, I was on Flint's ship when he hid the treasure here. He was with six men and they were on the island for about a week. We waited for them on a ship called the Walrus. One day, Flint returned to the ship on his own. The other six men were dead. We don't know how he did it. Billy Bones and Long John Silver were with me on the ship. They asked Flint where the treasure was. 'You can go on the island and look for it,' he said. 'But you'll be there on your own. I'm taking this ship home.'



"Three years ago, I was on a different ship. When we saw the island, I told our crew that Flint's treasure was on it. We spent twelve days looking for it. They were not happy when we found nothing. One day, they went back to the ship and told me I could stay. 'Here's a gun and a spade[1]. You can look for the treasure on your own!' they said. So, you tell Trelawney, I would prefer to work for a man I can trust like him, than with a group of pirates."



"I'll tell him, but how can I return to my ship from here?" I asked him.

"I have a boat. I made it myself. We could go to the ship when it's dark!"

Suddenly, we heard the sound of a gun.

"They have started to fight," I said. "We must be quick!"

I began to run back with Ben. He gave me directions[2], and ran easily next to me. We heard more guns, then I saw a flag flying above some trees.



(1) جاروف

(2) اتجاهات



Chapter (5) Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The .... of my team can control all the players.
a) servant b) leader c) sailor d) group

2 All ships have .... to control wind power during their voyages.
a) sails b) engines c) swords d) spades

3 When we were camping, we used .... to dig searching for water.
a) sails b) spades c) swords d) sailors

4 We enjoy the .... air of the sea when we go to Marina.
a) dry b) dark c) dead d) fresh

5 After years, they managed to find the ship at the .... of the sea.
a) direction b) expression c) sails d) bottom

6 The teacher asked me to raise my .... so that he could hear me.
a) sound b) voice c) noise d) head

7 The robber .... down to his knees and gave up when the officer fired his gun.
a) led b) believed c) knelt d) replied

8 We are going on a voyage tomorrow. Are you .... to come?
a) interesting b) interested c) interests d) interest

9 The headmaster .... me to leave school early as I was tired.
a) let b) denied c) made d) allowed

10 The police are trying to contact the family of the .... man.
a) dead b) different c) bottom d) sail

11 You shouldn't .... everything you read. A lot of news are not true.
a) kneel b) allow c) believe d) lead

12 Her face and neck were quite badly .... by the sun.
a) allowed b) burned c) made d) believed

13 .... my surprise she refused to marry Ali although he is a good young man.
a) At b) For c) By d) To

14 I wouldn't dream .... letting strangers look after my own grandmother!
a) by b) with c) of d) at

15 We both work .... the same company. It is a multinational one.
a) for b) with c) on d) over



Chapter 6

Chapter Text

Dr Livesy:



When the boats went to the shore, I talked to Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. There was no wind[1] at all, so we knew we could not take the ship, even if we wanted to attack the six men who stayed on the ship with us. Then we heard that Jim Hawkins was on the island with Silver and his men. We were very worried[2] about him.

I decided to take a boat to the shore with another man we could trust, called Hunter. When we reached the island, we walked a little way and then we found a small fort[3]. It was big enough for about twenty-five people and was very well defended[4]. It also had water. Then I heard a shout. I thought that Jim was dead.

We ran back to the boat and soon returned to the *Hispaniola*. I told Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney my plan. We quickly put food, medicines and guns in the boat.

At the same time, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney said to Silver's men who were still on the ship, "We have guns. If you try to contact Silver, you will be dead."

They looked very surprised.

I then took the boat back to the beach with Hunter and another sailor called Joyce. We quickly took everything up to the fort, then I left Hunter and Joyce in the fort and returned to the *Hispaniola*.

We knew that Silver had more men than us, but we also knew that none of them had guns. We thought that this gave us an advantage[5]. On the *Hispaniola*, Trelawney helped me to put food and more weapons into the boat. Then we called for Captain Smollett, Redruth and a good sailor called Abraham Gray, and they climbed into the boat with us.

Our journey back to the island was more difficult than the others. There were more people and supplies[6] now, so the boat was heavy and very close to the water. We had to be very careful to prevent[7] the boat from sinking. The wind blew from a different direction, too, and we were not moving towards the beach near the fort.

"We'll never get to the beach!" I said.



(1) رياح
(2) قلق
(3) حصن
(4) محصن جيدًا
(5) أفضلية/ميزة
(6) موارد/مؤن
(7) يمنع



"We must keep in this direction," said Captain Smollett. "Work hard, be patient[1], and we will arrive." Then his voice changed. "The cannon![2]" he called.

I looked round and realised that the men we left on the *Hispaniola* were preparing a cannon. We were moving so slowly that we were not far from the ship. It would be easy for them to hit us.

Trelawney stood up with a gun and fired at the pirates, and one of them fell.

We heard a cry from the ship, and another from the beach. We saw that the other pirates were getting into their boats.

"Go as fast as you can," said Captain Smollet. "If we don't get to the beach, we're finished."

"They are only using one boat" I said. "The other men are walking to the beach to wait for us."

"It's a long way for them to run," said Captain Smollett. "It's a race[3] to get there first."

We moved fast, and the wind was not so strong near the beach. However, Trelawney fired his gun again which made us all move to one side of the boat. It started to sink, but we were in just three feet of water. It was not difficult to walk to the beach, but we had lost many of our supplies in the water, including some of our guns.



There were now voices in the trees and we knew that the pirates were near. We had to get to the fort before the pirates got to the beach. We all ran as fast as possible and at last we saw the fort in front of us. At the same time, seven pirates arrived at the other side of it. The pirates looked surprised to see the fort and stopped. This gave us time to fire our guns, and they quickly turned and ran into the trees behind them.

Before we could enter the fort, we heard another gun fire, and poor[4] Redruth fell down. We quickly picked him up and took him into the fort, but it was too late: he was dead. Trelawney was very sad. Redruth had been a good servant to him.

Captain Smollett put up a flag inside the fort and counted the supplies, then he asked me, "How long will we have to spend on this island?"



(1) صبور
(2) مدفع
(3) سباق
(4) مسكين

"In England, I told Blandly that if we were not back by August, to come and find us," I explained.

"We need the supplies that were lost in the sea," said Captain Smollett. "Without them, we have enough supplies until July only."

At that moment, we heard gun fire and the fort was nearly hit.

"They can see the flag," said Trelawney. "We should take it down."

"No!" said Captain Smollett. "We keep the flag! It will show the pirates that we are not frightened of them!"

The gun fire continued, but it was almost impossible for them to hit anyone inside the fort.

Just then, we heard someone calling.

"Doctor! Mr Trelawney! Captain! Are you there?"

I ran to the door of the fort and I found Jim Hawkins, safe and alive!



Chapter (6) Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We need to take some .... with us during our camping.
a) communications b) entries
c) diaries d) supplies

2 The policeman .... his gun and shoot the terrorist before bombing himself.
a) shouted b) defended c) fired d) sunk

3 A .... is a large gun with wheels. It was used during the wars in the past.
a) gun b) rifle c) sword d) cannon

4 Our armed forces do their best to .... our country from enemies.
a) shoot b) fire c) sink d) defend

5 A .... is a strong building used by soldiers to defend an important place.
a) fort b) cannon c) diary d) dairy

6 I have a complaint. I need to .... the manager, please.
a) communicate b) contact c) fire d) defend

7 It is known that .... should be kept out of the reach of children.
a) cannons b) supplies c) medicines d) contacts

8 They stole everything in my purse, ... my credit cards.
a) enclosing b) consisting c) supplying d) including

9 One of the many .... of living in a village is that you can feel relaxed.
a) advantages b) contacts c) supplies d) weapons

10 The kids watched as the coin .... to the bottom of the pool.
a) drowned b) sank c) moved d) made

11 A leg injury may .... Mohamed Salah from playing in tomorrow's game.
a) contact b) fire c) prevent d) move

12 It was an awful accident. They're lucky to be ....
a) dead b) cried c) moved d) alive

13 The others went back to the hotel, but I stayed .... chatting to Ahmed.
a) on b) with c) for d) at

14 The bridge is falling .... and will need a million pounds to repair it.
a) to b) down c) up d) at

15 I don't like living far .... downtown areas. I like living in crowded ones.
a) with b) to c) from d) for



Video Scripts



Video Script (Unit 1)

Do tourists usually stop and think about the impact[1] they have on the place they're visiting?

The tourist offices in cities which are popular with[2] tourists think about how tourism affects[3] their cities. They consider the advantages and disadvantages. They try to help local people cope with[4] lots of visitors in the streets of their city.

A good example is Amsterdam in the Netherlands. Twenty years ago, the city's tourism office was spending a lot of money advertising[5] the city, but they don't do this anymore. The city has about 18 million visitors a year and that is more than enough for a community[6] of 1.5 million local people.

In future, people should think more about the environment and local people when they are travelling. For example, they should use public transport[7] if they can, and try not to travel when the roads and trains are very busy with local people travelling to work. There is plenty of space for everyone if we are considerate[8] of each other!

(1) تأثير
(2) معروف بـ
(3) يؤثر
(4) يتعامل مع
(5) يعلن
(6) مجتمع
(7) المواصلات العامة
(8) محترم لرغبات الآخرين

0:00

Video Script (Unit 2)

Young people and older people don't always spend a lot of time together. But they can do a lot to help each other.

In some communities[1], children and teenagers[2] volunteer[3] to support older people. They sit and watch television with them. They help them with their shopping or other tasks[4] around the house.

They listen to their stories about life a long time ago. The older people don't feel so alone, they get the help they need and they can share interesting information about life in the past with the next generation[5].

But what about the young people? Well, they can learn a lot about the history of their community. They also see that older people were just like them when they were younger.

(1) مجتمعات
(2) مراهقون
(3) يتطوع
(4) مهام
(5) جيل

0:00

Video Script (Unit 3)

People have always told stories.

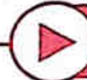
Thousands of years ago they told stories about dangerous places to hunt[1] so the people in their community wouldn't go there. Older people told stories about the people who came before them. They couldn't write the stories down and they didn't want to lose[2] them, so, they painted[3] pictures to tell stories.

If you put your message into a story, people will remember[4] it because they'll feel an emotional connection[5] to the people and places in the story. They may even decide to do something to help the people in the story or people like them.

They say a picture can tell a thousand words, but the words in a story can touch[6] a thousand lives.

(1) يصطاد
(2) يفقد/يخسر
(3) رسم
(4) يتذكر
(5) رابط عاطفي
(6) تؤثر على

0:00



Video Script (Unit 5)

Sometimes teenagers experience[1] bullying because they look different, have different abilities[2] or different opinions and experiences. If you think someone is being bullied, what should you do? Parents and teachers are there to give advice when bullying happens. If you know someone is being bullied, you should tell the teacher. You can also offer[3] to help the person tell their parents. You can keep a note[4] of any bullying you see so that you have plenty of information to tell your teacher. The teacher can then talk to the bully about everything they have done. Be kind to the person who is being bullied. Make sure that they know you support them and do not like the bully's behaviour[5]. Spend time talking and socialising[6] with them to help them build new friendships. Invite them to join your friends. Agree with your friends that you will make it clear to the bully that you do not like their behaviour.

(1) يتعرض لـ
(2) قدرات
(3) يعرض
(4) يدون ملاحظات
(5) سلوك/تصرف
(6) يختلط اجتماعيًا

0:00



Advanced and Open General Ex. Answers

Unit 1

1. **b)** on the quiet

- بمعنى (سرًا).

2. **d)** sound

- تعبير بمعنى يستطلع رأيا sound sb out.

3. **c)** In isolation

- بمعنى (بمعزل عن – بشكل منفصل).

4. **a)** lean

- بمعنى نحيف – قليل اللحم.

5. **d)** pet

- بمعنى شخص مدلل.

6. **d)** destiny

- بمعنى مصير.

7. **a)** busy yourself

- ينشغل.

8. **a)** swelled

- بمعنى استشاط غضبًا.

9. **a)** victim

- بمعنى شخص مساير للموضة وحتى لو كانت غير مناسبة له.

10. **d)** swell-headed

- بمعنى مغرورًا.

11. **d)** resort

- تعبير بمعنى يلجأ الى resort to.

12. **b)** keep my distance

- تعبير بمعنى ينأى بنفسه.

13. **c)** impact

- يعنى تصادم.

14. **d)** remote

- بمعنى انطوائى.

15. **b)** hill

- تعبير بمعنى كبر فى السن over the hill.

16. **c)** was

- لأن v.to be لا يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة فلا يمكن استخدام الاختيار b.

17. **c)** I was studying

- لأن الفاعلين فى الجملتين مختلفان فلا يمكن استخدام الاختيار a.

18. **d)** While in

- أصل الجملة while I was in Alexandria
- وتم حذف while I was لوجود حرف جر.
- وفقًا للملحوظة التى تم شرحها فى الوحدة بالتفصيل.

19. **d)** got used to

- لأنها جاء بعدها noun phrase.

20. **b)** isn't

- الأمنية هنا فى المضارع لذلك استخدم زمن الماضى البسيط بعد wish والأمنية فى المضارع تعبر عن عكس الواقع.

21. **a)** is used to

- لأنها جاء بعدها noun phrase.

22. **b)** tasted

- الفعل taste لا يأتى فى الأزمنة المستمر.

23. **d)** being examined

- الفاعل محذوف والفعل مبنى للمجهول لذلك يتبع بـ being + p.p.

24. **d)** enjoyed

لأنه لا يمكن استخدام used to مع last night.

25. **c)** On

- استخدام on هنا يعنى (عند رؤية الثعبان) أى لا يوجد فاصل زمنى بين رؤية الثعبان والصراخ.

26. **b)** was having

- تم استخدام الفعل have فى المستمر لأنه هنا بمعنى يتلقى دروسًا فى القيادة.

27. **c)** when they got

- سيرهم على الطريق السريع (حدث كان مستمرًا) أما (الحدث القاطع) فهو حدوث ثقب فى إطار السيارة.

28. **b)** get used to driving

- تعبر هنا عن عادة مازالت مستمرة وتم الاعتياد عليها بصعوبة.

29. **c)** She was busy with her lessons at 10 o'clock.

- معنى الجملة يعنى أنه فى الساعة العاشرة كانت تذاكر دروسها أى إنها بدأت قبل العاشرة وانتهت بعدها.

30. **b)** to study

- هنا لم تتبع بفاعل؛ لذلك جاء بعدها wish

Unit 2

1. b) roared

- بمعنى يقهقه (يضحك بصوت عالٍ).

2. a) chanced

- يصادف أن .chance to + inf

3. d) community

- تعبير بمعنى روح الجماعة .sense of community

4. b) score

- تعبير بمعنى من هذه الناحية .on that score

5. d) a & b

- كلمة من الممكن أن تكون جمع أو مفرد .generation

6. a) hunted

- بمعنى يبحث عن أو يفتش.

7. a) respects

- تعبير بمعنى الذهاب إلى جنازة شخص .pay last respects

8. a) check

- تعبير يفيد تأكيد الوصول فى مطار أو فندق .check in

9. b) charity

- بمعنى تعاطف.

10. a) monitors

- بمعنى مراقبين.

11. c) party

- بمعنى حزب سياسى.

12. b) support

- بمعنى يتحمل وزن.

13. d) checked

- بمعنى بها شكل مربعات.

14. c) aim

- تعبير بمعنى يصوب السلاح .take aim

15. a) track

- بمعنى مضمار السباق.

16. c) weighs

- الفعل weigh لا يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة هنا لأنه جاء بمعنى (ذو وزن).

17. d) doesn't exist

- الفعل exist فعل لازم ولا يبنى للمجهول.

18. d) Does this car belong

- الفعل belong لا يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة.

19. a) rains

- هنا معنى الجملة يشير إلى شيء معتاد الحدوث وليس حدثًا مؤقتًا يحدث الآن فقط.

20. b) am

- لا يستخدم مع الازمنة المستمرة .v. to be

21. c) don't

- كلمة people فعلها جمع.

22. c) meets

- عند سرد الأحداث فى قصة أو رواية أو فيلم (أى عمل أدبى أو فنى) نستخدم المضارع البسيط.

23. d) passes

- فى التعليقات الرياضية نستخدم المضارع البسيط.

24. b) comes

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع بعض التعبيرات مثل .here

25. d) leads

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع المقولات المنطقية والحكم والأمثال.

26. c) does he study

- عند بداية الجملة بـ Never تتبع بـ فاعل + فعل مساعد + ...

27. c) is always criticising

- هنا تم استخدام always مع المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الضيق أو الشكوى.

28. a) don't lose

- الجملة هنا مبنية للمعلوم وليست للمجهول والأشجار هنا فاعل وليست مفعولًا.

29. a) We can fish in the new factory.

- الفعل can هنا بمعنى (يُعلب) وليست بمعنى يستطيع.

30. d) get used to driving

- تعبر عن عادة مازالت مستمرة فى الوقت الحاضرة.

Unit 3

1. b) dirtied

- بمعنى جعلها متسخة.

2. a) employ

- بمعنى (يوظف).

3. d) earned

- بمعنى (يستحق – يحقق له).

4. a) gain

- بمعنى مكسب.

5. c) removed

- بمعنى مختلف عن.

6. b) pay

- تعبير بمعنى يعطى ربحا make it pay.

7. d) part

- تعبير بمعنى فى أغلب الأحوال for the most part.

8. a) main

- بمعنى أنبوب توصيل المياه.

9. c) admitted

- بمعنى سمح لهم بالدخول.

10. d) characters

- بمعنى حروف أو رموز.

11. a) plumped

- بمعنى اختار شيئًا بعد تفكير طويل.

12. b) broke

- تعبير بمعنى يحطم معنويات break the spirit.

13. b) disabled

- بمعنى أوقف – عطل.

14. d) experienced

- بمعنى تعرض لـ - واجه.

15. d) rat

- بمعنى يشوش على – يفتن على rat on.

16. b) since

- استخدمت كلمة since هنا بمعنى (بسبب).

17. d) had been married

- فى حالة وجود كلمة دالة على المضارع التام وإشـارة للماضى نستخدم الماضى التام بدلًا من المضارع التام.

18. b) since

since + مدة زمنية + ago

19. b) since

since هنا جاءت مع the last لوجود اسم بعدها وليس مدة زمنية

20. b) had ever

- تستخدم مع الماضى التام It was the first time.

- تستخدم مع المضارع التام It is the first time.

21. b) 've made

- معنى الجملة يعنى أنه تم الانتهاء من عمل الحلوى.

22. b) been to

- هنا تم حذف الضمير العائد على كلمة places them.

23. a) played

- هناك دليل على ان وقت اللعب كان فى الماضى بدليل انتهاء المباراة بخسارتنا لها.

24. b) since

- كلمة fall هنا تعنى (فصل الخريف).

25. b) have known

- الفعل know لا يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة.

Unit 4

1. c) connection

- بمعنى وسيلة مواصلات.

2. a) Articles

- بمعنى قطع.

3. c) coldly

- بمعنى بفتور.

4. c) stress

- بمعنى تأكيد.

5. d) mate

- قرين – أليف (حيوان أو طائر).

6. a) wearing

- يبدو عليه wear an expression.

7. b) practices

- بمعنى عيادة أو مكتب محاماة.

8. d) nurse

- يحضن شخصًا.

9. b) moved

- بمعنى يحرك المشاعر.

10. c) debated

- بمعنى يتناقش بشكل رسمى للوصول لنتيجة.

11. a) grade

- بمعنى مستوى من الجودة.

12. c) wear

بمعنى يتآكل wear out.

13. b) dear

- بمعنى غالى الثمن.

14. c) thousand

- لا تجمع لأن قبلها رقم.

15. d) themselves

- ضمير جمع.

16. c) a few

- التعبير دائمًا ما يتبع بـ only a.
- مع الأسماء المعدودة a few.
- مع الأسماء غير المعدودة a little.

17. d) sea

- at sea تعنى فى البحر وهو تعبير لا نستخدم فيه the.

18. b) any

- لوجود كلمة hardly بمعنى تقريبًا لا.

hardly any = almost no

19. c) the bed

- كلمة the bed هنا يقصد بها السرير (كقطعة من الأثاث).

20. c) the

21. a) no article/no article

22. c) papers

- يقصد بها هنا وثائق أو مستندات.

23. c) room

- كلمة room هنا ليست بمعنى حجرة.

there is no room for mistakes

- معناها لا مجال للأخطاء.

24. a) much work

- هنـا تعنى عمـلًا كثيرًا ولا يمكن اسـتخدام أى من الاختيارات الأخرى بسـبب وجود الضمير it الـذى لا يمكن أن يعود على جمع أبدًا too much work.

25. a) a

- كلمة one بادئة بصوت متحرك وليس سـاكن واسـتخدام أداة النكـرة هنـا لأن one-year-old صفـة وجاء بعدها اسم موصوف مفرد.

26. b) an

- مع الاختصارات البادئة بصوت متحرك.

27. d) no article

- يقصد هنا بالمعنى (نهارًا).

28. c) the

- هنا الاسم الذى تلا الفراغ.

European Union

- وهو اسم منظمة الاتحاد الأوروبى.

29. c) the

- إذا جاءت the قبل اسم شخص جمع فيعنى هنا اسم العائلة.

30. c) the

- كلمة the whole day تعنى اليوم بأكمله.



Unit 5

1. **a)** application

- بمعنى مثابرة أو جهد.

2. **c)** hacked

- بمعنى يشق طريقه.

3. **a)** smarten

- بمعنى يهندم smarten sb up.

4. **d)** cause

- بمعنى قضية – موضوع.

5. **c)** electric

- بمعنى مكهرب – مشحون بالانفعالات.

6. **a)** check

- بمعنى يبطئ – يوقف.

7- **d)** clicked

- بمعنى يتضح الأمر فجأة.

8. **b)** account

- بمعنى تقرير – وصف.

9- **a)** frightful

- بمعنى سيئ جدًا – فظيع.

10- **c)** free

- بمعنى مريح – خالٍ من الرسميات.

11. **b)** skims

- بمعنى يقشد – ينزع «الوش».

12. **a)** scan

- بمعنى فحص أو مسح طبى.

13. **d)** device

- بمعنى حيلة – وسيلة.

14. **c)** machine

- بمعنى ماكينة أهداف.

15- **d)** network

- هنا بمعنى شبكة من الجواسيس المحترفين.

16. **a)** will be

- باقى الاختيارات لا تصلح فالاختيار الثانى ينقصه to + inf.
- والثالث لا يصلح لأننا هنا لا نتحدث عن جدول مواعيد.
- والرابع لا يصلح أيضا لأن v.to be لا يستخدم فى الأزمنة المستمرة.

17. **d)** is about to fall

- الجملة تعنى أن البنت على وشك السقوط.

18. **d)** is going to write

- الجملة تعنى أن الولد يقوم بتجهيز القلم لبدء المذاكرة أى أن الحدث على وشك الحدوث.

19. **b)** future fact

- الحقيقة فى المستقبل تستخدم أحيانا للتعبير عن العمر أو السن.

20. **d)** would help

- لوجود was predicted وهى فى زمن الماضى فيستخدم معها would.

21. **c)** am seeing

- الجملة هنا تعبر عن ترتيبات فى المستقبل والفعل see هنا يستخدم فى المستمر لأنه مستخدم بمعنى يقابل وليس يرى.

22. **c)** are going to be

- تعنى هنا على وشك التأخير.

23. **a)** is going to rain

24. **a)** will get

- being clever هنا لا تعتبر دليل لانها قائمة على الرأى الشخصى وليس شيئا مرئيا ملموسا.

25. **d)** is going to close

- الشركة تحقق خسائر تعتبر دليل على قرب إغلاق الشركة مستقبلًا.

26. **b)** will be done

- الجملة مبنية للمجهول.

27. **d)** Shall we go

28. **c)** is about to leave

- القطار هنا على وشك المغادرة.

29. **a)** will be watching

- تم تحديد وقت مع كلمة دالة على المستقبل فهنا نستخدم زمن المستقبل المستمر.

30. **b)** is watching

- الجملة تعبر عن حدث يحدث الآن.

Unit 6

1. b) dug

- dig up بمعنى ينبش عن معلومات.

2. a) literature

- بمعنى منشورات – مطبوعات.

3. d) plotting

- plot against بمعنى يتآمر على.

4. a) rhyme

- بمعنى كلمة من نفس القافية.

5. c) fair

- بمعنى أشقر – أبيض البشرة.

6. b) verse

- بمعنى شعر – نظم.

7. d) Hop in

- بمعنى يركب السيارة بسرعة.

8. b) lay

- lay ... off يدع شخصًا وشأنه.

9. a) toying

- toy with تداعبه فكرة.

10. b) lined

- line شيئًا up يرتب – يعد.

11. a) adventured

- غامر بـ.

12. b) brief

- بمعنى مختصر.

13. d) fair

- بمعنى بشرة فاتحة اللون.

14. b) gravel

- بمعنى يضع التربة الزلطية لطريق.

15. c) popular

- بمعنى شعبى.

16. a) I prefer eating fish than meat.

- عند تفضيل شىء على شىء تكون قاعدة prefer كالآتى:

prefer + v-ing/Noun ... than + v-ing/Noun

17. c) not go

- يستخدم .why not + inf للتعبير عن الاقتراح.

18. c) buying

stop + ... + (from) + v-ing

19. c) be repaired

- الجملة هنا مبنية للمجهول لذلك جاء بعدها .be + P.P

20. d) not make

- let's تتبع بالمصدر وعند النفى .not + inf

21. c) to lie

- كلمة make عند استخدامها فى المبنى للمجهول تتبع بـ .to + inf

22. d) I heard part of what he said.

- كلمة hear عندما تتبع بـ v+ing تعنى أن الحدث لم يتم بأكمله بل تم جزء منه فقط.

23. d) to have lost

- فقدان الوزن تم فى الماضى .seem to have + p.p

24. d) I want you to use it and see what will happen.

- عندما تتبع try بـ (v-ing) فهى تعنى تجربة شىء لمحاولة حل مشكلة.

25. b) telling

- go on إذا جاء بعدها v+ing تعنى الاستمرار فى عمل نفس الفعل دون تغيير.

26. d) would rather not

- would rather تتبع بالمصدر وعند النفى .not + inf

27. b) talking

- عندما تتبع keep بـ (v-ing) فهى تعنى الاستمرار فى عمل شىء مرات عديدة.

28. a) having

- عندما تتبع mean بـ (v-ing) فهى تعنى (يؤدى إلى شىء ما للحصول على نتيجة معينة أو ينطوى على شىء ما).

29. a) to see

- الفعل alarm هنا يأتى بمعنى انزعج أو قلق ويتبع بـ to+inf. فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول.

30. b) screaming

- الفعل screaming هنا بمعنى صارخًا.



Check Points Answers

Lessons	Checkpoint	Unit 1					Unit 2				
Lessons 1 & 2	Checkpoint 1	1. c	2. d	3. c	4. c	5. b	1. b	2. d	3. a	4. b	5. d
	Checkpoint 2	1. b	2. c	3. a	4. d	5. b	1. d	2. a	3. c	4. d	5. b
	Checkpoint 3	1. d	2. b	3. d	4. a	5. c	1. b	2. a	3. c	4. d	5. c
	Checkpoint 4	1. c	2. d	3. c	4. d	5. a	1. a	2. a	3. b	4. b	5. b
	Checkpoint 5	1. c	2. b	3. d	4. c	5. d					
Lessons 3 & 4	Checkpoint 1	1. b	2. d	3. a	4.d	5. b	1. c	2. b	3. b	4. a	
	Checkpoint 2	1. b	2. a	3. a	4. d	5. b	1. b	2. a	3. b	4. d	5.a
	Checkpoint 3	1. b	2. d	3. a	4. d	5. b					
	Checkpoint 4	1. b	2. c	3. a							

Lessons	Checkpoint	Unit 3					Unit 4				
Lessons 1 & 2	Checkpoint 1	1. b	2. c	3. a	4. d	5. a	1. b	2. a	3. d	4. c	5. b
	Checkpoint 2	1. c	2. d	3. b	4. c	5. b	1. b	2. a	3. c	4. d	5. b
	Checkpoint 3	1. d	2. c	3. a	4. c	5. d	1. c	2. c	3. c	4. b	5. c
	Checkpoint 4	1. b	2. d	3. a	4. d	5. c	1. a	2. b	3. d	4. c	5. c
Lessons 3 & 4	Checkpoint 1	1. c	2. a	3. d	4. b	5. a	1. c	2. a	3. d	4. a	5. c
	Checkpoint 2	1. b	2. c	3. a	4. c	5. d	1. c	2. d	3. a	4. d	5. c
	Checkpoint 3	1. d	2. c	3. a	4. a	5. d	1. c	2. d	3. c	4. c	
	Checkpoint 4						1. a	2. b	3. b	4. b	5. b

Lessons	Checkpoint	Unit 5					Unit 6				
Lessons 1 & 2	Checkpoint 1	1. b	2. c	3. d	4. a	5. c	1. d	2. a	3. c	4. b	5. d
	Checkpoint 2	1. b	2. d	3. c	4. a	5. b	1. c	2. b	3. c	4. a	5. d
	Checkpoint 3	1. c	2. b	3. a	4. d	5. b	1. b	2. d	3. a	4. b	
	Checkpoint 4						1. c	2. b	3. a	4. d	5. b
Lessons 3 & 4	Checkpoint 1	1. c	2. b	3. a	4. d	5. b	1. b	2. d	3. d	4. c	5. d
	Checkpoint 2	1. c	2. b	3. d	4. c	5. a	1. b	2. b	3. c	4. a	5. c
	Checkpoint 3	1. c	2. b	3. a	4. b	5. c	1. b	2. a	3. d	4. b	5. b

Irregular Verbs

	INFINITIVE	PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE
يكون	be	was/were	been
يضرب	beat	beat	beaten
يصبح	become	became	become
يبدأ	begin	began	begun
يثنى	bend	bent	bent
يكسر	break	broke	broken
يحضر	bring	brought	brought
يحرق	burn	burnt/burned	burnt/burned
يشترى	buy	bought	bought
يمسك	catch	caught	caught
يختار	choose	chose	chosen
يكلف	cost	cost	cost
يتناول	deal	dealt	dealt
يفعل	do	did	done
يرسم	draw	drew	drawn
يشرب	drink	drank	drunk
يقود	drive	drove	driven
يسقط	fall	fell	fallen
يطعم	feed	fed	fed
يشعر	feel	felt	felt
يقاتل	fight	fought	fought
يجد	find	found	found

ينسى	forget	forgot	forgotten
يسامح	forgive	forgave	forgiven
يتجمد	freeze	froze	frozen
يحصل على	get	got	got/gotten
يعطى	give	gave	given
ينمو	grow	grew	grown
يعلق	hang	hung	hung
يملك	have	had	had
يسمع	hear	heard	heard
يمسك	hold	held	held
يؤذى	hurt	hurt	hurt
يحفظ	keep	kept	kept
يعرف	know	knew	known
يؤدى/يقود	lead	led	led
يتعلم	learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
يرحل/يغادر	leave	left	left
يسلف	lend	lent	lent
يخسر	lose	lost	lost
يعنى	mean	meant	meant
يقابل	meet	met	met
يدفع	pay	paid	paid
يتصل تليفونيًا/يدق	ring	rang	rung
يجرى	run	ran	run
يقول	say	said	said
يرى	see	saw	seen

يبيع	sell	sold	sold
يرسل	send	sent	sent
يهز	shake	shook	shaken
يغطس	sink	sank	sunk
يجلس	sit	sat	sat
ينام	sleep	slept	slept
ينشر	spread	spread	spread
يقف	stand	stood	stood
يسرق	steal	stole	stolen
يأخذ	take	took	taken
يدرس	teach	taught	taught
يخبر	tell	told	told
يفكر	think	thought	thought
يلقى	throw	threw	thrown
يفهم	understand	understood	understood
يرتدى	wear	wore	worn
يكتب	write	wrote	written

رقم الإيداع: ٢٠٢٢/١٣٢٤٢

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم ١٠٤ /١٢/٢/١٤٣







New

HELLO ENGLISH LANGUAGE

First Term

2021

Skills Booklet

1st Secondary



Contents

Part 1 Skills

Part 2 Integrated Skills

Part 3 Important General Grammar



Skills

1. Reading Comprehension
2. Writing
3. Translation

PART 1





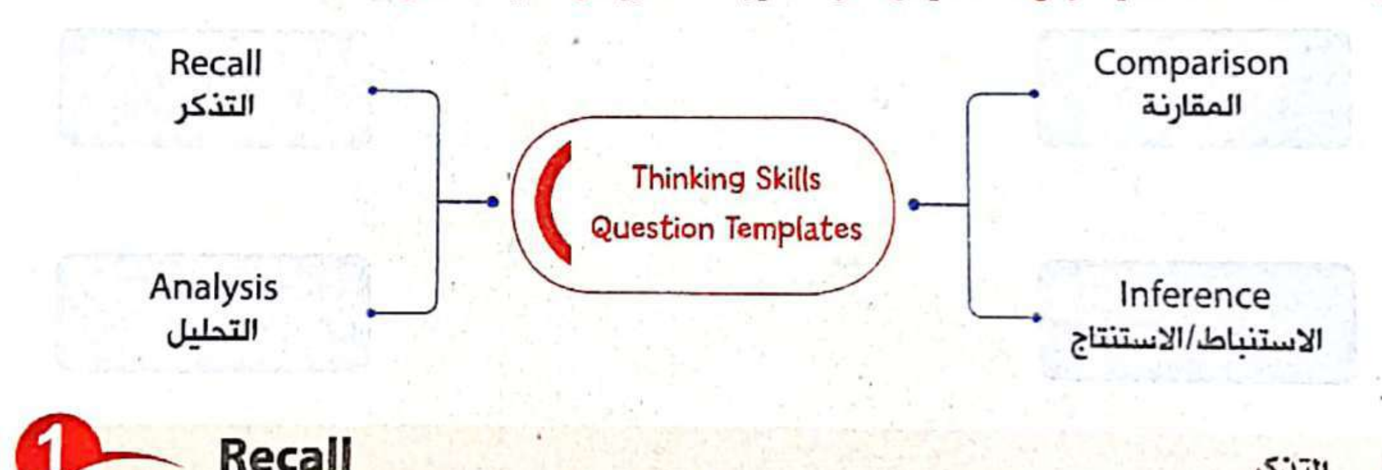
كيف تتعامل مع قطعة الفهم:

- اقرأ الأسئلة الواردة على القطعة، وهذا يبين لك ما تدور حوله القطعة، ويحدد لك المعلومات التى ستبحث عنها لاحقًا.
- اقرأ القطعة ولا تنزعج ولا تشغل بالك كثيرًا بالمفردات أو الجمل الصعبة وغير الواضحة الواردة فى القطعة، فلابد من وجود مفردات لم يسبق دراستها ... وما يلزمك هو فهم المعنى العام وتطويع المفردات حسب موضوع القطعة؛ لأن الكلمة يتغير معناها حسب السياق الواردة فيه، مع استخدام القدرة على التخمين. والمهارة هنا معرفة المعنى العام دون التوقف عند لفظ بعينه.

وتنقسم أسئلة قطعة الفهم **Comprehension** إلى نوعين:

- سؤال الاختيار من متعدد: وهنا عليك أن تكتب الإجابة المختارة فقط، وتتطلب الإجابة هنا مهارة عالية فى الفهم والتركيز.
- سؤال مقالى: يمكنك أن تكتب الإجابة بأسلوب القطعة أو أسلوبك الخاص أو الجمع بينهما.

وهناك انماط للأسئلة عديدة وهى اسئلة لقياس مهارة التفكير المختلفة ويمكن تقسيمها كالآتى:



1 Recall التذكر

Any question becomes a recall question if the answer has already been explicitly provided to the student in the text.

أى سؤال يصبح سؤالًا للتذكر إذا تم بالفعل توفير إجابة صريحة للطالب فى النص.

Who did ....?	من قام بـ ....؟
When did .... take place?	متى حدث ....؟
List the	سجل/أدرج ....
What is a ....?	ما ....؟
Name	اذكر ....

2 Analysis التحليل

Explain how does .... work.	اشرح كيف يعمل ....
Show ...... / Indicate ...... / Explain ...... / Discuss the reason	وضح/اشرح/ناقش السبب
Explain why	اشرح لماذا ....
Mention in detail .... / In brief	اذكر بالتفصيل / اذكر باختصار
What caused ....?	ماذا سبب ....؟
What is another possible cause of ....?	ما السبب الآخر المحتمل لـ ....؟
Outline / Summarise the	لخص ....
Write down = Summarise .... with words on your own.	اكتب / لخص بكلمات من عندك
In what sequence did .... happen?	فى أى تسلسل حدث ....؟
Give an example of	أعط مثالًا لـ ....
What does .... symbolise?	ماذا ترمز .... إلى؟
Analyze how	حلل كيف ....
What was the author's point of view about ....?	ما هى وجهة نظر الكاتب بخصوص ....؟
From the point of view of the writer, what ....?	من وجهة نظر الكاتب ماذا ....؟
What kind of a .... is ....?	ما نوع ....؟
What is the function of ....?	ما وظيفة ....؟
What is the purpose of ....?	ما الغرض من ....؟
What is the relationship between .... and ....?	ما العلاقة بين .... و ....؟

3 Comparison المقارنة

How is .... like ....?	كيف .... مثل ....؟
How are .... and .... different?	كيف .... و .... مختلفان؟
Compare the .... before and after	قارن .... قبل وبعد ....
Compare ..... at the beginning of the story and at the end.	قارن .... فى بداية القطعة وفى النهاية
Distinguish between .... and	ميز بين .... و ....
Compare .... with	قارن .... بـ ....
On what dimensions might you compare ..... and .....?	على أى أبعاد يمكن مقارنة .... و ....؟
Which one is the biggest / oldest / tallest?	أيهما الأكبر/الأقدم/الأطول؟

4 Inference الاستنباط/الاستنتاج

Predict what will happen if	تنبأ ماذا سوف يحدث لو ....
Solve the problem	حل مشكلة ....
Apply the rule to	طبق القاعدة على
What is the main idea of ....?	ما الفكرة الرئيسية ....؟
Put a suitable title to	ضع عنوانًا مناسبًا لـ ....
Predict how the story will end.	تنبأ كيف ستنتهى القصة.
What is the overall theme of ....?	ما هو الموضوع العام لـ ....؟
What can you conclude about ....?	ماذا تستطيع الاستنتاج بشأن ....؟
What if ....?	ماذا لو ....؟
Propose a solution to the problem of	اقترح حلًا لمشكلة ....



From your point of view, what ....?	من وجهه نظرك ماذا ....؟
Find in the passage words which mean	استخرج كلمات من القطعة تعنى ....
What does the pronoun .... refer to?	ما الذى يشير إليه الضمير ....؟
What does the underlined/black typed word .... mean?	ماذا تعنى الكلمة التى تحتها خط/ المكتوبة بأسود داكن؟
Do you agree/oppose/think ....?	هل توافق / تعارض / تعتقد ....؟
What do you think of/about ....?	ما رأيك فى ....؟
What is your opinion of/about ....?	ما رأيك فى ....؟

وللإجابة عن هذه الأسئلة إليك هذه النصائح:

١- تمهل فى استخلاص الإجابة من القطعة، فقد تكون إجابة السؤال الأول فى الفقرة الثانية، وليس شرطًا أن تكون فى الفقرة الأولى.

٢- اكتب الإجابة الصحيحة فقط ولا تزد، لأن الزيادات المبالغ فيها وغير المطلوبة تقلل من الدرجة التى يضعها المصحح.

٣- التزم بالبناء السليم للجملة من حيث الزمن والضمائر وغيره.

٤- تأنَّ فى فهم السؤال ولا تتعجل، وتذكر أن فهم السؤال يعادل نصف الإجابة.

٥- راع القواعد العامة فى الكتابة من علامات ترقيم وخلافه.

PART 1

Answered Comprehension Passage

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The following is a checklist to help you decide if it's time for you or a friend to change eating habits. Just one "warning sign" should be enough reason to take action. You shouldn't think of "junk food" the minute you start feeling hungry. There never is an acceptable reason for this.

It is a definite sign of a habit that is on the way to becoming an addiction. Comfort eating is usually associated with junk food and in general high calorie food that is also high in carbohydrates [starch and sugar] and fat. If you run to the nearest fast food chain every time you feel down, you know it is out of control. A healthy meal does not have to be flavorless and boring. When pushed, you can picture appetising dishes that do not contain fries or fatty ingredients but you still prefer to get a hold of a beef burger or a pizza. You know it's not the best food for you. You know that you are going to feel sleepy and tired after you have eaten.

To be honest, healthy is a relative term. It all depends on what your options are. There are "healthier" choices you can make even at a fast food restaurant. You might, for example, order salad as a side dish instead of a second helping of fries. You could avoid ketchup or mayonnaise or eat a chicken burger. You know all this, you have promised yourself to do it next time you are there, but somehow it never happens. You keep on insisting that those dishes take longer to prepare.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Thinking of "junk food" when you're hungry is a ....

a) *sign of addiction*

b) sign of healthy eating

c) common eating habit

d) sign of change

2. If you are determined to change your diet, you can make healthy choices ....

a) in the country

b) near the sea

c) *at fast food restaurants*

d) in supermarkets

3. Although people know what is good for them they ....
   a) choose to eat healthy, nutritious food
   b) *choose to eat fatty, high calorie food*
   c) decide to eat fatty, low calorie food
   d) decide to eat low calorie fries and pizza
4. If you want to be healthy, you should ....
   a) *avoid fatty and fried food*
   b) eat salad and fatty food
   c) avoid salad and condiments
   d) order high calorie food and soft drinks

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Do you eat healthy food or not? Why?
   Student's own answer.
6. What does "junk food" mean?
   Fast food.
7. Give two reasons why doctors prefer eating healthy food.
   Student's own answer.



Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

1 Charles was a professor with a huge house and a fortune. Today he lives in a small caravan where there is only second-hand furniture. There are no signs that he was a rich man. He gets his clothes and other things from charity shops. This change is not a tragedy. Charles was happy to give up the lifestyle of a rich man. He was tired of being a person who had everything and many people have nothing. He made the choice to give all his money away. He says <u>it</u> has brought him happiness. "A few years ago," says Charles, "I was a millionaire, but I knew there were a lot of hungry people in the world." So, he gave away all his money to charities. When he had some left, he gave away small banknotes in the streets of local poor areas. Charles believes that many people want to earn a lot of money so that they will not have any worries. However, most people never make much money. He decided to drop out and has discovered that having only a little money makes you free. Are there any things he misses? "No, I'm much happier now. I wouldn't go back to being rich for anything – no way."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. According to the text, Charles has ....

a) a family b) a huge house
c) everything d) only a little money

2. Now, Charles is very happy because ....

a) he is a millionaire b) he has no money
c) he misses nothing d) he lives in a small caravan

3. Charles knew there were .... hungry people in the world.

a) a few b) many c) no d) some

4. Most people want to earn much money to .... worries.

a) have b) increase c) find d) avoid

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Would you like to be a millionaire? Why? Why not?

6. Compare Charles' life in the past to his life now.

7. What does the underlined word "<u>it</u>" refer to?

2 Over the past twenty years, computers and the internet have become more and more important to us. In fact, computer technology continues to grow every day. We seem to use computers for almost everything these days, in shopping, driving our car, or communicating with relatives and colleagues. This explosion in computer technology has resulted in a rush to install computers in every classroom and to "wire" every school to the internet. In the USA, between 1984, and 1997 alone, the number of computers in secondary schools increased to more than 8 million sets. Both educators and students alike have been forced to keep up with this new wave of technology. Teachers have found that even though they themselves are still trying to learn the most basics of computer skills, they are expected to teach students about computer know-how.

Few people would question the role that computers could play in education. Some educators claim that students given the opportunity to use them in a classroom setting will get better grades than those who learn without having had any computer experience. These people say that just as computer technology has improved the way cars work, computers will make the classroom a better place to teach concepts and ideas that students need to become brighter, more successful adults.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Teachers are expected to teach students how to use computers although they ....
   a) know how to use a computer
   b) are still learning how to use computers
   c) know all the basics of computer skills
   d) are forced to use computers
2. "Few people would question the role that computers could play" means ....
   a) many people are certain about the importance of computers
   b) some people ask questions about computers
   c) not many people doubt the importance of computers
   d) some people want more computers
3. The phrasal verb "resulted in" means ....
   a) led to b) objected c) supported d) denied
4. The best title to the passage is ".........."
   a) Teachers b) Educators
   c) The computer and the internet d) Secondary schools

B) Answer the following questions:

5. How could computers help students become more successful?
6. Give some examples of everyday uses of computers in our life.
7. In your opinion, what are the possible disadvantages of using computers in education?

3 Your smile depends on simple dental care habits such as, for example, teeth brushing. Oral health begins with clean teeth. Keeping your teeth's surface clean can prevent oral disease.

The American Dental Association recommends a number of brushing rules to promote oral health. The first rule is to brush teeth at least twice a day using suitable equipment. Secondly, one should practise good brushing techniques. These techniques include rinsing the toothbrush with water after using it, keeping it uncovered in an upright position, and not storing it in closed containers which can encourage the growth of bacteria. The third rule is to replace the toothbrush every three months – or sooner if it becomes worn – to prevent painful and uncomfortable brushing. Finally, to reach tight spaces between teeth, it is recommended to use special wooden or plastic picks and brushes designed to clean between them.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ....
   - a) brushes
   - b) teeth
   - c) spaces
   - d) picks
2. The word "promote" in the second paragraph means ....
   - a) discourage
   - b) prevent
   - c) improve
   - d) collect
3. The third rule is to ....
   - a) brush your teeth at least twice a day
   - b) replace the toothbrush every three months
   - c) keep your teeth's surface clean
   - d) practise good brushing techniques
4. It is not recommended to keep the toothbrush in ....
   - a) wooden picks
   - b) plastic picks
   - c) upright position
   - d) closed containers

B) Answer the following questions:

5. How can we avoid oral disease?
6. Why should you replace your toothbrush every three months?
7. What can we do to reach tight spaces between teeth?

4 Successful marriage is the most effective form of social support; it relieves the effects of stress, and leads to better mental and physical health. While many studies have shown the great importance of social support, it is still clear exactly what this means. Most likely it consists of being a sympathetic listener or offering helpful advice; providing emotional support and social acceptance; giving actual help or financial help, and simply doing ordinary things together, like eating and drinking. Husbands seem to benefit much more from marriage than wives do. Married women are in better physical and mental health, and are happier than single women, but these effects are nearly twice as great for men. Various explanations have been considered, but the most plausible is that wives provide more social support than husbands. Perhaps men need it more? They are more exposed to stresses at work, have worse health, and die earlier than women.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "plausible" is closest in meaning to ....
   - a) untrue
   - b) ambiguous
   - c) reasonable
   - d) vague
2. Successful marriage is useful for ....
   - a) social support
   - b) mental and physical health
   - c) plausible support
   - d) social acceptance
3. .... are more exposed to stresses and have worse health.
   - a) Women
   - b) Men
   - c) Children
   - d) Babies
4. Married women are .... than single women.
   - a) more stressed
   - b) living longer
   - c) happier
   - d) worse

B) Answer the following questions:

5. How effective is successful marriage from the social point of view?
6. Why are men in need of more social support than women?
7. In what aspect did married women excel single ones?

5 As long as we live, we continue to learn, and the education we receive helps us to keep on learning. We are taught reading and writing so that we can learn further knowledge and learn how to find out things for ourselves. What is learned can vary widely. It may be manners, beliefs or attitudes, or it could be words and figures. It might be the technique of running a machine, or a skill in playing a musical instrument. Those who teach can also vary. Teaching may be done by teachers in school, but it may also be done by parents, older brothers or sisters or friends. Everyone has their own source of education, such as newspapers, television, books, films and museums. Every factory worker or farmer must at least know how to read and write. People like engineers, doctors and teachers need a high degree of training. In some countries, parents have to pay a lot of money to send their children to good schools. Many parents cannot send their children to school because of the expenses.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We continue to learn ....
   - a) at school only
   - b) only during childhood
   - c) from birth to death
   - d) at work only
2. The underlined pronoun "their" refers to the ....
   - a) schools
   - b) parents
   - c) friends
   - d) anyone
3. What helps us to continue learning?
   - a) More education.
   - b) Parents.
   - c) Friends.
   - d) Doctors.
4. Who needs a high degree of training?
   - a) Engineers, doctors and mechanics.
   - b) Engineers, doctors and teachers.
   - c) Farmers, doctors and teachers.
   - d) Engineers, cleaners and teachers.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What is the main idea of the passage?
6. Why do you think workers and farmers need to know how to read and write?
7. Name a source of education not mentioned in the passage.

6 Today, I'm a teacher. Many years ago, I used to have summer jobs. Once I worked in a factory for gloves. I liked the people who were working there. They used to treat me as if I were their son. <u>They</u> helped me with my work. I learned a lot of things from them. The summer after that one, I worked as a waiter in a restaurant. It was hard work. However, money enabled me to do many things I was unable to do before. I could join a swimming club without worrying about fees. I began to enjoy my spare time. I had a lot of time to enjoy outdoor sports. Today, I tell myself that I will never forget those days and the experience I gained.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Which job do you think was better for the writer?
   a) In the restaurant.
   b) In the factory for gloves.
   c) In the factory of clothes.
   d) In the hotel.
2. The writer was not a member in the swimming club before the second job because ....
   a) he didn't have enough time
   b) he doesn't like swimming
   c) it was far from his house
   d) he didn't have enough money
3. The writer will never forget the summer jobs due to the .... he got.
   a) experiment b) experience
   c) excursion d) exercise
4. People at the gloves factory were ....
   a) friendly b) cruel
   c) rude d) impolite

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What was the second job that the writer had?
6. Did he benefit from the second job? How?
7. What does the underlined pronoun "<u>They</u>" refer to?

7 Most of the passengers were fast asleep in the eight o'clock train. It was already half past nine. I was having tea while my wife was reading a letter. My little daughter was eating her ice cream. Suddenly we were all shocked to hear a very loud cry from a young lady. She screamed, "Help! He's going to kill me". Many people ran towards her. We asked her where the murderer was. She looked around herself for a few moments, then at us, and finally said in a whisper. "What a terrible dream! He killed my mother and sister. That thief! He had a gun, and a big knife!" We comforted her saying that she would feel better; we returned each to his seat. I observed an old man sitting beside her. He brought her a cold drink and kept talking with her all through the last fifty-five minutes of the journey. I wondered what they were discussing. When we got off at the station I approached the man and said to him, "It was kind of you to keep talking with her to help her to be quiet," He said, "Oh, no! I only wanted to prevent her from sleeping again and having another dream!"

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The train journey took .... when the young lady cried.
   - a) two hours
   - b) one hour and a half
   - c) fifty-five minutes
   - d) a hundred and forty-five minutes
2. One of the passengers gave the young lady ....
   - a) an ice cream
   - b) a cold drink
   - c) a gun
   - d) a letter
3. Why did the young lady cry?
   - a) A thief attacked her.
   - b) The passengers mocked her.
   - c) She was dreaming.
   - d) She was over the moon.
4. Why did the old man keep talking with the lady?
   - a) To pacify her.
   - b) To show her that he was kind.
   - c) To stop her from sleeping again.
   - d) To help her dream more.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. How many dreams did the lady have?
6. What does the underlined pronoun "her" refer to?
7. What do you think of the old man mentioned in the passage? Justify your answer.

8 Tokyo is one of the biggest cities in the world. Over 20 million people live and work in Tokyo, and important companies have their offices there. But most streets don't have names. So how can you find your way there? People in Tokyo are very good at giving directions. They can usually explain how to go home or to the office from the nearest train station. People in Tokyo often use maps when they give directions. Advertisements in newspapers usually have a small map to help you. If you're going to visit someone's house, it's good to ask him to draw, or fax you a map of the local area. If you get lost, the best idea is to go to a police station. In Japan, each neighbourhood has a small one, and the police officers there have a map of all areas. Giving directions is an important part of their job!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. According to the reading passage, what should you do if you get lost in Tokyo?

a) You should go back home.

b) You should go to a hospital.

c) You should get rid of the map.

d) You should go to the police station.

2. What is the problem with most Tokyo streets?

a) They have names.

b) They have strange names.

c) They have no names.

d) They have long names.

3. The underlined word "one" refers to ....

a) a very large building

b) a police station

c) a part of a city

d) a direction

4. "Over" means ....

a) exceed

b) below

c) equal

d) the same

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What is the best title to this passage?

6. Is a police station important in big cities? Why/Why not?

7. List 5 ways to know directions (four from the passage and one of your own).

9 People think that children should play sports. Playing sports is fun. However, it can have negative effects on children. It may promote aggressive behaviour in some children. According to research, 40 million kids play sports in the US. Of these, 18 million say they have been yelled at or called names while playing sports. This leaves many children with a bad impression of sports. They think sports are just aggressive.

Many researchers believe that parents and coaches are the main cause of too much aggression in children's sports. They believe children copy aggressive adult behaviour. Parents and coaches are powerful teachers because children usually look up to them. Often these adults themselves behave aggressively, sending children the message that winning is everything. At children's sporting events, parents may yell insults at other players or cheer when their child behaves aggressively. As well, children may be taught that hurting other players is acceptable. In addition, the media makes violence seem exciting. Children watch adult sports games and see violent behaviour replayed over and over on television.

As a society, we really need to face up to this problem and do something about it. Parents and coaches should act as better examples for children. They also need to teach children better values. They should teach children to enjoy themselves whether they win or not. If we make some basic changes, children might learn to enjoy sports again.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
   a) Children often become like their parents.
   b) Children need to play sports in school.
   c) Playing sports may have negative results.
   d) Some sports can cause health problems.
2. Which is described as the main cause of more aggressive playing?
   a) Adults. b) Naughty children. c) New rules in sports. d) Other players.
3. What does the writer suggest?
   a) Violent sports should not be shown on TV.
   b) Children should not play sports.
   c) Coaches study child's psychology.
   d) Adults should be good examples for children.
4. According to the article, the underlined expression "called names" means ....
   a) their names are said in a loud voice. b) their names are whispered to others.
   c) to be described using bad words. d) to be excluded from the team list.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Who is a famous sports star in your country? Why is he or she a star?
6. Is this sports star a good example for young people? Why/ Why not?
7. How do you think we should approach a problem and how can we solve it effectively?



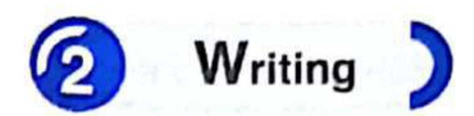
10 More and more people are discovering that sharing and talking about their favourite books with others can be as rewarding as the act of reading itself. For people who feel that they are too busy to sit down with a book, a book club helps them schedule time to read. Others have gained self-confidence by practising in or leading a discussion. And they enjoy the chance to make new friends. A successful book club should have a group that is small enough so even the quiet people can be heard but also big enough for many different opinions. The best arrangement is a mixture of ages, sexes and backgrounds for more reading discussion. To make the meeting so smooth, a leader should be appointed. The leader will usually start the discussion by asking what the author's main idea was. Book club members should never be afraid to offer their opinions even if they don't like a book. They just need to be prepared to explain why they didn't like something.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What must people do before they meet?
   - a) They must phone each other.
   - b) They must call people of their own age.
   - c) They must prepare their ideas.
   - d) They must buy some flowers and presents.
2. What does a leader discuss at first?
   - a) The main idea of a book.
   - b) The conflicts between the members.
   - c) The opinions of the readers.
   - d) The fear and phobia of the members.
3. "Smooth" means ....
   - a) easy
   - b) sad
   - c) dead
   - d) gloomy
4. Leadership and self-confidence are ....
   - a) skills
   - b) quantities
   - c) societies
   - d) bullets

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Where, do you think, can people meet for a book club?
6. What kind of books could those people read or discuss?
7. Describe the variety in these meetings.



• هناك عدة أشكال من الكتابة سيتم تناولها بشكل موجز فى السطور التالية ومنها:

An essay – A blog – A short story – A biography – An email



• المقال من الأسئلة التى عادة ما تكون مخيفة للطلاب، حيث يواجه معظم الطلاب صعوبة فى كتابتها.

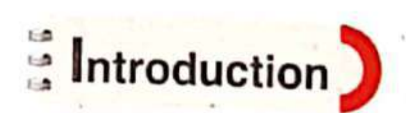
• المقال هو عبارة عن طرح فكرة للنقاش من خلال مجموعة من الفقرات المرتبطة ببعضها البعض مع تقديم وجهة نظر محددة، ولابد أن ينقسم إلى عدة فقرات مرتبة ومخططة يتم فيها شرح وتوضيح جوانب الموضوع المختلفة.

• تحديد نوع المقال (حسب الموضوع المطلوب الكتابة فيه) وأنواع المقال هى:

- Narrative Essay — مقال قصصى (هنا يكون عن قصة أو موقف تعرضت له)
- Descriptive Essay — مقال وصفى (وصف مكان أو شىء)
- Expository Essay — مقال تفسيرى (حقائق ومعلومات عن موضوع محدد)
- Argumentative Essay — مقال جدلى (تناول وجهات نظر مختلفة فى موضوع واحد)
- Persuasive Essay — مقال إقناعى (توضيح وجهات نظر مختلفة مع ترجيح وتفضيل وجهة نظر محددة)

• ويتم تقسيم المقال كما يلى:

1. Introduction. المقدمة
2. Body paragraph. صلب الموضوع
3. Conclusion. الخاتمة



• هى أول فقرة فى المقال والهدف منها هو طرح الفكرة العامة للموضوع والإشارة إلى الهدف الرئيسى له.

• لابد أن تتضمن المقدمة الفكرة الرئيسية topic sentence و لابد أن يفهم ويعرف منها القارئ بالضبط عن ماذا سيكون بقية المقال.

• من الممكن أن تكون المقدمة عبارة عن جمل عامة تصف الفكرة التى تعبر عن الموضوع أو جملة تتضمن تعريفًا بالموضوع أو حكمة أو أسئلة عامة يتم طرحها لإثارة القارئ.



• وهناك بعض الجمل التى تصلح كمقدمة للموضوعات الايجابية ... مثل:

- It is taken for granted that .... plays a vital role in our life; this is simply because the progress of any country depends on it.

من المسلم به أن .... يلعب دورًا حيويًا فى حياتنا، وهذا ببساطة لأن تقدم أى دولة يعتمد عليه.

- Fancy holding my pen to write about .... I'm sure that everyone will tackle it from a different angle, but I will focus on the main points.

أتخيل أن أمسك بقلمى لأكتب عن .... وأنا متأكد أن كل شخص سوف يتناوله من زاوية مختلفة ولكننى سوف أركز على النقاط الرئيسية.

• وهناك بعض الجمل التى تصلح كمقدمة للموضوعات السلبية ... مثل:

- I reveal no secret when I say that we all agree that .... stands as an obstacle عقبة in the way of our progress. Let's shed light on some of the main aspects of this thorny problem.

لا أفشى سرًا عندما أقول إننا جميعًا متفقون أن .... يقف كعقبة فى طريق تقدمنا. هيا بنا نسلط الضوء على بعض الجوانب الرئيسية لهذه المشكلة الشائكة.

- It can't be denied that .... is one of the worst and most complicated problems. I don't exaggerate when I say that it has made our life like hell. Let's shed light on some of the main aspects of this thorny problem.

لا يمكن إنكار أن .... هى واحدة من أسوء وأكثر المشكلات تعقيدًا وأنا لا أبالغ عندما أقول إنها جعلت حياتنا كالجحيم. هيا بنا نسلط الضوء على بعض الجوانب الرئيسية لهذه المشكلة الشائكة.

• وهناك بعض الجمل التى تصلح كمقدمة للموضوعات التى تتكلم عن المزايا والعيوب ... مثل:

It is crystal clear that .... has a lot of advantages (pros/merits) and disadvantages (demerits/cons). Let's shed light on the main aspects of this subject.

من الواضح تماما أن .... له مزايا وعيوب ، هيا بنا نسلط الضوء على بعض الجوانب الرئيسية لهذا الموضوع.

Body Paragraph

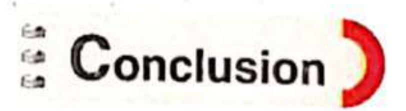
• لابد أن يتكون صلب الموضوع من فقرتين أو ثلاثة على الأقل ... كل فقرة تتحدث عن جانب معين من الموضوع ... فمثلا إذا كان للموضوع مزايا وعيوب يكون الأول عن المزايا والثانى عن العيوب، وهكذا.

• يتم مناقشة وشرح ما تم إجماله فى المقدمة حيث يتم عرض تفاصيل الفكرة الأساسية.

• الحرص على استخدام جمل بسيطة وسهلة ولابد أن تراعى بداية الجمل بالفاعل يليه الفعل على حسب زمن الجملة ثم المفعول.

• الروابط فى المقال هى كلمات تساعد الكاتب فى تنظيم كتابته بحيث يستطيع ربط الجمل ببعضها البعض عن طريقها أوالتحول من فكرة إلى فكرة أخرى بطريقة سليمة ومنها:

Giving examples	إعطاء أمثلة	For example/ For instance/ such as ....
Contrast	التناقض	But/ Although/ Even though/ On the other hand/ However
Giving reasons	إعطاء أسباب	because/ as/ because of/ owing to/ due to ....
Showing results	بيان النتائج	So/ therefore/ Consequently/ and as a result
Adding information	إضافة معلومات	And/ In addition/ Moreover/ Also/ above all
Arranging incidents	ترتيب أحداث	First/ second/ then/ finally
Giving opinions	إعطاء آراء	I think / I believe / In my opinion / As far as I'm concerned



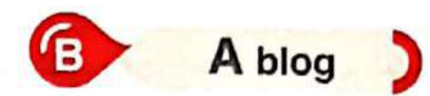
Conclusion

• يتم تلخيص الفكرة الرئيسية فيه بصيغة أخرى بحيث تختلف عما كتبناه فى المقدمة من حيث الكلمات، ومن الممكن أن تتشابه معها فى المعنى.

• تكون الخاتمة عبارة عن نصيحة أو اقتراح أو رأى ... مثل:

- To sum up/ In conclusion / In brief ....
- Finally, it is quite clear that .... is really ....
- To sum up, one can say that .... is really ....
- In conclusion, in my opinion, ... is really ....
- To sum up, why don't we ..../ we should ....





B A blog

- موقع إلكترونى أو صفحة شخصية، وهى بمثابة مُفكرة أو ساحة طرح للآراء الشخصية، والمدخلات فيه تكون مرتبة ترتيبًا تصاعديًا حسب الزمن.
- هناك عدة أنواع من المدونات blogs نتعامل معها وأهمها هى المدونات الشخصية personal blogs
- يوميات مستمرة أو تعليقات من قبل أفراد يكتبون عن تجاربهم اليومية وأفكارهم وأشعارهم، ويسمحون للقراء بالمشاركة، ومنها مثلاً موقع Facebook – Twitter
- Article blogs مدونات إخبارية أو مقالية.
- وهى التى توفر ملخصًا للأخبار عن موضوع معين ومصحوبة بتلخيص بسيط قصير، وتتكون من الآتى:

1. Blog title
   - عنوان المقالة (كلمة أو كلمتين للتلخيص)

   (Wonderful day – A nice journey – Good news)
2. Summary
   - ملخص (شرح مبسط للعنوان)
3. Body
   - نص المقال (يحتوى على المادة الأساسية للمقال)
4. End of the article
   - الخاتمة

C A short story

With some brainstorming you can learn how to write a successful short story:

- هناك عدة أمور يجب مراعاتها عند كتابة القصة القصيرة:

1. Come up with a plot التفكير فى حبكة القصة.

- Think about what the story is going to be about and what is going to happen in it.

2. Main character الشخصية الرئيسية.

- Focus on one or two main characters at the most. The main character has a clear description, features or qualities. He or she may be good or bad.

3. Setting (place and time) المكان والزمان.

- Choose a setting that is interesting to you and that can be interesting for your reader.

4. Create a conflict for the main character خلق صراع للشخصية الرئيسية.

- The main character has to deal with a case or a problem. Your main character may be trapped يقع in a bad or dangerous situation.

5. Provide solutions for the problems or a bad situation تقديم حلول للمشكلات والمواقف السيئة

- Let your main character find how to solve the problem that he or she faces or how to get out of a bad situation.

6. Ending النهاية

- Think of an ending with a surprise. An ending that will leave your reader surprised, or shocked.

D A biography of a person 

To write about a person especially famous people, we should follow the following steps:

- للكتابة عن حياة شخص معين وخاصة المشاهير يجب اتباع الخطوات التالية:

1. An interesting introduction to illustrate that you see this person as a model.
   كتابة مقدمة شيقة توضح اختيارك لهذا الشخص كنموذج.
2. Who is this person (the name and the job)
   أن تذكر عمل الشخص ووظيفته.
3. Where and when this person was born.
   كتابة مكان وتاريخ ميلاده.
4. The person's education and work.
   الكتابة عن تعليمه وشهاداته وأين يعمل الآن أو كان يعمل.
5. The person's achievements.
   إنجازات هذا الشخص.
   - This part is important as it shows why you admire him or her.
6. The effect of this person on society and how we benefited from him.
   تأثير هذا الشخص على المجتمع، وكيف استفدنا منه.
7. Say whether this person is still alive or dead.
   توضيح هل هذا الشخص ما زال حيًا أم متوفًى.
8. End your biography illustrating what we should do to be like this person.
   قم فى بنهاية السيرة بتوضيح ما يجب علينا فعله لنكون مثل هذا الشخص.

 Email writing 

الرسالة الإلكترونية لها شكل ثابت، وهو كالتالى:

New message — ✕

To : .... اسم المُرسَل إليه وعنوان البريد الإلكترونى

From : .... اسم كاتب الرسالة وعنوان البريد الإلكترونى

Subject : .... موضوع الرسالة

Dear: ....,

....

....

Regards,
Best wishes,
Yours,
اسم المُرسَل

SEND

Model Essay

The effects of following healthy habits

Introduction

The best way to live a healthy life is to eat healthy and do more active physical activities. Healthy eating and exercising have a big effect on your future success, maintaining a healthy body and preventing obesity or overweight. It is a rule that everyone should live by and it brings many benefits to your life.

Body

Researches prove that staying healthy, getting enough sleep, and being physically fit help you in school by performing better. Also, developing healthy habits leads to many achievements in school. Children who perform many different physical activities remain in a healthy fit body. Children should have a minimum of 60 minutes of physical activities per day recommended by the centres for disease control and prevention. If you get enough exercise per day, then your body will function properly. In addition, children who exercise gain lifelong benefits like having a healthy body, flexibility, and stronger and healthier bones and muscles.

Conclusion

When we develop healthy habits, we can learn to make healthier decisions or choices like when and what to eat and when to exercise. We can also learn to keep our bodies fit. In life, we have many rules to live by and developing healthy habits should be one of them.

Pollution

Pollution is one of the most serious problems that face not only Egypt but also the whole world. Pollution is the greatest threat to humanity. There are different kinds of pollution like air pollution, water pollution and noise pollution. Air pollution is mainly caused by smoke of mills and factories. The sound and noise of loudspeakers, vehicles' loud horns, etc. cause sound pollution. The dirty chemical waste from factories causes water pollution.

No one can deny that pollution affects all forms of life badly. It can also cause many health problems such as cancer and heart disease. Above all, pollution is the main cause of damaging ozone layer; it causes global warming which in turn results in a lot of natural disasters such as hurricanes, floods and forests' fires.

To solve the problem, the government must impose and enforce laws to prevent pollution. The government also should reward the factories which control their waste and use technology to check pollution. Governments also reward the associations which work for plantation. Cutting down trees must be strictly prohibited if it is done without reason. We should also plant a lot of trees and plants to cut down pollution.

Finally, we should all cooperate to solve this problem which threatens our lives on the planet.

Reading is the first source of information

Reading is probably one of the most important activities and hobbies that anyone can do. Those who read can discover new ideas, concepts, places, and people. Reading is so important in our lives for many reasons; firstly, even if we have a stressful day, a book can easily distract us from our own problems.

Reading has the ability to calm us down. Secondly, reading is also a way for children to reach out to the world. So, reading should be encouraged among children at an early age as it increases children's vocabulary and spelling more than talking or direct teaching. Reading forces us to look at words that we might not have seen or heard in our lives. The third reason why reading is so important is that reading improves our thinking process. Reading books requires readers to think and imagine about different details in the book such as characters and plot; this helps us to improve our thinking process. Since the readers must concentrate in order to read, they will improve their concentration and thinking abilities. Finally, reading can widen our scopes and help us to know all cultures of the world.

Everyone knows that a person who reads will be successful and a person who doesn't will either not do as well as others or eventually fail in life. "No entertainment is so cheap, or introduces everlasting pleasures as much as reading. It will not only refresh our minds and souls but it will give us a great outlook towards life.

A situation that happened to one of your friends

My friend Kamal was looking around for a used car. He saw an advertisement in the paper for a Toyota for twenty thousand pounds.

He rang up and arranged to go round and have a look. The car was brand new and spotless but Khalid told the woman who showed him the car that he liked to think about it. Really, he didn't think very long. An hour later, he was back. He asked the woman some questions and she said all she wanted for it was only twenty thousand pounds. He asked to try it and he was given the keys. The engine started at the first touch. He backed it out and tested everything. He paid the money, filled out the change of ownership and took the car. Khalid couldn't believe it was all legal. He said he was sure there must be something fishy about it and he didn't want to put himself in trouble.

So instead of going home, he drove straight to the police station where he left a note for the police to check his car. The police officer told him that everything is legal but the woman hadn't told him everything. Her husband was taken dead out of the car and soon no one wanted to buy it. Khalid wished he had never known about that. He himself felt uncomfortable.

Although he was able to make a profit of many thousand pounds, he still regrets selling the car.



The bad side of mobile phones

I have believed for a while that mobile phones are harmful to our health, due to the radiation that we're exposed to. Scientists think that mobile phones should be used as little as possible. A lot of scientists believe they are harmful to your health. Mobile phones are particularly bad for children. The phone companies will tell you that they are safe. But remember they are selling a product so they are hardly going to put you off buying their product by telling you it is unsafe.

After all, people said that smoking, pesticides and so on were either safe or wouldn't cause you serious harm. However they were wrong as they caused cancer, disability and terrible illnesses. In fact, research claims mobile phones could kill more people than smoking.

Above all, they can cause headaches, tiredness and memory loss in some people. We have so much technology. Now, there is 24 hour television, computers, phones and so on. Electric gadgets in the bedroom can also cause sleep problems. But if you can't do without them, at least make sure you don't have a computer, wireless phone or mobile in your bedroom or at least make sure that they are turned off. Cordless phones emit a high amount of radiation. So keep your technology use to a limited amount of time each day. Mobile phones can cause brain damage if they are used for a long period of time over the years. Always remember that your health is very important as you might find you are unable to return to good health once you have lost it.

Coronavirus

Nations around the world are battling with a major outbreak of a new deadly virus. The coronavirus, which started in the Chinese city of Wuhan, on 22nd January 2020 has already killed thousands of people from around the world. Countries highly affected include China, America, the UK and Italy. The infected people are currently subject to quarantine at a hospital. Many countries have been on lockdown for many weeks and people have not been to work, school and all public transport has been suspended.

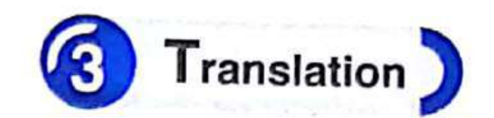
In other countries schools have been closed and people have been told not to travel. The new coronavirus is suspected to have come from illegally traded animals in a Wuhan market. The virus mutated and spread from an animal to a human. There are fears it could mutate and spread further. Scientists say the virus is contagious and can be passed from person to person.

The World Health Organisation, which declared the outbreak as an international health emergency, recently updated the global risk assessment to "very high." It has also advised the public to wash their hands more than the usual besides delaying or avoiding travel to affected areas. Common signs of the infection include fever, cough, shortness of breath and breathing difficulties.

Exercises

Write an essay of ONE HUNDRED FIFTY (150) words on:

1. The job you would like to do when you leave school.
2. Purposes of using the internet.
3. Social work is a means through which Egyptian youth can help society.
4. How to keep the environment clean.
5. Reasons for happiness are different from one person to another.
6. How do you think life will be like in the year 2050?
7. What can we do to overcome the problem of unemployment?
8. Your own ideas to develop the educational system in Egypt.
9. Friendship.
10. Your favourite holiday place.
11. A person you consider as a model.
12. Making use of your free time.
13. A blog post on the problems children have because of the internet.
14. A summary of a novel you read.
15. An email to a friend telling him about your future plans including education and work.



3 Translation

- What is "Translation"?

First, we should know that the word "Translation" means changing the written words from one language into another language.

- الترجمة فن وليست مجرد حفظ كلمات فقط، فهى عبارة عن كيفية الاعتماد على توصيل المعنى المراد من الجملة، وليست ترجمة حرفية للكلمات.
- القدرة على التخمين لمعانى الكلمات الصعبة من سياق ما نعرفه من كلمات هو أساس الترجمة.
- الترجمة ليست مجرد نقل كلمة، ولفظ، بل هى نقل لمفاهيم الكلام وربطها بالنص.

- Language is meaning-based

When we want to say something or translate a sentence, we should know that the meaning in general is more important as any language depends on general meaning not meaning of every separate word.

- عند ترجمة جملة أو التحدث بشىء يجب أن نعرف أن المعنى العام هو الأكثر أهمية حيث إن اللغة تعتمد على المعنى وليس ترجمة كل كلمة منفصلة.

So, translation is considered an art which depends on how to transfer the whole meaning of the sentence and also the ability to guess the meaning of new and difficult words from the words that we know.

- من هنا تعتبر الترجمة فن يعتمد على كيفية نقل المعنى العام للجملة و القدرة على تخمين معانى الكلمات الجديدة والصعبة من الكلمات التى نعرفها.
- لاحظ المثال التالى:
- «يجب أن يتحد الشعب المصرى لمواجهة تحديات العصر».

Egyptians must (should) unite (work together/ help each other) to face (stand against) the challenges (difficulties) of the age (present time).

- لاحظ أننا استخدمنا أكثر من معنى لنفس الكلمة و ليس الشرط هنا أن نترجم ترجمة حرفية، ولكن الأهم توصيل المعنى.



- لاحظ مثالًا آخر.

"I had my lunch and then went out to meet my friends to have a nice time together and we really were over the moon."

- هنا لو تمت الترجمة الحرفية فسوف يضيع المعنى تمامًا، فمثلًا كلمة have نعرفها بمعنى يمتلك و لكن هنا لا يتناسب المعنى الحرفى مع المعنى العام.
- أيضًا كلمة over the moon لو تم ترجمتها حرفيًا (فوق القمر) لضاع المعنى السليم و هو (سعيد جدًا).
- تناولت الغذاء ثم خرجت لمقابلة أصدقائى لكى نقضى سويًا وقتًا جميلًا وبالفعل كنا سعداء جدًا.

What is the difference between "Translation into Arabic and Translation into English"?

- الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية تعتمد على المعنى، وتخمين الكلمات الصعبة وليس هناك شرط لتكوين الجملة والزمن.

"The government tries to solve most of our problems in Egypt."

- تحاول الحكومة (الحكومة تحاول) أن تحل (حل) معظم مشاكلنا فى مصر.
- أما الترجمة من اللغة العربية إلى اللغة الإنجليزية فتعتبر الأصعب حيث لابد من معرفة تكوين الجملة و الحفاظ على الزمن السليم و كذلك كتابة الكلمات بشكل صحيح.
- «تلعب الرياضة دورًا هامًا فى بناء الجسم و الشخصية»

Play sport role important in building body and character. (×)

- هنا ترجمة حرفية ليست صحيحة سواء تكوين الجملة أو المعنى

Sport بدأنا هنا بالفاعل plays الفعل مفرد an important role الصفة قبل الاسم in building (forming) body and personality.



Translation from English into Arabic:

١ لابد من البعد عن الترجمة الحرفية و توصيل المعنى هو الأهم كما أوضحنا سابقا.

٢ من الأفضل أن يتحول المبنى للمجهول إلى المعلوم.

- A lot of new schools were built by the government.

لقد قامت الحكومة ببناء الكثير من المدارس الجديدة.

٣ من الممكن استخدام بعض الكلمات و الحروف من عندنا لتحسين المعنى.

- Tourism is one of the most important sources of our national income and hard currency.

تعتبر السياحة (إن السياحة) واحدة من أهم مصادر الدخل القومى لدينا و كذلك العملة الصعبة.

٤ الالتزام بزمن الجملة فى الترجمة من حيث (مضارع أو ماضٍ أو مستقبل).

٥ يتم ترجمة have/has + p.p. إلى «لقد».

٦ لا يظهر v. to be فى المضارع ولكن من الممكن أن يظهر فى الماضى.

- Music is the food of soul.

- الموسيقى غذاء الروح.

- Ali was at home when I phoned.

- كان على فى البيت عندما اتصلت.

٧ v. to have يترجم إلى أكثر من معنى حسب سياق الجملة (لـ - عند - يملك - لدى - يقتنى - يتناول - يصاب - يناقش - ......)

- We had our meals.

- تناولنا وجباتنا.

- My son had a serious disease.

- أصيب ابنى بمرض خطير.

- Hala has a nice car.

- تمتلك هالة سيارة جميلة.

- Egypt has a lot of relations with the world countries.

- لمصر علاقات كثيرة بدول العالم.



2 Translation from Arabic into English:

١ لابد من تحديد أجزاء الجملة حيث إن الجملة فى اللغة الإنجليزية لابد أن تبدأ بالفاعل ثم الفعل ثم المفعول ....

Subject – verb – object ....

تلعب مصر دورًا كبيرًا فى الشرق الأوسط

- Egypt plays a great role in the Middle East.

٢ الالتزام بقواعد اللغة من حيث الأزمنة الصحيحة للجملة.

لقد لعبت مصر مباراة رائعة بالأمس.

- Egypt played a wonderful match yesterday.

الزمن هنا ماض بسيط حيث حدد وقته و علامته.

لقد اجتاز الاختبار وسيتقدم للجامعة الأسبوع القادم.

- He has passed the test and he will apply to university next week.

هنا مزيج من المضارع التام والمستقبل

٣ الصفة دائمًا قبل الاسم والظرف بعد الفعل

أعتقد أن عليًا طالب رائع حيث إنه يتحدث الإنجليزية بلباقة.

- I think that Ali is a wonderful student as he speaks English fluently.

٤ أداة النصب «إن» ليس لها مكان عند الترجمة إلى الإنجليزية.

- إن تطوير التعليم هو أساس التقدم.

- Developing education is the basis of progress.

لاحظ: أن (is) هنا لم تكن موجودة فى الجملة باللغة العربية، ولكن لابد من وجودها فى الإنجليزية.

لاحظ: أيضا أن عند بداية الجملة بالفعل يتم إضافة ing ليتحول إلى اسم فاعل gerund.

٥ من + صفة + لـ أو على + مفعول + أن .... = ...It's + adj.+ for + obj. + to + inf

- من الضرورى لنا جميعًا أن نتحد لخدمة بلدنا.

- It is necessary for all of us to unite to serve our country.

٦ الضمائر المستترة فى العربية pronouns يجب إظهارها عند الترجمة إلى الإنجليزية.

- علينا أن نحاول بجد لكى نحقق ما نتمناه.

- We should try hard to achieve what we hope.

هنا ضمير مستتر (نحن) ولاحظ أيضًا أن وجود (على + الضمير) يتم ترجمتها should – must.

٧ لام التعليل تترجم إلى: المصدر + in order to/ so as to/ to.

- استيقظ مبكرًا للحاق بالقطار المتجه إلى القاهرة.

- He woke up early to catch the train to Cairo.



٨ الضمير المضاف إلى فعل يترجم إلى ضمير مفعول (us – them – him – me – her)

الضمير المضاف إلى اسم يترجم إلى (صفة ملكية) (your – its – our – his – her – their – my):

- قام الكثير من أصدقائى بزيارتى حيث إننى كنت مريضًا.

- A lot of my friends visited me because I was ill.

٩ الأسماء المعنوية والأسماء التى لا تجمع لا تأخذ the عند ترجمتها إلى الإنجليزية.

- السعادة كنز لا يقدر بثمن.

- Happiness is a priceless treasure.

honour	الشرف	virtue	الفضيلة	peace	السلام
beauty	الجمال	love	الحب	friendship	الصدقة
freedom	الحرية	advice	نصيحة	hatred	الكراهية
success	النجاح	justice	العدالة	honesty	الصدق

١٠ الأسماء التى لا تجمع Uncountable Nouns لا تأخذ أداة المعرفة the.

paper	الورق	luggage	الأمتعة	baggage	الحقائب
grass	العشب	money	المال	oil	الزيت
electricity	الكهرباء	information	معلومات	news	أخبار

- أريد معلومات عن البحث الجديد.

- I want information about the research.

١١ حرف الـ (س) وكلمة (سوف) المرادف لهما فى اللغة الإنجليزية هو زمن المستقبل البسيط.

- I will visit my friends tomorrow.

١٢ لقد + فعل ماضٍ وفى الجملة إشارة تدل على الماضى البسيط تترجم إلى ماضٍ بسيط.

- لقد ذهبنا معا إلى السينما الشهر الماضى.

- We went to the cinema together last month.

١٣ لقد + فعل ماضٍ بدون أى إشارة تدل على الماضى تترجم لمضارع تام.

- لقد حققت مصر كثيرًا من التقدم ونتمنى المزيد.

- Egypt has achieved a lot of progress and we hope for more.

١٤ قد + فعل مضارع تدل على الاحتمال ونستخدم may.

- قد نقوم برحلة مدرسية قريبًا.

- We may have a school trip soon.

١٥ لن + فعل مضارع يقابله فى الإنجليزية مستقبل بسيط منفى future simple.

- لن يأتى على إلى حفل التخرج بسبب سفره.

- Ali won't come to the graduation party because of his travel.

١٦ لم + فعل مضارع يقابله فى الإنجليزية ماضٍ بسيط Past simple.

- لم يتمكن صديقى من الحصول على الوظيفة التى تقدم لها.

- My friend didn't get the job that he applied for.

١٧ كان + فعل مضارع يقابله فى الإنجليزية ماضٍ مستمر.

- عندما وصلت المنزل كانت ابنتى تعمل واجباتها المدرسية.

- When I reached home, my daughter was doing her school homework.

لاحظ: أن كلمة home هنا لا تأخذ حرف جر.

١٨ كان + قد + فعل ماضٍ يقابله فى الإنجليزية الماضى التام.

- عندما ذهبت إلى العمل كان الاجتماع قد انتهى.

- When I went to work, the meeting had finished.

١٩ المفعول المطلق لا يتم ترجمته، ويتم تحويل الصفة إلى ظرف.

- يؤثر التدخين تأثيرًا سلبيًا على الصحة.

- Smoking has a negative effect on our health.

- Smoking affects our health negatively.

٢٠ الفعل بعد and يأخذ نفس شكل الفعل قبلها من حيث الزمن والإضافات.

- I enjoyed visiting my relatives and talking to them.

٢١ بعض الأفعال فى اللغة الإنجليزية لا يأخذ حرف جر (بينما تأخذ فى اللغة العربية).

contain	يحتوى على	need	يحتاج إلى	affect	يؤثر على
overcome	يتغلب على	fear	يخاف من	enjoy	يتمتع بـ
admire	يعجب بـ	feel	يشعر بـ	celebrate	يحتفل بـ



Some Important Words for Translation

English	Arabic
achievements	إنجازات
acquire	يكتسب
addiction	الإدمان
admiration	الإعجاب
adolescence	فترة المراهقة
advance	تقدم/يتقدم
adventure	مغامرة
aggression	عدوان
aging	كبر السن
alternatives	بدائل
ancient monuments	الآثار القديمة
artery	شريان
ashamed	خجلان من موقف
assassination	اغتيال
attitude	موقف
authenticity	أصالة
authority	سلطة
awareness	وعي
aware of	واعٍ بـ
backbone	العمود الفقري
baggage/luggage	أمتعة السفر
balanced diet	غذاء متوازن
battle	يكافح
bear	يتحمل
believing that	إيمانا بـ
birthplace	مهد
blessing	نعمة
blood	إكسير
book fair	معرض الكتاب
bossy	متغطرس
bread winner	عائل الأسرة
bringing up	تنشئة
bring prices down	يقلل الأسعار
brotherhood	الأخوة
campaign	حملة
capacity	قدرة/طاقة
capital treason	خيانة عظمى
car fumes	عوادم السيارات
catastrophe	كارثة
catch up with	يواكب/يساير
championship	بطولة
chaos	فوضى
characteristics	خصائص
circumstances	ظروف
citizens	مواطنون
civilisation	حضارة
civil wars	الحروب الأهلية
cloning	الاستنساخ
co-existence	التعايش
colleagues	زملاء العمل
comfort	راحة
communities	مجتمعات
concentration	تركيز
considerate	مراعٍ للآخرين
consideration	اعتبار
consult	يستشير
contagious	ناقل للعدوى
corner stone	حجر الزاوية
craft	حرفة
creative	مبدع
creativity	الإبداع
crisis	أزمة
curfew	حظر التجوال
deadly	مميت
declare	اعلن
emotion	عاطفة
exploit	يستغل الوقت
fate	القضاء والقدر
financial loss	خسارة مادية
first stone	اللبنة الأولى
gatherings	التجمعات
greed	جشع
dialogue	الحوار
imitate	يقلد
impose	يفرض

English	Arabic
infection	عدوى
instructions	التعليمات
join hands	يتكاتف
lack of responsibility	انعدام المسئولية
layers of society	طبقات المجتمع
mental	عقلى/ذهنى
model teacher	المدرس القدوة
mutate	يتحور/يتحول
one tissue	نسيج واحد
optimism	التفاؤل
outbreak	تفشى
outlet	مخرج
outstanding	بارز/ظاهر
overcome = get over	يتغلب على
pandemic	وباء
patience	الصبر
patriotism	وطنية
pave	يمهد
perfection/mastering	الإتقان
perform	يؤدى/يعمل
pessimistic	متشائم (صفة)
phenomena	ظواهر طبيعية
pioneer	رائد/قائد
policy	سياسة
positively	بإيجابية
postpone	يؤجل
poverty	الفقر
praise	يمدح/يشهد بـ
pray	صلاة/يصلى
preserve	يحافظ/يصون
prevention	وقاية
prime minister	رئيس الوزراء
principles	مبادئ
privacy	خصوصية
private sector	القطاع الخاص
process	عملية
producer	منتج
productive	منتج/غزير الإنتاج
promote	يترقى/ينشط
prosperity	الرخاء
protection	حماية
provide	يوفر
public sector	القطاع العام
punctuality	المواظبة
punctual	مواظب
quarantine	حجر صحى
quarrels	مشاجرات
rapidly	بسرعة
rare	نادر
rationalisation	ترشيد
rationalise	يرشد
reasonable	معقول
recycling	إعادة تصنيع/تدوير
reduce	يقلل
reflection	انعكاس
reforms	إصلاحات
relationships	علاقات
religion	الدين
reputation	سمعة
resources	مصادر
respect	الاحترام/يحترم
respiratory system	الجهاز التنفسى
responsibility	مسئولية
restore/recovery	استرجاع
revolution	ثورة
rewarding	مجزية
rights	حقوق
rise/ leap	طفرة
rivals	منافسون
rumour	إشاعة
rush hour	ساعة الذروة
sacrifice	التضحية
satisfaction	الرضا
satisfactory	مُرضٍ
satisfied	راضٍ

English	Arabic	English	Arabic	English	Arabic
sects	طوائف	springs	ينابيع	trash = rubbish	قمامة
security	الأمن	stability	استقرار/ثبات	treaty	معاهدة
self-reliance	الاعتماد على النفس	standard of living	مستوى المعيشة	undertake	يتعهد
self-sufficiency	الاكتفاء الذاتي	sterilization	التعقيم	unemployment	البطالة
selfishness	الأنانية	stimulate	يحفز	unite	يتحد
selfish	أناني	strength	قوة	unrest	عدم استقرار/اضطراب
separate	يفصل/يفرق	strike	إضراب	unselfishness	عدم الأنانية
serious	جاد	strong will	إرادة قوية	up-to-date	حديث/عصري
severe	شديد/قاس/صادم	struggle	يكافح	update	يحدث بيانات
shade	الظل	subject	يتعرض	uprising	انتفاضة
shortage	نقص	sufficiency	اكتفاء/كِفَاية	uproot	يستأصل
shortness	نقص/عجز	summer resort	المصيف	urge	تحث على
shy	خجول بطبعه	survive	يعيش/يبقى حيًا	vaccine	مصل
sightseeing	رؤية المعالم السياحية	suspend	يؤجل	values	القيم
sights	معالم سياحية	symptoms	أعراض	votes	أصوات انتخابات
signs	علامات	take to	يلتزم بـ	wasteful	مبذر
slogan	شعار	talented	موهوب	wealth	ثروة
social affairs	الشئون الاجتماعية	terrorism	الإرهاب	weapons	أسلحة
solidarity	تماسك/تضامن	thanks to	بفضل	welfare	رفاهية
source	مصدر	theft	السرقة	while	يقضي وقتا أو يضيعه
species	فصيلة/نوع	the press	الصحافة	wisdom	الحكمة
spirit	روح	threaten	يهدد	witness	يشهد
splendid	رائع	tolerance	التسامح	work market	سوق العمل
spoil	يفسد	tourism	السياحة	worship	يقدس/عبادة
sports facilities	تسهيلات رياضية	tourist revenue	الدخل من السياحة		

Exercises

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. The television and the mobile are responsible for the declining interest in reading among the young.
2. Being a good citizen requires a lot of civilised behaviour like helping the people in need and accepting differences among people.
3. Mass production brought down prices and meant that people could afford to buy things that had been too expensive for them in the past.
4. We are becoming increasingly dependent on computers. They are used in businesses, hospitals, banks and even crime detection.
5. Everyone knows that a person who reads will be successful and a person who doesn't will either not do as well as others or eventually fail in life.
6. Cleanliness is extremely important in protecting us from many different kinds of infections. Everyone should follow cleanliness to be healthy and happy all through the life.
7. Pollution is one of the most serious problems that face not only Egypt but also the whole world. Pollution is the greatest threat to humanity.
8. Getting the right amount of sleep is not only important in terms of being able to function properly during daytime, but it also has an impact on your overall health.
9. Our country is in need of every one's efforts. We must work hard to produce and export. Then, we will save hard currency and achieve welfare.
10. We can't ignore the fact that education in our country needs an urgent rescue operation.
11. Sports have become one of the most effective means of achieving peace and stability throughout the world.
12. There is no doubt that smoking is a fatal habit. Figures show that the number of smoking victims is increasing all the time.
13. We all must stop throwing rubbish in the streets and in the Nile to solve pollution problems.
14. With patience and strong will, man can get over the hardships he faces.

15. Reading helps us to increase our information to become knowledgeable about many things in life.
16. Many people prefer the peaceful life of the countryside to the noise and congestion of large cities.
17. A successful leader should be intelligent, strict, far-sighted and an example worthy to be followed.
18. Earthquakes, volcanoes, storms, hurricanes and tsunamis are all natural phenomena which destroy all the achievements of man.
19. The Egyptian woman plays a vital role in all walks (fields) of life and contributes greatly to her country's progress.
20. The educational institution seeks to deepen the democratic thought and train the young generations in participation, voicing opinion and constructive criticism.
21. The invisible serious problem of water is increasing more and more due to the wrong thought that sea and river water is endless.
22. Dumping trash in water pollutes it, so laws must be imposed to prevent that.
23. Don't waste your time. Time is your life and you should exploit it carefully and benefit from it as much as possible.
24. A bird in hand is better than two in the bush. Hence, be satisfied with what you own.
25. Methods of irrigation must be promoted to economise the amount of water used in the traditional way.
26. Tourism is the hope of our country to supply hard currency and work opportunities for our youth.
27. Do you think our youth deliberately desire to be naughty or they just imitate with closed eyes and minds?
28. Coral reefs must be conserved as they attract a lot of tourists and are the home of scarce species of fish.
29. Work is worship. Without it neither we nor our motherland would progress. So, don't be ashamed of any job or craft.
30. We must attract foreign and Arab investors, stimulate tourism and change cultural awareness if we want to recover the Egyptian economy.

B) Translate into English:

١ إن مشاهد العنف التى تشهدها بعض ملاعب الرياضة خير دليل على غياب الروح الرياضية.

٢ حاليًا يتابع معظم الناس الأخبار على الإنترنت بدلًا من مطالعة الصحف المطبوعة.

٣ النظافة الشخصية مهمة إذا كنت تريد الحفاظ على صحتك، فهى تحمينا من الأمراض المعدية التى تنتقل بسرعة من شخص لآخر.

٤ إن الاستقرار الاجتماعى والسياسى سيجلب مزيدًا من الاستثمارات وينعش الاقتصاد .

٥ إن قضية إصلاح التعليم من أخطر القضايا التى تواجه المجتمع المصري؛ حيث إن البحث العلمى أحد ركائز الأمن القومى.

٦ أن مصر تحتاج إلى جهود المخلصين من أبنائها حتى تتغلب على كل المشاكل التى تعوق تقدمها.

٧ إن زيادة الإنتاج أصبحت واجبًا وطنيًا لأنها تمكننا من مواجهة مشكلة تزايد السكان والبطالة فى مصر.

٨ يجب على الحكومة الاستثمار فى البنية التحتية وتشجيع الاستثمارات الداخلية والخارجية.

٩ السياحة مصدر هام لجلب العملة الصعبة لمصر، لذا علينا أن نقدم كل التسهيلات الممكنة لجذب السياح إلى مصر.

١٠ يجب أن نشجع الاستثمار ونزيد الإنتاج ونقلل الاستهلاك، فهذا سوف يخفض الأسعار ويحل المشكلة الاقتصادية، ولا يمكن أن يتحقق ذلك بدون تعاون الأفراد مع الحكومة.

١١ هل استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة فى التعليم سيساعد الطالب فى تخطى الكثير من التحديات المعاصرة؟

١٢ يعتمد تقدم أى أمة على تطوير التعليم، وكذلك الاهتمام بالزراعة والصناعة.

١٣ الرياضة ليست فقط من أجل تنمية اللياقة البدنية، ولكن لتطوير الناحية الذهنية كذلك.

١٤ لابد من تطوير القطاعين الخاص والعام لتوفير فرص عمل للخريجين والقضاء على البطالة.

١٥ لابد من ربط التعليم بسوق العمل، وفتح كليات جديدة تؤهل الطالب للعمل بكفاءة.

١٦ الأب هو عائل الأسرة ليوفر لها الحماية والرعاية، والأم هى حجر الأساس لتوفير العاطفة والحب.

١٧ يجب علينا الاهتمام بالموهوبين لأنهم أمل الأمة ومستقبلها، لذلك يجب توفير رعاية خاصة لهم.

١٨ ندرة الماء أزمة العالم القادمة، ومن ثم اقتصد فى استهلاكك للمياه، فقطرة الماء تساوى حياة.

١٩ إن الإصرار هو أول خطوة للنجاح، فلابد أن تتميز بالإصرار والعزيمة وقوة الإرادة.

٢٠ لابد أن يسود مبدأ الشورى داخل العائلة لينمو الطفل محبًا للحوار واحترام الرأى الآخر.

٢١ كلما كانت لديك القدرة على التخيل كنت أكثر إبداعًا، لذلك أكثرْ من القراءة.

٢٢ الماء إكسير الحياة وشريانها، فحافظ عليه من التلوث ولا تلق القمامة فيه.

٢٣ علينا أن نلتزم بعاداتنا وتقاليدنا، ولا نقلد لمجرد التقليد، فنحن شعب متدين بطبيعته.

٢٤ لابد من صيانة وتطوير وسائل المواصلات العامة لكى يتم استخدامها بواسطة فئات المجتمع المختلفة.

٢٥ الشعب المصرى نسيج واحد، فلا تؤثر فيه الإشاعات ومحاولات التفرقة بين طوائفه المختلفة.

٢٦ المدرس القدوة هو العمود الرئيسى فى العملية التعليمية، لذلك تهتم وزارة التربية والتعليم بتدريبه.

٢٧ ارض بما قدره الله لك لأن راحة النفس تقلل الضغوط وتمنع الكثير من الأمراض.

٢٨ لقد ثبت علميًا أن الموسيقى تقلل التوتر ويتم استخدامها فى علاج بعض الأمراض.

٢٩ المدرسة هى اللبنة الأولى لتعليم الطفل النظام والمواظبة، لذلك يجب الاهتمام بالمدرسة.

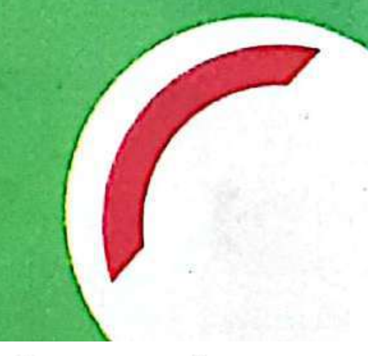
٣٠ وسائل الإعلام مصدر لمعرفة الكثير من طبقات الشعب، لذلك يجب أن تقدم محتوًى جيدًا.

Part 2

Integrated
Skills

Integrated Skills

- Getting Away
- Supporting Community
- Improving Lives
- Friendship
- Communications
- Learning from literature





Skills Integration Methodology

- نهدف من خلال تدريس هذا الجزء (Skills Integration) إلى الارتقاء بمستوى تعلم مهارات اللغة الإنجليزية لدى الطلاب فى بداية المرحلة الثانوية. حاولنا من خلال ذلك الربط بين المهارات الأساسية للغة مثل مهارات القراءة و الاستماع و الكتابة (Reading & Listening & Writing) بصورة مترابطة عن طريق تدريس نفس الموضوع من جوانب عده وذلك لتوسيع مدارك الطلاب بالإضافة إلى إكسابهم رؤى مختلفة يستطيعون من خلالها تكوين منظورهم الخاص. تم تقديم المهارات بشكل يتواكب مع طريقة تلقى الطالب فتم البدء بمهارة القراءة ثم مهاره الاستماع وانتهاء بمهارة الكتابة بعد أن ينتهى الطالب من اكتساب مفردات لغوية جديدة فى جزئيتى القراءة والاستماع.
- بدأنا بتقديم مهارة القراءة Reading Skill فى صورة قطعة فهم Comprehension Passage يليها أسئلة مشابهة لما قد يتعرض له الطالب أثناء أدائه الامتحان النهائى. تلى ذلك تقديم ومراجعة بعض الإرشادات الخاصة بقواعد اللغة الإنجليزية Grammar Hints.
- يأتى بعد ذلك الجزء الخاص بتقديم مهارة الاستماع Listening Skill ويعتبر كتاب GEM رائدًا فى تقديم تلك المهارة فى قالب غير تقليدى لمساعدة الطلاب فى تنميتها من خلال تقديم نص مسموع حول نفس موضوع قطعة الفهم. ثم تقديم ترجمة الكلمات الجديدة التى قد تساعد فى فهم الطالب للموضوع وتكوين حصيلة لغوية لديه. ثم تقديم أسئلة حول هذه الكلمات للتأكد من فهم الطالب لها وقدرته على استخدامها بطريقة صحيحة.
- فى الجزء الأخير يطلب من الطالب تطبيق نتائج ما تم فهمه فى الأجزاء السابقة من خلال ممارسة مهارة الكتابة Writing Skill عن طريق:

١- ترجمة لبعض الجمل المتعلقة بالموضوع.

٢- كتابة مقال مطابق للمعايير متعلق بالموضوع أيضًا.

وبذلك يكون الطالب قد تحصل على معلومات إضافية فى قالب غير تقليدى تساعده فى الإجابة عن أية أسئلة محررة مسايرة لاتجاهات التقييم الحديثة.





Comprehension passage

Reading

Travel is something which people do every day. It is very difficult to avoid the need to travel. It may be a trip to school, university or to work. Travelling can often take a long time, especially when great distances need to be covered. People often enjoy travelling abroad for holidays. But for some people travelling is not fun at all. Some people suffer from travel sickness. This means that they will become very unwell each time they travel.

Cars and motorcycles are faster modes of transport, but are more expensive to use as gasoline is needed for them to work. It can usually be assumed that the longer you wish to travel, the more expensive and time consuming it will be. The use of a plane is necessary for people wanting to travel very long distances. Although traffic is rarely a problem for airplanes, it can take a lot of preparation to travel by plane.

A train is another mode of transport which is ideal for travelling long distances within the same country, or between countries which are connected by land. A train driver will stop at train stations on route to allow passengers wishing to proceed to the scheduled destination to board the train.

A number of destinations can be travelled to by using the sea. Some people choose to go on a cruise for their holiday, which would involve stopping at many different city ports for a short amount of time. People who need to travel short distances may choose not to use any transport at all. People often rely on their legs to take them to places nearby. This is often encouraged as certain modes of transport have been said to produce harmful emissions and damage the environment.

A) Choose the correct answer:t

1. Which mode of transport does not cost money?
   - a) Train.
   - b) Car.
   - c) Walking.
   - d) Bus.
2. Why do some people not enjoy travelling?
   - a) They find it a waste of time.
   - b) It is not comfortable.
   - c) It is expensive.
   - d) They become unwell.

3. Name the mode of transport which is controlled by a pilot and stops at an airport.
   a) Train.
   b) Airplane.
   c) Car.
   d) Bus.
4. Which mode of transport is ideal for travelling between countries connected by land?
   a) Bicycle.
   b) Train.
   c) Airplane.
   d) Car.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. In your opinion, how would life be without planes?
6. Which mode of transport do you prefer? Why?
7. Why are using cars and motorcycles very expensive?



Grammar hints

Grammar

When you talk about travelling and means of transporting you mainly use the present simple tense because you are talking about facts. Also you can use the future simple to express your prediction about the future and use the past simple to talk about past actions and experiences.

How to form the present simple tense in English:

Structure of present simple		
positive	**negative**	**question**
I work in a bank.	I don't work in a bank.	Do I work in a bank?
You work in a bank.	You don't work in a bank.	Do you work in a bank?
He works in a bank.	He doesn't (does not) work in a bank.	Does he work in a bank?
She works in a bank.	She doesn't (does not) work in a bank.	Does she work in a bank?
It rains a lot.	It doesn't (does not) rain.	Does it rain a lot?
We work in a bank.	We don't work in a bank.	Do we work in a bank?
They work in a bank.	They don't work in a bank.	Do they work in a bank?

How to form the past simple tense in English:

Structure of Past simple		
Positive	**Negative**	**Question**
I / you / he / she / it / we / they arrived.	I / you / he / she / it / we / they didn't arrive.	Did I / you / he / she / it / we / they arrive?

How to form the future simple tense in English:

Structure of future simple		
Positive	**Negative**	**Question**
I will (I'll) be there tomorrow.	I won't (will not) be there.	Will I be there tomorrow?
you will, he will, she will, it will, we will, they will	you will not, he will not, she will not, it will not, we will not, they will not	will you?, will he?, will she?, will it?, will we?, will they?



PART 2

3 Listening text



Helping Vocabulary

advantages	مزايا	encourage	يشجع
assume	يؤكد	environment	البيئة
avoid	يتجنب	especially	وبخاصة
connected	متصل	gasoline	بنزين
consuming	استهلاك	passengers	مسافرون
cruise	رحلات نهرية	payment	مقابل مادى
travel agency	شركة سياحة	enjoyment	متعه
expenses	نفقات	gain	يكتسب
companion	رفيق/صحبه	purpose	غرض
journey	رحلة		

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I took the ring road to .... the traffic jams in the downtown.
   a) get b) find c) stay d) avoid
2. The underground stopped suddenly because of a breakdown so all the .... had to get out of it.
   a) passengers b) crafts c) workers d) trekkers
3. The big amount of pollution is very harmful to the .... and all living creatures.
   a) lobby b) environment c) market d) closers
4. My little brother got low marks in the midyear exam but my parents .... him to get better.
   a) discouraged b) rejected c) encouraged d) discussed
5. One .... of electric cars is that it doesn't go for long distances.
   a) demerity b) activities c) advantage d) con
6. She rationalized the .... by buying cheaper products for her house.
   a) expenses b) accounts c) prices d) attendants
7. I get a lot of .... out of working with young children. They are fantastic.
   a) sorrow b) worry c) enjoyment d) boredom
8. The .... of this meeting is to elect a new chairman.
   a) reason b) purpose c) situation d) conclusion
9. She has .... a good reputation as a great teacher.
   a) earned b) won c) beaten d) gained
10. A/An .... is a company that arranges hotel rooms, plane tickets for people who want to travel.
   a) news agency b) advertising agency c) travel agency d) travel channel

2 Translation:

Writing

A) Translate into English:

قالو فى الماضى إن للسفر سبع فوائد، ولكن يرى البعض أن فوائد السفر لا حدود لها ولكن يتوقف ذلك على الغرض من السفر.

B) Translate into Arabic:

People who are interested in travelling don't give due care to how much money they will spend, they only think about how much enjoyment they will have.

3 Writing:

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Expectations about travelling in the future.

(The previous ideas (comprehension- vocabulary- exercises- translation - Grammar hints) may help you to write an appropriate essay)



Supporting community

1 Comprehension passage

Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A community is a group of people who live and work together. People who help each other and provide service to them are called community helpers. Whether you live in a small town, on a farm, or in a big city there are many community helpers.

Community helpers are people who work to help the community and the people who live in a community. There are many kinds of community helpers. There are community helpers who keep you safe and healthy, keep neighbourhoods clean, volunteer their time, and make sure everything works and gets built in the community.

The people who keep a community safe include firefighters, paramedics, and police officers. A police officer keeps people in the community safe from those who might try to hurt others. Firefighters also keep people safe. They help people who are in an accident or who have a fire at their house. A paramedic cares for people and takes them to a hospital when they are hurt or sick.

Two community helpers increase the knowledge of the people. A librarian takes care of and provides books and other materials to those in the community who need them. A librarian must be smart and care about books. A teacher helps others learn many different things in a school. A teacher must know a lot about different subjects and how to tell this information to others.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How many community helpers are mentioned in the passage?
   a) 3 b) 4 c) 5 d) 6
2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....
   a) firefighters b) paramedics
   c) police officers d) all mentioned
3. The suitable title of the passage is ....
   a) community helpers b) community workers
   c) community services d) community savers

4. Which of the following must know a lot about climbing ladders?
   a) Police officers.
   b) Pilots.
   c) Firefighters.
   d) Librarians.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why do you think we should be community helpers?
6. Who can increase the knowledge of the people? How?
7. What is a community?

2 Grammar hints

Grammar

- When you talk about charity work and how to help our society, you mainly use present simple tense whether active or passive forms as you are talking about persons' habits and also facts.
- Also, you can use the past simple tense when you talk about someone's achievements in the field of supporting and helping the society.

How to form the past simple tense:

Positive	Negative
- I/He/She/It/We/You/They went out fast. - I/He/She/It/We/You/They played football well.	- I/He/She/It/We/You/They didn't go out. - I/He/She/It/We/You/They didn't play football well.
Question	**Passive form**
Did (subject) inf. ....? What did (subject) inf. ....?	Obj. (was –were) + p.p. A football match was played yesterday.

How to form the passive form of the present simple:

Active form	Passive form
- Some people donate money for charities. - We always help the poor in our community.	- Money is donated for charities. - The poor are always helped in our community.





3 Listening text

Listening



Helping Vocabulary

achievement	إنجاز	good citizen	مواطن صالح
characteristics	سمات	knowledge	معرفة
charities	الجمعيات الخيرية	ladder	سلم
climb	يتسلق	neighbourhood	حى سكنى
clothing	ملبس	paramedic	مسعف
collect	يجمع	possessions	ممتلكات
desire	رغبة	provide	يمد/يزود
distribute	يوزع	safe	آمن
donate	يتبرع	smart	ذكى
effort	جهد	through	من خلال/عن طريق
firefighter	رجل المطافى	volunteer	يتطوع/متطوع

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We all celebrate the .... of our national team to be qualified to the world cup.
   a) characteristic b) achievement c) desire d) clothing
2. The .... students get good grades and go to the Faculty of Medicine.
   a) safe b) financial c) homeless d) smart
3. The university should .... more facilities for disabled students.
   a) provide b) collect c) climb d) create
4. You'll need waterproof .... if you go out in the rain.
   a) charities b) characteristics c) clothing d) possessions
5. Ali was treated at the scene by a team of .... before being taken by an ambulance to the hospital.
   a) firefighters b) paramedics c) volunteers d) neighbourhoods
6. The company .... information about consumer favourite products.
   a) donates b) climbs c) attends d) collects
7. My father lifted the box easily, without using much ....
   a) effort b) clothing c) possessions d) knowledge
8. Sorry, I can't. The wall is too high to .... over.
   a) go b) run c) climb d) walk
9. My son .... for the army even though he did not have to.
   a) joined b) volunteered c) distributed d) provided
10. My brother is on the first step on the .... of success.
    a) characteristic b) clothing c) knowledge d) ladder

2 Translation:

Writing

A) Translate into English:

- إن الرغبة فى مساعدة المجتمع عن طريق التبرع بالمال والدم والجهد واحدة من سمات المواطن المصرى الصالح.

B) Translate into Arabic:

Volunteer work is a great way to help and support the communities. As many people like to work as volunteers during their free time.

3 Writing:

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Ways of supporting our society to be a better one.

The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar hints) may help you to write a comprehensive essay.





1 Comprehension passage

Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

If you wish to change life and to get success, you need to work hard. Yes, it is very difficult to do, but you will get a lot of benefits later. Only those people, who work hard and spend a lot of their time can reach their goals and be successful.

If you do something, that you like, it is known, that you will get success quickly and you will get positive results. You should not think about what other people are speaking, it is needed just to do and reach the goals. You should understand that life consists of different events, without them, it is impossible to get success. Do you know that all dreams will come true if you work hard on them? All thoughts are connected with the reactions and because of them, if you change the way of thinking, you can change life.

A lot of the doctors say that smiling is very useful for life. It will give a lot of power and positive emotions. You will see that it is impossible to be in a bad mood, if you are smiling. Also, it is better to communicate with people, who are smiling, because it creates better start of the conversation. If you are eating healthy food, the brain will get all needed vitamins and minerals. Because of this fact, you will have a lot of power to do something new and to work hard to reach goals. Because of this fact, it is recommended to check the way of life and start doing sport.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To be successful, you should ....
   a) think about what other people are speaking
   b) eat junk food
   c) be serious
   d) neglect people's speech

2. It is impossible to be in a bad mood, if you are ....
   a) eating healthy food
   b) changing your life
   c) smiling
   d) doing sport
3. The synonym of "understand" is ....
   a) grasp
   b) recognise
   c) mistake
   d) attach
4. The underlined word "them" refers to ....
   a) results
   b) reactions
   c) goals
   d) events

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Suggest a suitable title to the passage.
6. How do you think we can achieve our dreams?
7. How can healthy food help us to improve our life?

2 Grammar hints

Grammar

- When you talk about an important or a famous character, you mainly use the past simple tense to describe his life, place of birth, date of birth and how he became famous. Also, you can use the past simple tense to talk about his works or achievements that he made.
- When you write about a situation that happened to you or a story, you mainly use the past simple tense.
- But, when you talk about an invention or a discovery that has made some improvements to our lives, you can use the present perfect tense to show its effects that are still with us.

How to form the present perfect tense:

Positive	Negative
- I/we/you/they have cleaned the house. - He/She/it has left the house.	- I/you/they haven't cleaned the house. - He/she/it hasn't left the house.
Question	**Passive form**
- Have you/they cleaned the house? - Has he/she/it left the house?	- The house has been cleaned. - Some books have been published recently.



3 Listening text

Listening



Helping Vocabulary

benefits	فوائد	mental	عقلى
bringing up	التربية	minerals	أملاح معدنية
create	يخلق	mood	حالة مزاجية
dreams	أحلام	physical	بدنى
emotions	عواطف	positive	إيجابى
encourage	يشجع	reaction	رد فعل
event	حدث هام	result	نتيجة
financial	مادى	shelter	مأوى
goal	هدف	smiling	الابتسام
healthy food	طعام صحى	success	نجاح
homeless	مشرد	successful	ناجح
ideal	مثالى	understand	يفهم
impossible	مستحيل	vitamins	فيتامينات

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The discovery of oil brought many .... to the future of our country.
   a) benefits b) vitamins c) results d) minerals
2. The new projects are expected to .... 2000 jobs.
   a) encourage b) discourage c) create d) bring up
3. The centre provides help for people suffering from .... illness.
   a) beneficial b) mental c) homeless d) successful
4. The concert of Amr Diab was a great ....
   a) succeed b) successful c) successor d) success
5. Having a .... is considered as one of the basic needs of life.
   a) shelter b) mood c) reaction d) vitamin
6. If you could complete the report by Friday, that would be ....; I need it before Saturday.
   a) properly b) improper c) ideal d) ideally
7. The response we've had from the public has been very ....; it motivates us to make more success.
   a) negative b) positive c) disappointing d) impossibly
8. Can you tell us about your .... when you knew that you won the prize?
   a) smiling b) result c) goal d) reaction
9. The government achieved their .... of providing free education for every child.
   a) goal b) emotion c) mood d) disadvantage
10. We should help people with severe .... disabilities.
   a) successful b) impossible c) physical d) curable

2 Translation: Writing

A) Translate into English:

- يجب على الدولة و كذلك المواطنون الاهتمام بأطفال الشوارع والمشردين عن طريق توفير مأوى آمن لهم وأيضا الاهتمام بهم من النواحي البدنية والعقلية والمادية.

B) Translate into Arabic:

Parents and teachers are the main supporters for improving the lives of their children and students through providing the ideal upbringing and education.

3 Writing:

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

The efforts of the Egyptian government to improve the lives of the Egyptians.

The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar hints) may help you to write an appropriate essay.



Making new friends

1 Comprehension passage

Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Friendship is one of the greatest bonds anyone can ever wish for. Lucky are those who have friends they can trust. Friendship is a devoted relationship between two individuals. They both feel immense care and love for each other. Usually, a friendship is shared by two people who have similar interests and feelings.

You meet many along the way of life, but only some stay with you forever. Those are your real friends who stay by your side through thick and thin. Friendship is the most beautiful gift you can present to anyone. It is one which stays with a person forever. A person is acquainted with many persons in their life. However, the closest ones become our friends. You may have a large friend circle in school or college, but you know you can only count on one or two people with whom you share true friendship.

There are essentially two types of friends, one is good friends the other are true friends or best friends. They're the ones with whom we have a special bond of love and affection. In other words, having a true friend makes our lives easier and full of happiness. Most importantly, true friendship stands for a relationship free of any judgments. In a true friendship, a person can be himself/herself completely without the fear of being judged. It makes you feel loved and accepted. This kind of freedom is what every human strives to have in their lives.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you have trusted friends, you are ....
   a) unlucky
   b) unfortunate
   c) devoted
   d) lucky
2. How many types of friends are in our life?
   a) One.
   b) Two.
   c) Three.
   d) Four.



3. The underlined word "It" refers to ....

a) freedom
b) ordinary friendship
c) true friendship
d) fear

4. The word "immense" is similar in meaning to ....

a) many
b) small
c) minor
d) great

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Do you have a true friend? Why? Why not?
6. Why do you think we need true friends?
7. Suggest a suitable title to the passage.

2 Grammar hints

Grammar

- When you talk about how to make a new friend, friendship, or the qualities of a good friend, you can use present simple tense. But if you want to talk about an experience with a friend, you can use the past simple tense.
- When you talk about your experience of moving to a new place, you can use both the present simple tense and the past simple tense to compare between the two places and to describe your feelings. Also you can here use the present continuous and the past perfect.
- Take care of the articles (a – an – the) when you talk or write about something. You have to know whether the noun is singular, plural, specified or unique.

How to form the past perfect tense:

Positive	Negative
- I/He/She/It/We/You/They had played with the ball.	- I/He/She/It/We/You/They hadn't played with the ball.
Question	**Passive form**
- Had you/she/he/it/they played with the ball?	- Obj. + had been + p.p.



PART 2

3 Listening text


Listening

Helping Vocabulary

affection	عاطفة	interests	اهتمامات
attribute to	يعزز/ينسب إلى	internal	داخلي
bonds	روابط	judge	يحكم
college	كلية	judgments	أحكام
companion	صحبة	loyalty	الإخلاص
confidence	الثقة	lucky	محظوظ
deceive	يخدع	maintain	يحافظ على
factors	عوامل	mutual respect	الاحترام المتبادل
feelings	مشاعر	relationship	علاقة
forever	للأبد	self-esteem	تقدير الذات
freedom	حرية	share	يشارك
friendship	الصداقة	sorrow	حزن
gift	هدية	tie	رابطة
immense	ضخم	tolerance	تسامح
individuals	أفراد	trust	يثق



Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I really have a good .... with my little sister. I adore her.
   a) relative b) relationship c) citizenship d) championship
2. To cooperate well with each other, all of us should show ....
   a) violence b) intolerance c) tolerance d) difference
3. Parents must have .... respect as they are role models for their children.
   a) manual b) annual c) monster d) mutual
4. The thief .... the woman and took all her money.
   a) deceived b) received c) ticked d) tracked
5. My friend expressed his .... at the death of my father. He was very sad.
   a) joy b) happiness c) sorrow d) hope
6. The prisoner was given his .... after 25 years in prison.
   a) free b) freedom c) boredom d) relationship
7. His unhappiness in his workplace was the main .... in his decision to travel abroad.
   a) element b) result c) consequence d) factor
8. During the last few days, I had .... difficulties because of my serious injury.
   a) simple b) immediate c) immense d) deference
9. The school trip was very exciting because of the wonderful ....
   a) companion b) campaign c) continent d) constant
10. No country has the right to interfere in other country's .... affairs.
    a) internal b) ordinary c) abnormal d) extraordinary

2 Translation:

Writing

A) Translate into English:

- الصداقة هى رابطة قوية تربط بين شخصين وتكون قائمة على الثقة و التعاون والمحبة والإخلاص والاحترام المتبادل ولايمكن للإنسان أن يعيش بدونها.

B) Translate into Arabic:

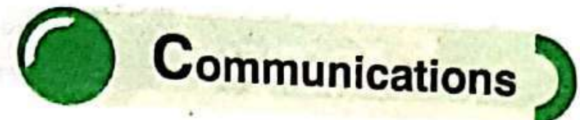
Loneliness can be attributed to internal factors such as low self-esteem. People who lack confidence in themselves often believe they are unworthy of attention.

3 Writing:

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

The qualities of a good friend.

The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar hints) may help you to write an appropriate essay.



Communications

1 Comprehension passage

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Reading

It is rare to find someone with good technical and communication skills. People will judge, evaluate, promote or block you based on your communication skills.

Learning what not to say is probably more important than learning what to say. As your career develops, you will realise that the wise speak less. Speak when you have value to add. Avoid any communication in an emotional state when you might say things you will regret later. One unnecessary word uttered at the wrong time or place can ruin a relationship, career or even your life. Such is the power of words. If such a thing happens, you should immediately apologise, else it may haunt you for life.

Another problem to overcome is speaking too fast. Since our minds are working faster than our speech, we are inclined to speak fast. This does not necessarily mean that the person hearing it will get it any faster. On the contrary, it is always the reverse. So slow down, and think before you speak. "When I get ready to speak to people," Abraham Lincoln said, "I spend two-thirds of the time thinking what they want to hear and one-third thinking what I want to say." Adding humour is also essential. But realise that not all jokes are funny and observe certain boundaries. Never say anything that could offend. Remember you are not a comedian who must offend as many people as you can to be witty.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To find someone with good technical and communication skills is something ....
   a) easy b) ordinary c) reachable d) seldom
2. To be wise, you should speak ....
   a) a lot b) a little c) more d) fast
3. The word "uttered" is similar in meaning to ....
   a) cut b) found c) said d) realised
4. The antonym of the word "essential" is ....
   a) trivial b) major c) main d) important

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why do you think it is necessary to have good communication skills?
6. How can communication skills be developed?
7. Suggest a suitable title to the passage.

2 Grammar hints

Grammar

- When you talk about means of communications or any modern technology in the future, you mainly use the future tense with its different forms.
- When you talk about any invention and its advantages and disadvantages, you mainly use the present simple tense.
- When you talk about something that happened at a particular time in the past, you can use the past simple and past continuous.

How to form the future tenses:

Positive	Negative	Question	Passive form
Subj. + will + inf.	Subj. + won't + inf.	Will + subj. + inf. ?	Obj. + will be + p.p.
Subj. + (be) going to + inf.	Subj. + (be not) going to + inf.	(Be) + sub+ going to + inf.?	Obj. + (be) going to be + p.p.
Subj. + (am – is – are) + v-ing.	Subj. + (am –is – are) not + v-ing.	(Am – Is – Are) + subj. + v-ing?	Obj. + (am – is – are) + being + p.p.
Subj. + will have + p.p.	Subj. + won't have + p.p.	(Will) + Subj. + have + p.p…?	Obj. + will have been + p.p.

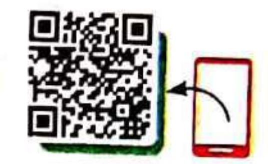
How to form past continuous tense:

Positive	Negative
- I/we/you/they were playing football. - He/She/ It was eating.	- I/We/You/They weren't playing. - He/She/It wasn't eating.
Question	**Passive form**
- Were you/they playing football? - Was he/she/it eating?	- Obj. + (was – were) being + p.p.



3 Listening text

Listening



Helping Vocabulary

comedian	ممثل كوميدى	pave	يمهد
develop	يطور/ينمى	portable	قابل للنقل
devices	أجهزة	rare	نادر
entertain	يسلى	realise	يدرك
especially	خاصة	role	دور
essential	أساسى/جوهرى	ruin	يدمر
evaluate	يقيم	schoolmates	زملاء فى المدرسة
funny	مضحك	slow down	هدئ (سرعة)
humour	دعابة	speech	الكلام/الحديث
jokes	نكات	value	قيمة
multi-functional	متعددة الاستخدامات	wise	حكيم
overcome	يتغلب على	witness	يشهد

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The television and the computer are now .... They are easy to move or carry.
   a) profitable b) bearable c) portable d) fictional
2. It has become .... to keep your environment clean to avoid most diseases.
   a) unimportant b) essential c) inadvisable d) unnecessary
3. There were two .... to the murder and they were asked to say what they saw.
   a) witnesses b) criminals c) killers d) prisoners
4. Hams has a good sense of .... She is cheerful and funny.
   a) human b) boredom c) humour d) sorrow
5. The city was in a state of .... after the earthquake.
   a) rule b) ruin c) role d) run
6. We should .... the situation carefully before making our decision.
   a) cultivate b) valuate c) evaporate d) evaluate
7. The government is working on developing our roads by .... them well.
   a) paving b) waving c) moving d) pawing
8. The thieves stole goods with a total .... of 10 million pounds.
   a) value b) valve c) evaluation d) speed
9. Egypt has managed to .... most of the problems in a very short time.
   a) overload b) overcome c) overcast d) overcharge
10. We should have freedom of ...., but we must be polite and responsible for what we say.
    a) speak b) sponge c) speech d) sped

2 Translation:

A) Translate into English:

Writing

- شهد العالم مؤخرًا توسعًا كبيرًا فى الكثير من المجالات و خاصة وسائل الاتصال حيث أصبح التواصل بين الناس فى كافة أنحاء العالم عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى أكثر سهولة.

B) Translate into Arabic:

Modern technology has paved the way for multi-functional devices like the smartwatch and the smartphone.

3 Writing:

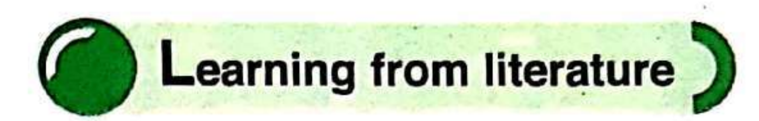
Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Adverts on the internet and if they are good or bad.

The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar hints) may help you to write an appropriate essay.







Learning from literature

1 Comprehension passage

Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Reading literature is a good habit, but it is of no use if one cannot understand or remember what he or she has read. A lot of people even forget the name of the book they have just finished reading because of their inability to make the most out of their reading.

Careful reading is the key tool for understanding the main idea of the content and making the most out of your reading activity. It is advisable to read a single line more than once if it has complex meanings. This makes its understanding better and clearer.

After reading the book, write a summary of the content on your own. In that abstract, emphasise the main idea and informative points of the content. Having an understanding the text is more important than reading or memorising it.

There are several ways for a reader to enhance his comprehension ability. The first one is to read the text in a loud voice. This way the reader will be able to listen to his voice and it will be easier for him to understand what he is reading.

The person who is reading the text doesn't have to know all the expressions and words written in the text. While reading, the reader should jot down those difficult words in a notebook so that later he can search for them. Once the reader has gathered all the incomprehensible words, he should look up those words in a dictionary. Exploring those words in the dictionary will help them to establish the lucid meaning of the text.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "it" refers to ....
   - a) the main idea
   - b) the content
   - c) reading activity
   - d) a single line
2. How many ways are mentioned in the passage to enhance comprehension ability?
   - a) One.
   - b) Two.
   - c) Three.
   - d) Four.

3. The person who is reading the text should ....
   a) read in a loud voice
   b) understand the meaning of all words
   c) look up new words in a dictionary
   d) all mentioned

4. The underlined word "enhance" means ....
   a) improvise
   b) decrease
   c) discourage
   d) improve

B) Answer the following questions:

5. How do you think reading helps our life?
6. What kind of books do you like to read? Why?
7. Suggest a suitable title to the passage.

2 Grammar hints

Grammar

- When you want to talk about your opinion of something such as a poet or a novel, you can use the present tenses; simple, perfect or continuous. But when you talk about the biography of the author or the writer, you mainly use the past simple tense.
- Take care when you talk or write about something that some verbs are followed by (to + inf.) or (V-ing) and also some verbs are followed by both according to the meaning.

How to form the present continuous tense:

Positive	Negative
- I am watching TV. - You/We/They are watching TV. - He/She/It is watching TV.	- I am not watching TV. - You/We/They aren't watching TV. - He/She/It isn't watching TV.
Question	**Passive form**
- Are you watching TV? - Are They/you watching TV? - Is he/she/it watching TV?	- Obj. + (am – is – are) being + p.p. - TV is being watched.





Listening text

Listening



Helping Vocabulary

Word	Meaning
activity	نشاط
Book Fair	معرض الكتاب
complex	معقد
content	محتوى
emphasise	يؤكد
establish	يؤسس
exhibitions	معارض
explore	يستكشف
expressions	تعبيرات
gather	يجمع
habit	عادة
hold	يقام
inability	عدم القدرة
literature	الأدب
poetry	الشعر
publishing	نشر
recognise	يتعرف على
reduce	يقلل

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In the afternoon, there will be plenty of .... to be practised by the kids.
   a) expressions b) exhibitions c) activities d) views
2. Most of the money will be used to .... local industries and mobilise the work-force.
   a) ruin b) emphasise c) reduce d) recognise
3. The chemical processes involved in the experiment are extremely ....
   a) wise b) complex c) portable d) rare
4. My teacher always .... the importance of studying hard.
   a) established b) explored c) gathered d) emphasised
5. Medical supplies have been .... among families affected by Corona virus.
   a) explored b) established c) distributed d) published
6. A collection of paintings by the great artist is on .... at the Museum of Art.
   a) literature b) Book Fair c) expression d) exhibition
7. He plans to .... the area before he rents a flat there.
   a) explore b) hold c) recognise d) reduce
8. What annoyed me is the .... of my team to win the match.
   a) inability b) content c) skill d) cleverness
9. .... is the business of producing books and magazines.
   a) Literature b) Publishing c) Emphasising d) Exploring
10. We thought it was COVID-19, but the doctor didn't .... the symptoms الأعراض.
    a) establish b) explore c) recognise d) hold

2 Translation:

A) Translate into English:

Writing

- الشعر، الرواية، القصص القصيرة، المسرحيات والكتب بمختلف موضوعاتها هى فنون الأدب الذى من خلاله نتعرف على ثقافة الدولة وشعبها.

B) Translate into Arabic:

The Cairo International Book Fair is the largest and oldest Book Fair in the Arab World. It is held every year at the Egypt International Exhibitions Centre.

3 Writing:

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

A biography of a famous Egyptian writer and his achievements.

The previous ideas (Comprehension - Vocabulary - Exercises - Translation - Grammar hints) may help you to write an appropriate essay.



Important
General
Grammar

Important General Grammar

Important General Grammar

1 Causative

السببية

وهى ليست مثل المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول فهى تأتى مع الأشياء التى لا يقوم الإنسان بفعلها بنفسه ولكن شخصًا آخر يقوم بهذا العمل له وتتكون من:

باقى الجملة	+	P.P. التصريف الثالث	+	الشىء	+	v. to have على حسب الزمن	+	الشخص صاحب الشىء

وعلى سبيل المثال، لو قلنا: إن الميكانيكى قام بتصليح سيارة أحمد، فلو بدأنا بالميكانيكى لأصبحت الجملة مبنية للمعلوم، ولو بدأنا بالسيارة لأصبحت الجملة مبنية للمجهول، ولو بدأنا بصاحب الشىء وهو أحمد لكانت الجملة سببية وهو ما نتحدث عنه الآن:

- The mechanic repaired Ahmed's car. (Active)
- Ahmed's car was repaired. (passive)
- Ahmed had his car repaired. (causative)

ولاحظ جيدًا تصريفات have فى مختلف الأزمنة وهى كالآتى:

أى فعل ناقص + have	will have	had had	have/has had	was having	had	is having	have/has

Active	Causative
She cleans her house.	She has her house cleaned.
She is cleaning her house.	She is having her house cleaned.
She cleaned her house.	She had her house cleaned.
She was cleaning her house.	She was having her house cleaned.
She will clean her house.	She will have her house cleaned.
She will be cleaning her house.	She will be having her house cleaned.
She has cleaned her house.	She has had her house cleaned.
She has been cleaning her house.	She has been having her house cleaned.

She had cleaned her house.	She had had her house cleaned.
She had been cleaning her house.	She had been having her house cleaned.
She must clean her house.	She must have her house cleaned.
She likes cleaning her house.	She likes having her house cleaned.
She has to clean her house.	She has to have her house cleaned.
She used to clean her house.	She used to have her house cleaned.

- Mother was preparing our food when we returned home.
= We were having our food prepared when we returned home.
- The barber is going to trim my hair.
- I'm going to have my hair trimmed.
- I have bought a computer for Mr Osama recently.
= Mr Osama has had a computer bought recently.

Ex.

A: I hardly recognised you! You have had your hair dyed, Ahmed.

B: You should have your eyes tested. My name's Ramy not Ahmed.

A: Oh! You have had your name changed too, haven't you?

ويمكن استخدام الفعل get بدلًا من have

- You should get/have your car washed and polished.
- Did you have your hair cut?

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He .... his teeth checked twice a year.
   - a) had
   - b) is having
   - c) will have
   - d) has
2. She .... her skirt cleaned at the moment.
   - a) is being had
   - b) has
   - c) is having
   - d) will have
3. I .... my hair trimmed once a month.
   - a) am having
   - b) have
   - c) will have
   - d) am going to have
4. We .... a central heating installed in our house next month.
   - a) are going to have
   - b) had had
   - c) had
   - d) have had
5. Omar .... burglar alarm fitted last week.
   - a) is having
   - b) has
   - c) has had
   - d) had
6. We .... our new furniture delivered tomorrow.
   - a) are had
   - b) have
   - c) are going to have
   - d) have had
7. They are having their new house .... at the moment.
   - a) decorating
   - b) decorated
   - c) decorate
   - d) decorates
8. Mrs. Othman had the shopping .... to the house by her son.
   - a) carried
   - b) carries
   - c) carrier
   - d) carrying
9. We have to .... the lock fixed.
   - a) had
   - b) having
   - c) be having
   - d) have
10. He is going to have a new pair of glasses ....
    - a) making
    - b) make
    - c) made
    - d) will make

2 Wishes & Regrets

الأمانى والندم

I wish & If only يا ليت

Wish/ If Only		
	+ Past Simple	→ refers to the present
	+ Past perfect	→ refers to the Past
	+ Would/could	→ refers to the Future

1. wish/ if only + past simple

١ - للتعبير عن أمنية عن موقف فى الحاضر نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط.

- My father only speaks Spanish. He wishes he spoke English or French.
- If only I didn't have so much homework. (I have a lot of homework).
- If only I lived in a big city. It's boring in the country.
- I wish I was/were a millionaire.

- يجوز استخدام (were) بدلًا من (was) فى هذه الحالة وخاصة فى المواقف الخيالية غير الواقعية.

2. wish/ if only + past perfect

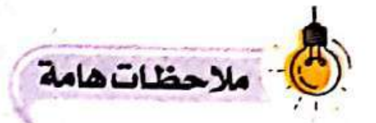
٢- للتعبير عن أمنية (ندم) عن موقف فى الماضى نستخدم زمن الماضى التام.

- I wish I'd studied harder when I was at school. (I didn't study harder when I was at school).
- I wish I hadn't eaten all that chocolate. I feel sick.

3. wish/ if only + would/ could

٣- للتعبير عن أمنية عن موقف فى المستقبل نستخدم (مصدر + would/could).

- I wish it would rain.
  - The garden really needs some water.
- I wish you'd give up smoking.
  - It's really bad for you.



١ - يمكن استخدام (could) بدلًا من الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن أمنية فى الحاضر:

- If only I could sing. (but I can't)
- I wish I could find my keys to be able to enter the flat.

٢- غالبًا ما نستخدم (could) مع (I/we) ويمكن استخدام (would/could) مع باقى الضمائر فى معان، خاصة مثل:

- I wish they could speak French. (They can't.)
- I wish they would speak French. (They don't want.)

- الجملة الأولى أنهم لا يستطيعون تحدث الفرنسية وأتمنى لو يستطيعون.
- الجملة الثانية أنهم يستطيعون تحدث الفرنسية ولكنهم لا يريدون وهذا يضايقنى.

٣- نستخدم (could have + P.P) بدلًا من الماضى التام للتعبير عن أمنية (ندم) عن موقف فى الماضى.

- I wish I could have attended your party, but I was abroad.

٤- نستخدم (If only) مثل حالات (if) كالآتى:

- If only Ahmed had come earlier, he'd have met his classmates.

٥- لا تؤثر (wishes/ wished) فى معنى الجملة أو زمنها.

- Maher wishes that he had a lot of money to buy a new house.
- Sameer wished he had mended the window before winter.

٦- يمكن أن نستخدم الماضى المستمر بعد (I wish/ if only).

- I wish it wasn't raining. (It is raining.)
- I wish you weren't leaving tomorrow. (You are leaving tomorrow.)

٧- إذا لم يوجد فاعل بعد wish يأتى (المصدر + to)

- Please do not hesitate to contact me if you wish to discuss the matter.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I wish my flat .... big enough to have a party.
   a) is **b)** would be
   c) will be **d)** were
2. Omnia wishes she .... all that money on new clothes.
   a) will spend **b)** could spend
   c) hadn't spent **d)** spends
3. Ali wishes he .... a basketball player, but he is short.
   a) is **b)** were
   c) had been **d)** are
4. I wish I .... to Ahmed's wedding last week as he is angry with me.
   a) had gone **b)** went
   c) would go **d)** will go
5. My hope is to be a doctor. I wish I .... a doctor.
   a) had been **b)** am
   c) would be **d)** could be
6. I can't concentrate. I wish they .... this music down.
   a) had turned **b)** have turned
   c) would turn **d)** turn
7. He is an engineer, but he wishes he .... medicine at university.
   a) studied **b)** had studied
   c) would study **d)** will study
8. I missed the train to Assuit. I wish I .... it.
   a) had caught **b)** caught
   c) catch **d)** would catch
9. I usually visit China, but I wish I .... their local food.
   a) had liked **b)** like
   c) would like **d)** liked
10. I regret going to the final match. I wish I .... there.
   a) didn't go **b)** wouldn't go
   c) hadn't gone **d)** won't go

3 had better/ would rather/ prefer

▸ had better + inf. = should/ ought to/ had better not + inf.

- نستخدم had better بمعنى يجب أن، وبعدها المصدر وفى النفى .not + inf

▸ He'd better book his flight early.

▸ I'd better not take out a loan; I won't be able to pay it back.

Would rather = prefer +v-ing

- نستخدم would rather بمعنى يجب أن وبعدها المصدر وفى النفى not + inf وهى تفيد تفضيل شىء على شىء، لذلك يمكن استخدام than ثم المصدر معها.

▸ I'd rather do my shopping tomorrow.

▸ I'd rather not have gone to the dinner party last night.

▸ I'd rather stay at home than go out. ('d rather + inf. than + inf.)

- إذا جاء اسم أو ضمير بعد rather نستخدم الماضى البسيط أو الماضى التام بنفس معنى wish نستخدم الماضى للتعبير عن المضارع والماضى التام للتعبير عن الماضى.

▸ I'd rather you stayed with us tonight. 'd rather + subject + past

▸ I'd rather Ramy hadn't taken his father's car yesterday.

(Prefer + ing) form/ noun + (to + ing) form/ noun (general preference)

▸ I prefer playing tennis to playing football. I prefer tennis to football.

Prefer + (to + inf.)/ noun + rather than + inf./ noun (general preference)

▸ I prefer to eat fish rather than (eat) meat.

Would prefer + to + inf. + rather than + inf. (specific preference)

▸ I'd prefer to walk home rather than take the bus.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We went to the theatre yesterday; today I would rather .... to the cinema.
   a) going
   b) to go
   c) go
   d) went
2. It's such nice weather – I 'd prefer .... in the garden rather than watch TV.
   a) to sitting
   b) sitting
   c) sit
   d) to sit
3. It's such nice weather – I 'd prefer to sit in the garden .... watching TV.
   a) instead of
   b) to
   c) than
   d) rather than
4. I'd rather you .... a taxi. It's not safe on the streets at night.
   a) to take
   b) take
   c) took
   d) not take
5. The film is quite violent. I'd rather our children .... it.
   a) watch
   b) didn't watch
   c) to watch
   d) watched
6. I prefer using a keyboard .... with a pen.
   a) to writing
   b) to write
   c) rather write
   d) than write
7. I'd rather speak to him in person .... things over the phone.
   a) to discussing
   b) to discuss
   c) than discussing
   d) than discuss
8. If I had a choice, I think I'd rather .... London.
   a) living in Paris to
   b) live in Paris than in
   c) live in Paris to
   d) to live in Paris than
9. They'd rather have lunch inside, but I'd prefer .... outside in the garden.
   a) eat
   b) eating
   c) to eat
   d) to eating
10. Although I love relaxing on beaches, I think I prefer .... in the mountains.
    a) walk
    b) not to walking
    c) to walking
    d) walking

4 Unreal Past

الماضى غير الحقيقى

- يمكن استخدام الماضى البسيط للإشارة إلى الحاضر (الحاضر غير الواقعى) عندما نتحدث عن مواقف وهمية أو غير واقعية أو غير محتملة تتعارض مع الحقائق فى الوقت الحاضر.
- يمكن استخدام الماضى التام للإشارة إلى مواقف وهمية أو غير واقعية أو غير محتملة تتعارض مع الحقائق فى الماضى (الماضى غير الحقيقى).

Past Simple is used with:	Past Perfect is used with:
- Conditionals Type 2 ▸ If I were you, I would pay. - wish (present) ▸ I wish he were here now. - Suppose/ Supposing ▸ Suppose you were asked to move out, what would you do? - I'd rather + sbuj. ... (present) ▸ I'd rather you went now. - as if/ as though كما لو ▸ He isn't French but he speaks French as if he were from France. - It's (about/high) time ▸ It's time you retired.	- Conditionals Type 3 ▸ If I had seen him, I would have told you. - wish (past) ▸ I wish you had taken his advice when he gave it. - Suppose/ Supposing ▸ Suppose you had seen the crime being committed, what would you have done? - I'd rather + subj. ... (past) ▸ I'd rather you hadn't told all those lies. - as if/ as though ▸ He hadn't been awarded the first prize but he behaved as if he had been awarded it.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mr Khalid acted as if he .... the company.
   a) would own   b) will own
   c) owns   d) owned
2. Supposing you .... taking the money, what would you have done?
   a) were seen   b) had been seen
   c) had seen   d) saw
3. I wish I .... to the concert last night.
   a) didn't go   b) went
   c) had gone   d) have gone
4. It's high time you .... how to cook.
   a) learnt   b) had learnt
   c) hadn't learnt   d) learn
5. Suppose you .... someone getting mugged يسرق, what would you do?
   a) were seen   b) saw
   c) had seen   d) can see
6. It's about time we .... the old printer.
   a) replace   b) had replaced
   c) replaced   d) have replaced
7. I'd rather you .... everyone my secret at the party last night.
   a) hadn't told   b) told
   c) didn't tell   d) had told
8. I would have prepared some sandwiches if I .... you were visiting.
   a) know   b) could know
   c) knew   d) had known
9. I'd rather you .... on the TV when I'm reading.
   a) turn   b) didn't turn
   c) hadn't turned   d) turned
10. If only I .... my dad's camera. He's very angry with me.
   a) broke   b) didn't break
   c) hadn't broken   d) had broken

5 Pronouns

الضمائر

الضمائر هي كلمات تشير إلى أسماء تنقسم إلى:

ضمائر فاعل – ضمائر مفعول – صفات ملكية – ضمائر ملكية – ضمائر منعكسة

Subject pronouns	Object pronouns	Possessive pronouns	Possessive adjectives	Reflexive pronouns
I	me	mine	my	myself
He	him	his	his	himself
She	her	hers	her	herself
It	it	--	its	itself
We	us	ours	our	ourselves
They	them	theirs	their	themselves
You	you	yours	your	yourself – yourselves
يأتى بعدها الفعل تأتى فى بداية الجملة	تأتى بعد الفعل تأتى بعد حرف الجر	لا تتبع باسم	يأتى بعدها الاسم	تعود على فاعل الجملة الغرض منها التأكيد

- I play football with my friends.
- He will visit me tomorrow.
- Don't speak with them again.
- This is my pen. = This pen is mine.
- I took his book but I couldn't take hers.
- I did my homework (by) myself.
- She, herself, phoned me to tell the truth.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Our house is as big as .... They are the same area.
   a) your
   b) you
   c) yourself
   d) yours
2. Trees protect .... from many problems such as global warming.
   a) us
   b) we
   c) our
   d) ours
3. Ali is going to travel tomorrow. .... has booked the tickets.
   a) His
   b) Him
   c) He
   d) Himself
4. Make .... at home and enjoy your time.
   a) yourself
   b) yours
   c) you
   d) ourselves
5. I couldn't clean the house by .... so I asked my sister's help.
   a) my
   b) myself
   c) mine
   d) me
6. Amal is sitting next to .... in the exam room.
   a) me
   b) mine
   c) my
   d) myself
7. I love English very much. .... my favourite subject.
   a) Its
   b) It's
   c) There's
   d) He's
8. When she came home, she made .... husband a cup of coffee.
   a) her
   b) hers
   c) herself
   d) hers
9. This is Mona's car, it isn't ....
   a) my
   b) her
   c) mine
   d) myself
10. You can take this present. I got it for ....
    a) your
    b) you
    c) yourself
    d) yourselves

6 Question Tag

السؤال المذيل

يأتى السؤال المذيل فى نهاية الجملة الخبرية بعد comma ويكون الغرض منه التأكيد بمعنى (أليس كذلك؟)

يتكون السؤال المذيل من كلمتين (auxiliary verb + Subject pronoun).

السؤال المذيل عكس حالة الجملة (يكون مثبتا إذا كانت الجملة منفية والعكس صحيح).

النفى فى السؤال المذيل يكون مختصرًا بمعنى (n't) و ليس (not).

- Ali is playing football, isn't he?
- They don't sleep late, do they?
- Mona always gets up early, doesn't she?
- I am happy, aren't I?
- I am not astonished, am I?
- You'd rather come early, wouldn't you?
- You'd better study hard, hadn't you?
- He'd studied his lessons, hadn't he?
- They'd study their lessons, wouldn't they?
- Open the door, will/won't you?
- Don't open the door, will you?
- Let's go out tonight, shall we?
- Let us go out tonight, will you?
- I think you will pass the exam, won't you?
- I don't think you will pass the exam, will you?
- I never watch plays on TV, do I?
- Someone is recording a video, aren't they?
- No one can come here today, can they?
- This is a nice story, isn't it?
- Amazing, isn't it?

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think that nobody lives in this house, ...?
   a) don't they b) do they
   c) don't I d) does he
2. We are very happy to be with you, ...?
   a) are we b) are you
   c) aren't we d) are we
3. Hams can hardly walk as she has injured her leg, ...?
   a) can she b) can't she
   c) does she d) has she
4. He's visited his grandfather and stayed a long time with him, ...?
   a) isn't he b) doesn't he
   c) hasn't he d) wasn't he
5. He slept after he had finished his homework, ...?
   a) hadn't he b) didn't he
   c) wouldn't he d) had he
6. He's the best grade in English, ...?
   a) has he b) isn't he
   c) doesn't he d) hasn't he
7. I am going to travel to Cairo tomorrow, ...?
   a) am not I b) amn't I
   c) am I d) aren't I
8. Hana runs fast to school, ...?
   a) doesn't Hana b) does not she
   c) doesn't she d) does Hana
9. Give me another chance, ...?
   a) will you b) would you
   c) wouldn't you c) will not you
10. I don't think they saw us, ...?
    a) did they b) do they
    c) didn't they c) do I

7 Conjunctions

الروابط

١ روابط التناقض

1. Although = though/even though (S + V + ... (بالرغم من (يأتى بعدها جملة كاملة)
- Although he's only 14, he's an expert at computers.

2. However + صفة + فاعل + فعل
- However fast he was, he couldn't catch the bus.

3. صفة + as + فاعل + فعل
- Fast as he was, he couldn't catch the bus.

4. Despite/in spite of (noun/ gerund = V + ing) بالرغم من (يأتى بعدها عبارة)
- Despite his illness, he passed his exams.

5. but =, however =, yet
- She drove fast, however she missed the plane.
- I studied so hard, but I didn't get the full mark.

٢ روابط الإضافة

6. As well as = besides + in addition to (noun/ gerund) بالإضافة إلى
- Besides cooking for 20 people, I did all the washing up.

7. in addition + جملة
- He played very well in addition he scored a goal.

8. فاعل, as well as فاعل، فعل يتبع الفاعل الأول
- I, as well as my friend, play football well.

9. Not only + صيغة استفهامية + but + جملة كاملة + as well
- Not only have you got top marks but you've got a prize as well.

٣ روابط السبب

10. Because = since = as (S + V) (لأن (يأتى بعدهم جملة كاملة
- Because /since we are early, I think we should wait outside.
- My daughter got up early because she slept early.

11. Because of = owing to = due to (noun/ gerund) بسبب
- Due to the bad weather, the match was cancelled.
- He can answer any question because of being clever.

٤ روابط الغرض

12. So as to = in order to = to + inf. لكى
- He opened the door in order to see who was there.

13. So that = in order that (S فاعل + can/may/could/might + verb)
- He left early so that he could/ (might) catch the train.

٥ روابط النتيجة

14. So = therefore =that's why = - Consequently
- My bike's broken, so I'll have to walk.
- I missed the train. Consequently I was late for school.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He didn't expect to win .... he was delighted when he won the gold medal.
   a) so b) for c) if d) as
2. They risked their lives .... save their country.
   a) due to b) so that c) because d) so as to
3. .... writing a famous book, he translated French literature into Arabic.
   a) Because of b) Beside c) In addition d) As well as
4. I want to buy a nice present .... it is my mother's birthday.
   a) so b) as c) although d) despite
5. I felt really tired this morning .... I slept early last night.
   a) because b) but c) although d) so that
6. He tries to save much money .... he can buy a car.
   a) so that b) to c) in order to d) because
7. .... old he is, he can play tennis very well.
   a) However b) Although c) Despite d) So
8. He didn't do his best, ... he came first in the final exam.
   a) so b) because c) However d) however
9. I was very late for my work. ...., I had to take a taxi.
   a) Consequently b) Occasionally c) However d) As well
10. My brother, as well as his friends,.................. late for school.
    a) were b) are c) have been d) was
11. .... running as fast as he could, he missed the bus.
    a) However b) As well as c) Despite d) Although
12. Hams had to change her opinion .... the problems she had.
    a) owing to b) because c) so d) besides
13. Poor .... this man is, he feels very happy and satisfied.
    a) however b) as c) although d) so
14. She didn't attend the wedding .... she had promised me to come.
    a) so b) though c) because d) but
15. Not only .... to the party, but he brought a present as well.
    a) he came b) he had come c) did he come d) will he come

8 so ... that/ such ... that/ enough/ too ... to

1. فاعل + فعل + so + صفة – ظرف + that + جملة　　جدًا لدرجة أن

▸ Hams is so clever that she can answer any questions.

2. فاعل + فعل + such + a/an+ صفة + اسم + that + جملة　　جدًا لدرجة أن

▸ Hams is such a clever student that she can answer any question.

3. فاعل + فعل + such + صفة + اسم جمع – اسم لا يعد + that + جملة

▸ They are such clever students that they can answer any questions.

▸ He gave me such useful information that we were so happy.

4. فاعل + فعل + adjective / adverb + enough + to + inf.　　كافٍ

▸ Hana is clever enough to answer any question.

▸ She isn't tall enough to join the basketball team.

5. فاعل + فعل + enough + اسم + to + inf.

▸ He has enough money to buy the car that he likes.

6. فاعل + فعل + too + صفة – ظرف + to +inf.　　جدًا لدرجة أن لا (تعطى معنى النفى)

▸ Ali is too lazy to do the homework.

▸ The question was too difficult to answer.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He is .... clever student that he always gets the full mark in his exams.
   a) such b) such a
   c) so d) too
2. I couldn't answer the question. It was .... for anyone to answer.
   a) so difficult b) difficult enough
   c) too difficult d) such difficult
3. Ali is .... ill to go to school on his own.
   a) enough b) too
   c) so d) such an
4. The food was .... hot to eat.
   a) too b) to
   c) so d) very
5. I have .... work to do. It's hard to finish it.
   a) so much b) such much
   c) too much d) enough much
6. The water in the pool was .... to swim in.
   a) cold enough b) so cold
   c) enough cold d) too cold
7. So fast .... that he could catch the bus before leaving.
   a) Ali ran b) did Ali run
   c) Ali was run d) Ali was
8. I don't have .... money to buy this wonderful car.
   a) too much b) such much
   c) enough d) many
9. He is .... stupid that he couldn't pass the simple test.
   a) so b) such
   c) too d) enough
10. I think they are .... students that they managed to pass all their exams.
   a) so clever b) such a clever
   c) such clever d) so a clever

9 Distributives

all + اسم جمع يعد ----------- فعل جمع
all + اسم كمية لا يعد ---------- فعل مفرد

both + اسم جمع يعد ----------- فعل جمع
both + فاعل + and + فاعل ---------- فعل جمع

either + اسم مفرد يعد ------------ (إثبات) فعل مفرد
either of + اسم جمع ----------- فعل مفرد أو جمع
either .... or .... الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثانى
neither + اسم مفرد يعد ----------- (تعطى معنى النفى) فعل مفرد فى صيغة الإثبات
neither of + اسم جمع ------------ فعل مفرد أو جمع
neither .... nor .... الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثانى

every + اسم مفرد = all + اسم جمع
every + الفترات الزمنية

each + اسم مفرد كل واحد على حدة
each of + اسم جمع -------------- فعل جمع
each + اسم مفرد تشير إلى واحد من اثنين each arm = both arms

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hams wants to study .... English or Geology at school.
   a) either b) both c) neither d) half
2. There was a fire in the toy shop and .... toys were damaged.
   a) both b) all c) every d) each
3. .... of my parents are at home today because they are at work.
   a) Neither b) Both c) Either d) All
4. My teacher gave .... student in the class a small present.
   a) all b) each c) either d) both
5. .... the rice that you need is in the cupboard.
   a) All b) Both c) Either d) Each
6. I need to be good at .... speaking and writing English to get a good job.
   a) each b) both c) every d) half
7. I called both Hana and Mona, but .... replied.
   a) neither b) either c) both d) every
8. He had an accident and he was injured in .... leg.
   a) both b) every c) all d) each
9. He had an accident and he was injured in .... legs.
   a) both b) every c) all d) each
10. He comes to visit his parents .... three days.
    a) each b) all c) half d) every
11. .... citizen has the right to vote in the elections.
    a) Both b) Every c) Neither d) All
12. Neither Dina nor her sisters .... to the club.
    a) go b) is going b) goes d) has gone
13. .... student in the class knows the right answer to this question. I am really shocked.
    a) Every b) Neither b) All d) Either
14. .... of the two brothers were at the party yesterday.
    a) All b) Every b) Half d) Each
15. The teacher will ask .... student in turn.
    a) all b) each b) neither d) both

10 Adjectives

الصفة هى الكلمة التى تصف الاسم وتأتى:

١- قبل الاسم المفرد أو الجمع

٢- بعد v-to be

٣- بعد الظرف

- Ali is a clever boy.
- I saw some wonderful animals yesterday.
- Hind is lazy.
- He was well-organized.

Ordinary and Extreme adjectives:

بعض الصفات عادية فى حين أن بعض الصفات قوية:

الصفات العادية نستخدم معها الظروف التالية:

- Very – quite – fairly – rather

الصفات القوية نستخدم معها الظروف التالية

- Absolutely – extremely – totally – completely – really – incredibly

Examples of ordinary and strong adjectives:

Ordinary	Strong	Ordinary	Strong
happy	excited	bad	awful
clever	brilliant	good	amazing
cold	freezing	angry	furious
interesting	fascinating	large	huge
hot	boiling	clean	spotless

- Mona is very angry.
- Mona is absolutely furious.

Verbs followed by adjectives

الأفعال التالية يأتى بعدها صفة:

(go – get – turn – fall – grow – come – become – feel …….)

- The weather turned cold.
- He fell asleep while watching the film.



Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He is .... I can't stand dealing or even speaking with him.
   a) bore b) bored
   c) boring d) boredom
2. The soup tasted ...., so I asked for some more.
   a) wonderfully b) wonder
   c) wonderful d) wonders
3. School kids are very .... during breaks.
   a) noisy b) nosily
   c) noise d) nosiness
4. Mona is absolutely .... with her children who broke the vase.
   a) angry b) annoyed
   c) angrily d) furious
5. He tried to solve the problem, but everything went ....
   a) wrong b) wrongly
   c) wronged d) wrongness
6. My son Mohammed is .... clever.
   a) absolutely b) terribly
   c) very d) enough
7. I looked .... at the present that my dad bought.
   a) happy b) happily
   c) happening d) happiness
8. The plane that I saw flew .... in the sky.
   a) high b) highness
   c) highly d) higher
9. He was brought up .... so, he has good manners.
   a) badly b) bad
   c) good d) well
10. My brother is .... tall, so I advised him to join a basketball team.
    a) extreme b) extremely
    c) extremism d) an extreme

11 The Gerund and The Past Participle as Adjectives

1. The gerund is used as an adjective for the doer of the action. (اسم الفاعل)

- تصف المسبب للحدث (اسم الفاعل)

- The film is amazing. (not amazed)
- He was very boring and I had no desire to talk to him.

2. The past participle adjective is used for the receiver of the action. (اسم مفعول)

- تصف مستقبل الحدث (اسم مفعول)

- I was amazed when I saw the film.
- I am really bored when I talk to this person.

- ومن هنا نلاحظ أنه من الخطأ الشائع أن نقول إن الصفات المنتهية بـ ing تصف الأشياء وإن الصفات المنتهية بـ ed تصف الأشخاص.

- I was very frightened when I met that frightening man.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was so .... and for that reason I went to bed early.
   a) tiring b) tire
   c) tired d) tiredness
2. The dog got .... with the same food that it usually got.
   a) boring b) bored
   c) boredom d) bore
3. I became .... on seeing the mountains in Sinai.
   a) impressed b) impressing
   c) impressive d) impress
4. Mido is so .... that I always enjoy being with him.
   a) interested b) interest
   c) interests d) interesting
5. The match was .... so we were so happy to attend it in the stadium.
   a) fascinated b) fascinating
   c) fascinate d) fascination

12 Adverbs

الظرف هو الكلمة التى تصف الفعل وتأتى:

بعد الفعل

قبل الصفة

فى بداية الجملة أحيانا

- He runs quickly.
- Ali is badly injured.
- Interestingly, they won the match.

هناك عدة أشكال مختلفة للظرف و هى:

إضافة ly للصفة مثل:

slowly – quickly – interestingly – terribly – happily .....

ظروف و صفات بنفس الشكل

high – late – early – hard – fast

الصفات المنتهية بـ ly نستخدم الترتيب التالى:

in a/a + adj. + way

in a friendly way – in an ugly way

ظروف التكرار مثل:

often – generally – sometimes – hardly – rarely – frequently

ظروف التأكيد والاحتمال:

certainly – definitely – probably – exactly – possibly – maybe

ظروف الدرجة:

almost – much – nearly – quite – really – very – too – fairly – extremely

ظروف شاذة مثل:

well – indoors – outdoors

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother was ...., so she was taken to hospital.
   a) bad injury
   b) bad injured
   c) badly injured
   d) injured bad
2. I shouted .... at my son when he broke his toys.
   a) angry
   b) angrily
   c) anger
   d) angrier
3. I haven't seen her .... She must be travelling.
   a) late
   b) later
   c) lately
   d) late time
4. Teachers at schools treat students ....
   a) in a friendly way
   b) friendly
   c) in friendly
   d) in a friend way
5. ...., I own a very wonderful house.
   a) Current
   b) In a current way
   c) Current less
   d) Currently
6. I could .... walk after the terrible accident because of my broken leg.
   a) hardly
   b) hard
   c) harder
   d) hardness
7. I always speak .... about our great Egyptian scientists.
   a) proud
   b) pride
   c) proudness
   d) proudly

13 Comparative and Superlative

Comparative	Superlative
صفات الدرجة الثانية و هى المقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين	التفضيل بين شخص أو شىء و بين مجموعته
adj. + er + than	the + adj. + est
more + adj. + than	the most + adj.
less + adj. + than	the least + adj.
better + than	the best
worse + than	the worst

- Mona is taller than Leila.
  - Mona is the tallest in the class
- Basma is more beautiful than Hams.
  - Basma is the most beautiful in the family.
- Ahmed is better than Ali.
  - Ahmed is the best student in the class.

عند المساواة equality نستخدم as + adj. + as

عند نفى التساوى نستخدم not as (so) + adj. + as

- Rasha is as clever as Noha.
- Rami isn't as (so) fast as Ali.

لاحظ الآتى:

The + comparative of two ....

- He is the taller of two friends.

The + comparative ...., the + comparative .... كلما .... كلما

- The more you study, the higher marks you will get.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This is .... interesting book I have ever read.
   - a) more
   - b) most
   - c) as
   - d) the most
2. Maha is .... of the two sisters.
   - a) fast
   - b) faster
   - c) the faster
   - d) the fastest
3. This question is not .... the other one.
   - a) more difficult
   - b) most difficult
   - c) as difficult
   - d) so difficult as
4. The .... you run, the earlier you arrive.
   - a) most
   - b) more
   - c) fastest
   - d) must
5. Who is ...., Mona or Eman?
   - a) young
   - b) the youngest
   - c) as younger
   - d) younger
6. No river in the world is .... the river Nile.
   - a) as long as
   - b) longer than
   - c) the longest
   - d) longest
7. Of all the boys in my street, Hani is ....
   - a) clever
   - b) cleverest
   - c) cleverer
   - d) the most cleverest
8. I am good at cooking, but my mother is ....
   - a) better
   - b) best
   - c) goodies
   - d) the better
9. I think running is .... useful than walking.
   - a) much
   - b) much more
   - c) many
   - d) more much
10. This is one of .... places in the whole world.
    - a) hotter than
    - b) the hottest
    - c) as hot
    - d) the most hot

AL ADWAA

Gem

New

HELLO ENGLISH LANGUAGE

First Term

2021

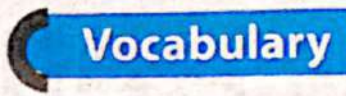
Teacher`s Guide

1st Secondary



(Dictation)





Vocabulary

مميز	....
يتجنب	....
السياحة البيئية	....
أماكن جذب	....
جهة الوصول	....
يترجل	....
متطوع	....
مواد خام	....
لحسن الحظ	....
حديث	....
غريب	....
يستريح	....
نبات الخس	....
منتج	....
تنين	....
جنة	....
تأثير	....
مهدد بالخطر	....
الحفاظ على البيئة	....
هدية تذكارية	....
معزول	....
مستدام	....
الحياة البرية	....
نظام بيئى	....
مزدحم	....
بشكل أساسى	....
يشجع	....
سكان	....
حماية	....
مواد خام	....

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

على الأقل	....
يؤكد	....
يعود إلى	....
يميل إلى الخارج من	....
يستغل	....
يلتقط صورًا	....
يتنزه	....
يذهب فى إجازة	....
يتمكن من	....
يقوم بعمل شىء مختلف	....
يدون ملاحظات	....
مزايا لـ	....
سعيد جدًا	....
أنا عالق	....



Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. As he has an infection, he was .... in special part in a hospital.
   a) isolated b) limited c) existed d) damaged
2. Luxor is considered a main .... for most tourists.
   a) location b) destination c) cooperation d) foundation
3. Some rare animals are .... nowadays and we should ban hunting them.
   a) in dangerous b) dangerous c) traditional d) endangered
4. Too much stress isn't good for you. You should have time to ....
   a) press b) relax c) depress d) confess
5. Hurgada is considered one of the most fascinating .... in the world.
   a) resorts b) stores c) reports d) regards
6. All day yesterday, my mother .... the flat and so she was so tired.
   a) had cleaned b) was cleaning c) is cleaning d) has cleaned
7. Two weeks ago, our school .... the beginning of the new year.
   a) celebrated b) celebrates c) has celebrated d) was celebrated
8. Mai usually .... a lot of TV when she was on holiday.
   a) watches b) is watching c) has watched d) watched
9. .... they were travelling to Alex, they faced many problems on the way.
   a) After b) Before c) As soon as d) While
10. Just as he was going home, his friend .... to him about their future.
    a) is talking b) talked c) was talking d) has talked

2 Fill in the space:

When I reached the station, my friend was waiting for me. He was ....(a).............. a small bag and looked so happy. ....(b).............. he saw me, he hurried to shake hands with me. He told me that he had booked the tickets. We ....(c).............. going to Alexandria to spend our summer holiday together. We were really excited to do so. We waited ....(d).............. the train arrived, and set off happily.

3 A) Translate into English:

• إذا كان من الواجب علينا تشجيع السياح لزيارة مصر فإنه من الواجب على كل سائح أن يحافظ على ممتلكات هذا البلد العريق.

....

....

B) Translate into Arabic:

All of us should keep the environment clean to be able to live a happy and healthy life in a clean country.

....

....



(Dictation)



Vocabulary

Word	
احترام/بريستيج	....
زراعة الأعضاء	....
ضغط الدم	....
يقنع	....
مظهر خارجي	....
فيلم وثائقي	....
مسئول عن	....
شخصية	....
فوائد	....
جمعية خيرية	....
سرطان	....
معرفة	....
بحث علمي	....
دخل	....
هدف	....
مجتمع	....
تبرع	....
إعجاب	....
تقليدى	....
منظمة	....
ذكاء	....
يوظف	....
مسئولية	....
يراقب	....
طويل المدى	....
موطن	....
مؤسس	....
بدلًا من	....

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

Expression	
يغضب من شخص	....
يتبرع بالدم	....
على سطح	....
يمدح من أجل	....
كميات من	....
يتوه/يضل الطريق	....
يبحث عن	....
يشارك فى	....
مهم لـ	....
يعطى فرصة	....
الشعور بالمسئولية	....
يعطى إحساسًا بـ	....

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We all .... our teacher for his intelligence and good manners.
   a) donate b) admire c) illustrate d) hate
2. My wife was ill and the iron .... were so low.
   a) standards b) tests c) levels d) stairs
3. The synonym of the word decrease is ....
   a) increase b) deduce c) introduce d) reduce
4. My father was a very .... man. He was ready to give money to anyone who needed it.
   a) generous b) greedy c) brilliant d) careless
5. Every one of us should have a .... model to imitate.
   a) roll b) role c) rule d) ruler
6. It is a fact that water .... when we heat it.
   a) will boil b) boiled c) boils d) is boiling
7. Noha no longer goes out a lot as she .... in the past
   a) is used to doing b) was using to do c) uses to do d) used to do
8. People .... from their work when they are 60.
   a) are retiring b) retired c) retire d) have retired
9. As soon as she .... from work, she will clean the house.
   a) comes b) came c) had come d) is coming
10. This shop sells good clothes, they .... of fine wool.
    a) make b) made c) are made d) are making

2 Fill in the space:

My car was stolen yesterday. I parked it in the side street ....(a)............ finishing my work and going home to have my lunch and rest for a while. When I returned to get it, I discovered it ....(b)............ there. I went to the police station and ....(c)............ the theft. The policeman asked me ....(d)............ questions and promised to get it back as soon as possible.

3 A) Translate into English:

• يعتبر محمد صلاح مثالًا وقدوة حسنة للكثير من شبابنا اليوم لما يتمتع به من أخلاق كريمة.

....

....

B) Translate into Arabic:

The internet is very useful nowadays as it can be used to help all people throughout the world to get all that you need.

....

....



(Dictation)



Vocabulary

مجرمون	....	اكتشاف	....
تاجر	....	يحسن/يطور	....
مرحلة الطفولة	....	ممتلئ الجسم	....
يعترف	....	بائس	....
تسلية	....	مجتمع	....
مماثل	....	يكافئ	....
آلات	....	بالضبط	....
ثقافة	....	مسرح	....
عمل تطوعى	....	اعتراف	....
زوج الأم	....	خبرة/تجربة	....
معاق	....	يثق	....
غير معتاد	....	يدين لـ	....
يستحق	....		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

سيدة تبدو متعبة	....	يخالف القانون	....
يرد دينًا	....	يدين بالمال لـ	....
يصنع اختلافًا	....	مشكلة مع	....
يقوم بعمل عظيم	....	يوقف ... من	....
يخدع	....	يعود إلى	....

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All those who travel abroad to study and work .... much useful experience.
   a) earn b) gain c) win d) succeed
2. I really feel tired. Too much work makes me look ....
   a) deadly b) empty c) happy d) miserable
3. The school should be a place for education and also for .... to be attractive.
   a) performance b) explanation c) entertainment d) payment
4. My little daughter began to look .... and so she wanted to follow a diet.
   a) ugly b) plump c) tired d) dirty
5. We should all try to keep our .... heritage safe.
   a) cultural b) cultured c) culture d) cultures
6. I think it is a long time .... I had such a wonderful time.
   a) for b) since c) when d) as
7. Nadia isn't at home now. She .... to Mansura to apply to university.
   a) has gone b) visited c) has been d) had been
8. The last time he played football with us was .... we were in Aswan.
   a) when b) since c) while d) during
9. They .... for this company for 20 years before starting their own business.
   a) work b) have worked c) are working d) worked
10. Adel .... in this flat since 2015 and he has no intention to leave it.
    a) lives b) lived c) is going to live d) has lived

2 Fill in the space:

Sometimes I'd like to do some thing useful. I ....(a)............ graduated from the Faculty of Commerce recently. I haven't found a job ....(b)............ . I think of running my own business but this needs to have much money. My father helped me finish my study, but now he can't give me the money I need. I ....(c)............ one of my friends to lend me some. He has ....(d)............ agreed and I hope my business will be a success.

3 A) Translate into English:

• لكى تكون ناجحًا فى حياتك، ينبغى عليك أن يكون لديك الشجاعة والطموح والثقة بالنفس والصبر.

....

....

B) Translate into Arabic:

Loyalty and belonging are the two most important qualities that all of us should have if we dream of a developed country.

....

....



(Dictation)



Vocabulary

صلة/علاقة	....	لوحة إعلانات	....
يكره	....	محادثة	....
صداقة	....	شخصى	....
مرتبة/تقدير	....	مفضل	....
يغش	....	تنمر/بلطجة	....
مضيفة	....	يتصرف	....
حقيبة الظهر	....	إثارة	....
التمريض	....	كراهية	....
سلبى	....	يستمر	....
إضافى	....	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	....
يواجه	....	تدريب	....
حفظ الأمن والنظام	....	يسترخى	....

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

يكون صداقات	....	وقت الراحة	....
يشعر بتحسن	....	عضو فى فريق	....
مرتبط بـ	....	يمارس رياضة جماعية	....
بمفردى	....	بدلًا من	....
على قدر اهتمامى	....	يشير إلى	....
يتبادل الأدوار	....	غاضب من	....

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When I feel ...., I usually go out in the open air to relax.
   a) happy b) stressed c) pleased d) delighted
2. Many people .... the company's customer service to ask about the date of opening the new branch.
   a) communicate b) connect c) link d) contact
3. As he is sociable, he prefers doing .... sports.
   a) team b) individual c) solo d) lonely
4. My son is still a/an .... He is only 13 years old.
   a) adult b) grown up c) teenager d) youth
5. I'm sure education and health development will help the country to be advanced, I take it for ....
   a) granted b) greeted c) geared d) regarded.
6. I hope I will have .... computer connected to the internet.
   a) the b) a c) an d) no article
7. When I went to school, there were only .... students in the class.
   a) a few b) a little c) many d) much
8. It is true that English is .... most important language is.
   a) an b) the c) a d) no article
9. My father's glasses .... in the house garden two days ago.
   a) was lost b) were lost c) is lost d) have lost
10. We usually go to .... cinema every Friday to watch the new film there.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article

2 Fill in the space:

New York is the biggest city in the USA. The capital of the country is Washington. But New York is one of the ....(a)............... important business centres in the world. The Statue of Liberty, which is at the entrance of the harbour is ....(b)............... symbol of freedom and welcomes visitors ....(c)............... other countries. There are ....(d)............... huge buildings and skyscrapers in New York.

3 A) Translate into English:

• الصديق الحقيقى هو الشخص الذى تعتمد عليه عندما تواجه التحديات والمشكلات الخطيرة والذى دائمًا ما يقدم لك النصيحة.

....

....

B) Translate into Arabic:

By owing a mobile phone you can solve many issues and hold most of information around the world.

....

....



(Dictation)



Vocabulary

عمل تجارى	....
عيوب	....
مرن	....
خبير	....
منظمة	....
دراسة/استطلاع	....
مهمة	....
إضاءة	....
احتيال	....
غاضب جدًا	....
صاحب العمل	....
غير مرغوب فيه	....
مخيف	....
قدرات	....
القرصنة	....

متصل	....
يخلق/ينتج	....
الهاتف الذكى	....
يخترق	....
خيال	....
نظام	....
بشكل غير قانونى	....
رئيسى	....
التنمر الإلكترونى	....
تفاصيل	....
تصرف/سلوك	....
فظيع	....
وثيقة	....
التصيد/الاحتيال	....
عالمى	....

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

يتخذ قرارًا	....
يجمع معلومات	....
تعليق على	....
مكان آمن لـ	....
يسرق من	....
يختلط اجتماعيًا مع	....

بقدر ما أستطيع	....
يخسر مالًا	....
قلق بشأن	....
يملأ استمارة	....
يحتفظ بملحوظة	....
يملأ استمارة	....

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Because of the earthquake, there is no .... between the two cities now.
   a) convention b) communication c) contract d) conduction
2. The internet is the largest computer .... in the world.
   a) framework b) network c) workstation d) teamwork
3. I always advise my children not to watch .... movies as they make them fearful.
   a) comic b) funny c) exciting d) scary
4. My friend's smartphone was lost and he looks ....
   a) pleased b) frightened c) terrific d) furious
5. It was difficult to .... my friend after this long period of absence.
   a) recognise b) clarify c) know d) rationalise
6. They .... They have already decided that.
   a) will leave b) are leaving c) are going to leave d) would leave
7. The sky is very gloomy, I think it ....
   a) will rain b) is raining c) would rain d) is going to rain
8. All students in this class .... their exams. That is my expectation.
   a) will pass b) are passing c) are going to pass d) pass
9. The farmer is carrying some grass. He .... the sheep.
   a) will feed b) is feeding c) might have fed d) is going to feed
10. The bus, which my friend is in, ... at Cairo at 7 p.m.
    a) arrives b) arrived c) will arrive d) has arrived

2 Fill in the space:

What do you do in a situation like this? You are eating dinner with some friends at ....(a)............. nice restaurant. You are ....(b)............. a great and quiet time when a phone rings at the table next to you. A man takes ....(c)............. his phone and starts speaking loudly about what he is having with his friend. He talks ....(d)............. about twenty minutes! I think this situation happens all the time on buses, in restaurants and everywhere.

3 A) Translate into English:

• يعتقد بعض الناس أن النجاح فى الحياة هو الحصول على المال فقط وأن الفقر هو سبب من أسباب الفشل والبؤس.

....

....

B) Translate into Arabic:

Fighting pollution and many of the world's other problems requires peoples' awareness and cooperation.

....

....



(Dictation)



Vocabulary

عادل	....
مختطف	....
حصى	....
محام	....
محبوب	....
كنز	....
مناقشة	....
الوزن الشعرى	....
بيت فى قصيدة	....
تكرار	....
مختصر	....
قصيدة	....
دافئ	....
ملخص	....
جزيرة	....

الأدب	....
يحسن	....
قش	....
روائى	....
يفترض	....
قافية الشعر	....
قضية	....
السيرة الذاتية	....
راشد/بالغ	....
ضوء الشمعة	....
يروى	....
قطعة أرض زراعية	....
يقفز على قدم واحدة	....
أدوات بسيطة	....
صف من العنب	....

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

على وجه الخصوص	....
مختلف عن	....
يلـزم الطريق المفـروش بالحصى لكى لا تطأ قدماه النباتات	....
نهارًا	....
يبقى فى	....
يمر أمام	....

يقوم بعمل معروف	....
يتبع القواعد	....
يقارن بـ	....
يبتعد عن	....
يبحث عن	....
يبقى فى	....

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My left leg was hurt and I had to .... to reach home. It was so difficult.
   a) hope b) hop c) hip d) drill
2. Thank you for the great favour that you have .... You are thoughtful.
   a) made b) played c) had d) done
3. My uncle likes reading old .... for his children. He likes poetry as a whole.
   a) novels b) stories c) poems d) books
4. He is fond of the French .... and usually buys books about it.
   a) literary b) literature c) literal d) liberal
5. The antonym of the word "improve" is ....
   a) enhance b) spend c) desire d) decline
6. I can't remember .... him the money when we met the other day.
   a) to giving b) give c) giving d) to give
7. Please, stop .... on the door like that. It is too noisy.
   a) knocking b) to knock c) knock d) to knocking
8. I spoke with him, but I couldn't persuade him .... with me.
   a) coming b) to coming c) to come d) come
9. They decided to build a new factory, but we all object .... this factory.
   a) building b) to building c) to build d) to have built
10. We don't allow anyone .... any noise at night.
    a) to make b) making c) to making d) make

2 Fill in the space:

The summer holidays are the best part of the year for most students. The weather is usually fine. So, they can practise ....(a).............. games. If they live in a big town, they like ....(b).............. go to the gardens or to the clubs to play. ....(c).............. students are lucky enough to live near the sea. They can swim in it for hours. When summer holidays are over, everyone returns to ....(d).............. school.

3 A) Translate into English:

• تلعب الصداقة دورًا هامًا فى حياة الفرد وهى قائمة على قواعد الثقة والصدق والاحترام المتبادل.

....

....

B) Translate into Arabic:

"If you do not smoke, do not start." is a very valuable piece of advice that we often receive from the majority of doctors.

....

....

1st SEC.

Answers to Main Book Exercises

UNIT 1 Getting away

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** protect
2. **b)** endangered
3. **c)** provide
4. **b)** wildlife
5. **d)** limited
6. **a)** sustainable
7. **c)** fussy
8. **d)** isolated
9. **b)** unique
10. **d)** attractions
11. **d)** destination
12. **a)** leaning
13. **a)** flight
14. **b)** conservationists
15. **c)** volunteered
16. **b)** Ecosystem
17. **a)** impact
18. **a)** swelled
19. **b)** trekking
20. **d)** Ecotourism
21. **c)** get to
22. **b)** environmentally friendly
23. **c)** off
24. **b)** takes
25. **d)** make
26. **a)** sound
27. **a)** endangered/ **d)** in danger
28. **b)** how to draw/ **e)** to draw
29. **c)** exceptional/ **d)** special
30. **d)** close/ **e)** near

Language Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** in
2. **c)** received
3. **d)** was being cooked
4. **d)** rang
5. **a)** were watching
6. **d)** was being repaired
7. **b)** were
8. **b)** didn't use to
9. **a)** carry
10. **b)** use
11. **d)** While
12. **c)** was studying
13. **c)** no longer
14. **d)** was having
15. **b)** were you driving
16. **b)** Did you have
17. **c)** used to sleep
18. **a)** used to be a heavy smoker
19. **c)** to getting
20. **c)** had
21. **d)** was planning
22. **b)** was being chased
23. **b)** was watching
24. **b)** didn't use to
25. **a)** he sleeps early now
26. **d)** he was a player in the match
27. **b)** during my lunch
28. **b)** doesn't like it now
29. **d)** We didn't go out last night.
30. **c)** Did you liked my present?

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** population
2. **b)** victims
3. **a)** rebuilt
4. **c)** along
5. **c)** internal
6. **d)** included
7. **b)** biology
8. **c)** catch
9. **b)** dropped
10. **c)** was being prepared
11. **a)** was thinking
12. **b)** learnt
13. **c)** when
14. **b)** was helping
15. **a)** am used to finishing
16. **d)** used to

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** have beneficial effect
2. **b)** brings about primitive and isolated communities
3. **c)** to exceed speed limits
4. **b)** people very much like to have cars
5. **c)** the number of people who are killed or injured
6. **a)** provide job opportunities
7. **d)** a & c
8. **b)** Solving the problems of cars and roads

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١. ينبغى أن يكون لجميع الآباء دور فعال فى دفع وتشجيع أطفالهم على المشاركة فى تقدم بلادهم.

٢. مما لا شك فيه أن إصلاح التعليم ضرورة حتى لو أنفقنا عليه المليارات من الأموال.

٣. يجب أن نعتبر المال وسيلة وليس غاية لذلك لا ينبغى علينا أن نجمع المال فقط ولكن ينبغى علينا استثماره فى مشروعات مفيدة.

٤. يقدم الآباء نموذجًا للأطفال لكيفية حل الخلافات فى العلاقات الوثيقة.

٥. قد يعتقد بعض البالغين والمدرسين أن الشباب يرغبون فى قضاء كل وقتهم فى استخدام وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى، ولكن دراسة حديثة تظهر أن هذا قد لا يكون صحيحًا.

B) Translate into English:

1. All that we dream about and hope to get is a real opportunity for education, work and health care to live a happy life.
2. We all consider the Internet a miracle in this era, as it has become an indispensable necessity in all areas of life whether personal or public.
3. Education is really the basis of progress and development for the peoples and countries of the world, whether developed or developing ones, because it helps us to prepare generations of citizens who are able to make changes.
4. The future of any nation that wants to progress, advance and keep pace with developed countries will not be achieved without their children and youth, as children are the hope and youth are the backbone of any country.
5. There is no doubt that we all as Egyptians reject all forms of terrorism, violence and the killing of innocents, as well as the destruction of the infrastructure of the state, so we all stand with the government in its war against terrorists.

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) crowded
2. d) expect
3. d) gardener
4. d) boring
5. c) actually
6. d) amazing
7. a) balcony
8. d) ancient
9. b) stole
10. a) robbed
11. a) noisy
12. c) stressed
13. b) brilliant
14. a) weather
15. b) climate
16. d) support
17. c) scanned
18. d) both b and c
19. b) awful
20. c) grow
21. b) tiny
22. c) peaceful
23. a) with
24. d) taking
25. d) along
26. b) of
27. b) on board/ e) aboard
28. b) ugly/ d) awful
29. c) kids/ d) children
30. b) dull/ d) boring

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) was walking
2. c) was sleeping
3. d) On
4. c) being examined
5. c) was concentrating
6. d) was
7. a) During
8. a) didn't hear
9. c) my stay
10. c) meeting
11. d) b & c
12. d) was working
13. d) when
14. b) worked
15. c) was revising
16. b) doesn't
17. b) At
18. b) were
19. a) found
20. a) sleep
21. b) had studied
22. d) seemed
23. c) worked
24. b) was a past habit
25. a) My family
26. a) I no longer work for it
27. c) Mona and her friends were drinking juice while watching TV.
28. b) It was me.
29. c) not fat
30. b) didn't get

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) strange
2. b) resorts
3. a) peaceful
4. c) over
5. a) distant
6. d) quiet
7. a) underwater
8. d) make
9. c) was taking
10. d) stole
11. a) was studying
12. c) didn't belong
13. d) was being fixed
14. b) During
15. d) doesn't
16. c) had

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) six footballs and other things
2. d) an Englishman living in Brazil
3. b) Charles Miller was educated in England in the 19th century.
4. c) How football came to Brazil
5. a) To concoct their own balls.
6. d) Both "b" & "c".
7. d) the people of Great Britain
8. c) the journalists

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١. الشباب هم العمود الفقرى لأى أمة وقاعدة تقدمها، لذلك ينبغى على الحكومات مساعدتهم ليكونوا مواطنين أفضل.
٢. يعرف الإنسان جيدًا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل. بوضع هذا فى الاعتبار، ينبغى أن تكون مليئة بالعمل الجاد.
٣. تولى الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرًا للنساء وتوفر لهم التعليم والوظائف والرعاية الصحية والاجتماعية.

B) Translate into English:

1. It is likely that space tourism will be realised in the near future, which will attract many people and bring fantastic earnings.
2. The housing problem has forced many young people to refuse marriage because of the difficulty in obtaining an apartment.
3. The government should pay attention to productive projects in order to increase production and raise the standard of living for all citizens.

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) scar
2. c) grabbed
3. a) swords
4. c) inn
5. d) pale
6. b) cliff
7. d) dare
8. a) guard
9. c) blind
10. c) owes
11. b) adventures
12. a) realised
13. d) admiral
14. c) fell over
15. c) gun

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** believable/ **e)** ordinary
2. **a)** reached/ **d)** arrived at
3. **a)** exotic
4. **c)** stuck
5. **a)** teenagers
6. **c)** robbed
7. **a)** weather
8. **b)** active
9. **c)** During
10. **b)** was going
11. **a)** began
12. **d)** were you doing
13. **b)** was coming
14. **b)** were
15. **b)** built
16. **d)** lives in another city now

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **a)** he was getting a tattoo
18. **d)** they think it is fashionable
19. **c)** brave
20. **a)** the influence of friends
21. **d)** Why people get tattoos
22. **a)** wealth
23. **b)** Jack
24. **d)** b & c

25. Translate into English:

- The acquisition of the English language can be through conversations, watching English films, listening to some English songs, as well as reading stories and books in English.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- من المتوقع أن تزداد حاجتنا إلى المياه فى مصر فى المستقبل القريب، لذلك يجب أن نرشد استخدامنا للمياه وإلا سنواجه مشاكل خطيرة.

UNIT 2  Supporting the community

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) generous
2. d) charities
3. d) pressure
4. d) support
5. a) transplants
6. a) desire
7. d) recognised
8. c) prestige
9. a) documentary
10. c) task
11. d) foundations
12. c) pressure
13. c) short-term
14. d) roaring
15. c) why
16. a) for
17. b) gets
18. a) donate
19. b) donation
20. a) persuade
21. c) persuasive
22. c) beneficial
23. d) part
24. a) to
25. a) generous
26. a) study/ c) to study
27. d) reach/ e) achieve
28. a) esteem/ b) influence
29. a) occurred/ b) took place
30. c) sorrow/ e) sadness

Language Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) closes
2. d) writes
3. c) visited
4. c) snows
5. a) didn't rain
6. c) comes
7. a) don't read
8. d) saw
9. c) never
10. b) don't open
11. d) spent
12. b) usually goes
13. c) Is
14. d) is used to
15. a) took
16. b) was punished
17. d) never
18. b) is
19. b) is always
20. c) had
21. a) leaves
22. d) was done
23. d) remember
24. d) understand
25. a) Do
26. c) timetable
27. d) this is his permanent place of living
28. d) the final match time is set to start at 10 o'clock by a timetable
29. a) everyone in our family loves Liverpool
30. b) used to work hard

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) research
2. b) view
3. b) founded
4. a) relationship
5. c) benefit
6. d) best
7. b) realised
8. c) amongst
9. a) wash
10. a) is always
11. b) need
12. c) runs
13. b) always
14. d) are encouraged
15. a) watches
16. a) don't belong

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) no one can have his own way all the time
2. a) men usually want to have their own way
3. d) right and thoughtful
4. c) behave in a responsible way
5. c) community
6. c) bad behaviors
7. b) special rights
8. d) all mentioned

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١. يبذل آباؤنا جهودًا عظيمة لإسعادنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة وآمنة لنا. نحن حقا مدينون لهم بالكثير.
٢. على الصعيد الدولى، مثّل صلاح مصر على مستوى الشباب، وفاز بالميدالية البرونزية فى بطولة كأس الأمم الإفريقية تحت ٢٠ سنة.
٣. الكوارث الطبيعية مثل الزلازل والأعاصير والبراكين يمكن أن تسبب دمارا هائلا.

B) Translate into English:

1. To be able to live happily and comfortably, there is only one way and that is to be given the real opportunity to get a good education to be able to get a good job in the future.
2. Egypt is waiting for the efforts of its sons, scientists and people of thought and creativity and looks forward to its loyal sons to take effective steps to advance the nation.
3. The blood donor must be in a decent health condition to accept his donation without affecting his health. It must remain for 5 minutes under medical observation.

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) attacked
2. d) change
3. a) guardian
4. a) together
5. b) headquarters
6. d) movement
7. a) nearby
8. a) appearance
9. b) located
10. a) paw prints
11. d) cattle
12. b) amazing
13. c) protection
14. b) killings
15. a) monitor
16. d) to
17. b) employees
18. a) employer
19. a) went
20. b) got
21. d) on
22. b) in
23. a) on
24. d) doing
25. d) all mentioned
26. a) amazing
27. b) hire/ e) appoint
28. b) defence/ c) resistance
29. a) in/ e) for
30. c) went missing/ d) got lost

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) is included
2. b) isn't used
3. c) are protected
4. b) is brought
5. b) are asked
6. c) was paved
7. c) is prepared
8. b) is affected
9. a) Was
10. d) is serviced
11. d) were painted
12. d) wasn't allowed
13. b) are given
14. c) aren't discussed
15. b) is he
16. a) are usually watered
17. a) are watched
18. d) are born
19. d) are taught
20. a) are made
21. a) meet
22. b) takes
23. d) sign
24. c) grow
25. b) are grown
26. a) is always punished
27. c) fact
28. a) never comes
29. c) all the students were told about the surprise
30. d) her husband didn't give her any money

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) tribe
2. b) biologist
3. c) guardian
4. d) sense
5. b) empathy
6. c) print
7. d) as
8. c) Hunting
9. c) was arrested
10. b) had
11. a) use
12. a) is shown
13. d) are needed
14. b) feel
15. a) got hurt
16. d) an oculist examined my eyes

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) getting on and off the bus is difficult
2. a) taxi drivers
3. c) indispensable
4. a) complex
5. b) cars have to be left in the streets
6. d) Transportation
7. a) greedy
8. d) streets are very crowded

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١. يحظى العديد من مشاهير المصريين بالإعجاب لذكائهم وإبداعهم وقدرتهم على القيام بأعمال عظيمة وخيرية.

٢. يمكن أن يساعد التبرع بالدم العديد من الأشخاص الذين هم فى أمس الحاجة إلى الدم بعد الحوادث أو الذين يعانون من حالات حرجة.

٣. البشر هم أكبر تهديد لبقاء الفصائل المهددة بالانقراض من خلال تدمير أماكن معيشتهم وآثار تغير المناخ.

B) Translate into English:

1. Mohamed Salah, the world-famous Egyptian footballer, is an example of a talented player who has good morals.

2. Education is the basis of progress and development for the peoples and countries of the world, whether developed or developing; Because it helps us prepare generations of citizens who are able to make change.
3. Despite the great scientific progress, many types of animals are still in danger of extinction; This is because people hunted and killed them for various reasons.

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) head
2. b) escape
3. a) clue
4. c) magistrate
5. d) crew
6. d) stolen
7. a) servants
8. b) inside
9. c) prepare
10. d) directions
11. b) includes
12. c) describe
13. a) hidden
14. d) into
15. c) dead

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) continuing/ c) lasting
2. c) from/ e) against
3. d) monitor
4. d) responsibility
5. b) donors
6. b) transfusion
7. c) decorated
8. b) injured
9. b) travelling
10. a) had
11. a) scored
12. d) visits
13. a) is always
14. c) wasn't allowed
15. a) used to stay up late
16. c) is burnt

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) predator
18. b) in danger
19. a) smart
20. d) can change their skin colour
21. c) renew its arms
22. b) helps it hide from the attackers
23. b) however, they have other ways to keep enemies away
24. a) The Magician Octopuses

25. **Translate into English:**
    - We all dream of being famous one day, but it is not easy to be famous; because fame is a result of hard work, patience and also suffering.

26. **Translate into Arabic:**
    - فى الوقت الحاضر، تولى الحكومة المصرية اهتمامًا كبيرًا للمرأة وتوفر لها التعليم الجيد والوظائف والرعاية الصحية.

UNIT 3 Improving lives

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) debt
2. d) miserable
3. a) prison
4. d) empty
5. a) broke
6. b) owe
7. d) criminal
8. d) opportunity
9. c) tickets
10. a) earn
11. c) gained
12. b) award
13. a) discovered
14. c) twins
15. b) deserves
16. d) miss
17. c) rewarding
18. b) similar
19. c) machines
20. b) instruments
21. d) childhood
22. c) miser
23. d) rat race
24. d) of
25. b) merchandise
26. a) after
27. a) earn/ c) make
28. b) lend/ e) return
29. b) The disabled/ c) Disabled people
30. c) weary/ e) exhausted

Language Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) for
2. a) since
3. b) for
4. a) since
5. c) ever
6. b) haven't finished
7. b) have developed
8. b) already
9. c) have been lost
10. a) have been to
11. d) have found
12. c) have just had
13. d) have won
14. b) has gone
15. a) haven't seen
16. b) Since
17. d) started
18. d) have ever read
19. c) three times this week
20. d) saw
21. b) for
22. d) has been
23. d) has already been repaired
24. b) haven't eaten
25. c) has painted
26. d) she spent all the summer in Marina
27. b) is back now
28. a) Ashraf finished his work quicker than I expected
29. c) I expect that I will marry in the future
30. c) the holiday is over

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) theatre
2. b) temples
3. a) owe
4. a) skills
5. d) room
6. a) support
7. c) career
8. a) misery
9. a) has been
10. a) for
11. d) has been hacked
12. a) travelled
13. b) was sent
14. b) already
15. d) since
16. d) Has the email already been printed?

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** allows ultraviolet rays to come down to earth and cause human suffering
2. **c)** come down to earth because they do not break down easily in the atmosphere
3. **b)** chest ailments and other diseases
4. **b)** Toxic air-pollution
5. **b)** One third
6. **b)** it prevents the harmful rays from reaching the earth
7. **b)** factories discharge dangerous substances
8. **b)** the pollution will disappear

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١. ينبغى علينا بذل جهود كبيرة لتطوير الرياضة بكل الوسائل وهذه مسئولية الحكومة والأفراد أيضًا.
٢. الإرهاب واحد من أسوأ المشاكل وأكثرها تعقيدًا، وله الكثير من الآثار السلبية على كل من المواطنين والمجتمع.
٣. يعتقد أن المال هو أصل كل شر. ويعتبر السبب الرئيسى للانحراف والإدمان وارتكاب الجرائم وحتى الحروب بين الدول.

B) Translate into English:

1. Parents, teachers, as well as the media play an important role in shaping children's personality and modifying their behaviour to be good citizens.
2. Undoubtedly, we live in the age of science and technology. The computer and the Internet are among the inventions that made everything easy to happen.
3. The establishment of many school and public libraries (has) contributed to improving the educational process in general and helped many children and young people to read freely.

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** main
2. **c)** touch
3. **d)** break
4. **a)** adults
5. **d)** later
6. **a)** latter
7. **b)** voluntary
8. **c)** characters
9. **d)** described
10. **a)** trust
11. **a)** stepmother
12. **d)** Why don't you
13. **c)** association
14. **d)** solutions
15. **c)** paint
16. **a)** dreamer
17. **d)** community
18. **c)** experiment
19. **c)** teaching
20. **d)** down
21. **c)** disability
22. **a)** associated
23. **d)** play/on
24. **a)** for
25. **c)** made
26. **b)** free/ **d)** willing
27. **b)** major/ **e)** main
28. **c)** married/ **d)** is married to
29. **d)** discovered/ **e)** found out
30. **b)** unfamiliar/ **e)** unusual

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) in
2. a) since
3. c) since
4. b) when
5. d) never
6. c) has been playing
7. b) has been
8. c) since
9. b) just now
10. a) travelled
11. c) have ever visited
12. c) already
13. a) has been studying
14. b) has written
15. c) has rained
16. a) never
17. d) has just died
18. c) has been warned
19. d) since
20. b) has been
21. b) has your father been
22. b) cooked
23. b) has gone
24. b) Since
25. b) for how long
26. a) have been to
27. d) she cooked the food for them a moment ago.
28. b) I haven't played football since Monday.
29. d) It is the first time to see a student who is clever like Marwan.
30. c) he still works as a waiter.

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) main
2. c) association
3. d) opportunity
4. c) plan
5. b) surprise
6. a) culture
7. d) the disabled
8. b) of
9. a) has fallen
10. c) were taken
11. d) has been made
12. b) have arrested
13. d) when
14. a) for
15. a) is still
16. a) has worked

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) can treat a lot of diseases
2. a) natural remedies
3. a) herbalist
4. c) it cures and protects from side effects
5. a) demerit
6. a) The Herbal Medicine Benefits
7. c) They can be fried on fire to be served.
8. d) willow tree

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١. هناك الكثير من الأشخاص البؤساء لأنهم لا يملكون ما يكفى من المال للعيش به أو ليس لديهم مكان للعيش فيه.

٢. تقول الأبحاث إنه يجب أن تكون لدينا هواية لننعش أنفسنا، ولتخفيف الآثار السيئة لضغوط العمل.

٣. بدون الثقة أو الإيمان بقوتك، لا يمكنك تحقيق النجاح أو السعادة.

B) Translate into English:

1. It is said that human beings are always in danger as a result of their greed and stupidity. This interference may cause the emergence of new types of diseases that have no cure.

2. The Egyptian government, represented by the Ministry of Health, must pay attention to developing medical institutions in order to be able to face any danger in the future.
3. We now live in a society in which men and women work side by side with equal rights.

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) harbour
2. b) gang
3. d) parrots
4. b) of
5. a) empty
6. d) destination
7. b) mutiny
8. d) barrel
9. a) crutches
10. c) secret
11. a) pirates
12. b) blind
13. d) bank
14. c) crew
15. d) explain

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) become/ d) get
2. a) soft/ b) delicate
3. c) lucky
4. b) nowhere
5. a) opportunity
6. d) pay
7. d) community
8. a) cultures
9. d) lately
10. c) have learnt
11. b) haven't met
12. c) for
13. b) had been cleaning
14. d) saw
15. d) since
16. a) haven't done

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) liked his appearance
18. c) modern
19. b) vast
20. b) The writer is not going to work.
21. c) careless
22. c) 75 pounds.
23. c) his photos
24. c) His mother paid for him when he reached home.

25. **Translate into English:**
- Choosing the right job is very important because you need to enjoy your work in order to be successful. But you have to be sure that this job will not affect your personal life.

26. **Translate into Arabic:**
- إن ممارسة الأنشطة فى المدرسة أمر مهم للغاية، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تشجيع طلابهم على المشاركة فيها.

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Units 1, 2 & 3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** depressed/ **b)** sad
2. **a)** disorder/ **e)** disarrange
3. **c)** role model
4. **b)** injured
5. **a)** spicy
6. **a)** donated
7. **b)** swells
8. **c)** impact
9. **b)** is speaking
10. **c)** was sleeping
11. **a)** have had
12. **d)** asked
13. **d)** since
14. **b)** was concentrating
15. **d)** is accused
16. **b)** have arrived

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **c)** should avoid overeating
18. **d)** doctors recommend it
19. **d)** it has a bad effect on health
20. **d)** health is a precious thing
21. **b)** overweight
22. **b)** too much
23. **c)** this indicates bad health
24. **c)** being fat is very harmful for your health

25. **Translate into English:**
   - Every student should work hard and not waste his time in order to achieve everything he dreams about in the future.
26. **Translate into Arabic:**
   - ينبغى على رجال الأعمال المصريين استثمار أموالهم فى الوطن بمشروعات تخدم المجتمع وتوفر فرص عمل للشباب.

UNIT 4



Making new friends

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) stressful
2. c) useful
3. b) stressed
4. b) granted
5. b) allowed to
6. d) friendships
7. c) join
8. d) what to do
9. a) contact
10. c) cool
11. b) favourite
12. d) conversation
13. c) follow
14. a) grade
15. d) teenagers
16. a) teenage
17. a) extra
18. d) practice
19. c) individual
20. c) Put on
21. b) do
22. d) on their own
23. a) studying
24. b) enjoyed themselves
25. a) practise
26. d) make
27. a) passed/ d) succeeded in
28. c) on his own/ e) alone
29. a) confront/ b) encounter
30. c) neglected/ e) ignored

Language Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) an
2. d) no article
3. c) the
4. b) an
5. c) the
6. c) the
7. a) a
8. b) an
9. d) no article
10. d) Physics
11. c) the
12. c) the
13. c) the
14. d) no article
15. c) the
16. d) no article
17. b) The plane has
18. a) an
19. d) no article
20. c) the
21. a) A
22. a) a
23. b) an
24. d) Computers
25. d) no article/no article
26. a) The/no article
27. d) no article/an
28. b) the Italian language
29. c) the giraffe has a long neck
30. d) we should do our best to help the deaf

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) the life
2. a) favourite
3. d) friendships
4. c) a paper
5. d) contact
6. d) connect
7. d) noticeboard
8. c) joined
9. c) the
10. d) no article
11. a) a
12. c) the
13. d) no article
14. d) no article
15. a) a
16. b) a/no article

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** A challenging climb.
2. **b)** collect
3. **a)** Since there was lack of oxygen.
4. **d)** a, b & c.
5. **d)** exhausted
6. **b)** negative
7. **d)** all of these
8. **a)** determination is the key to success

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١. يستخدم العديد من الشباب الإنترنت لتكوين صداقات جديدة وقضاء ساعات فى الدردشة معهم.
٢. تساهم المكتبات المدرسية بشكل كبير فى تنمية عقول أطفالنا ووعيهم.
٣. لا شك أن الأصدقاء إما طيبون أو سيئون، بعضهم يستحق الاحترام بينما البعض الآخر بغيض.

B) Translate into English:

1. Individuals should cooperate with the Ministry of Environment to get rid of the huge amounts of rubbish and wastes in our streets.
2. Electricity has become an essential part of our lives, as humans cannot live without it, as it is heat and energy.
3. It is clear that crimes have increased at a large rate nowadays. Hardly a day passes without hearing about a crime on TV or the Internet.

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** bullied
2. **c)** cheat
3. **b)** nursing
4. **d)** hates
5. **b)** behaved
6. **a)** copy
7. **c)** debate
8. **b)** debates
9. **d)** effect
10. **a)** affected
11. **c)** moves
12. **a)** to have
13. **c)** terrible
14. **a)** phone-in
15. **b)** too
16. **c)** take
17. **a)** experiences
18. **a)** list
19. **d)** about
20. **a)** laughter
21. **b)** concerned
22. **b)** on
23. **d)** along
24. **a)** at
25. **c)** Cheating
26. **a)** awful/ **d)** nasty
27. **c)** disgusting/ **e)** offensive
28. **a)** resumed/ **d)** proceeded
29. **b)** impact/ **d)** influence
30. **a)** watching/ **e)** to watch

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) wasn't
2. d) little
3. c) are
4. a) some
5. a) want
6. d) much
7. b) Much
8. a) was stolen
9. b) is made
10. d) isn't
11. a) many
12. d) some
13. a) was
14. c) much
15. d) some
16. c) keeps
17. c) was
18. b) have
19. b) a
20. c) is
21. c) any
22. c) quantity
23. b) How much
24. a) is
25. c) a hair
26. c) a means
27. d) the papers
28. c) I don't have any information about the accident
29. b) He told me an important information about the crime.
30. a) My trousers are very expensive and of a good material.

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) three-year-business plan
2. d) rucksack
3. c) nasty
4. c) discussion
5. d) debate
6. a) scared
7. b) line
8. c) nursing
9. d) tube
10. c) much
11. b) many
12. a) much
13. a) Do
14. a) is
15. d) some bread
16. a) isn't

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) people, their community and their society
2. d) improve people's income and bring peace
3. a) enable their abilities and characters to live properly
4. c) must be agreed on
5. d) strengthen their flexibility in life
6. a) get paid competitive salaries
7. d) enough classrooms and separate toilets
8. a) How Can Education Be Good?

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١. يجب علينا ترشيد استهلاك الماء والكهرباء والغذاء لمواجهة الارتفاع المتزايد فى الأسعار.

٢. تسعى المؤسسة التربوية إلى تعميق الفكر الديمقراطى وتدريب الأجيال الشابة على المشاركة الإيجابية.

٣. ينبغى على الحكومة والأفراد العمل سويًا لتقديم المزيد من الدعم والمساعدة للمعاقين والأطفال ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة.

B) Translate into English:

1. Parents shape their children's personality from the very beginning of their childhood. They teach them values and customs and also share interests and games with them.
2. Globalisation has a serious impact on developing countries. These countries must begin in earnest to benefit from the fruits of technology.
3. Poverty and unemployment are a time bomb. If we do not make extraordinary efforts to eradicate them, we will suffer greatly, and the government cannot do this alone.

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) trust
2. a) whistled
3. c) branch
4. a) relax
5. d) shore
6. b) diseases
7. c) surprised
8. a) on
9. d) expression
10. c) along
11. b) pretty
12. b) surprised
13. b) hills
14. d) correct
15. a) gun

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** putting on/ **d)** wearing
2. **a)** finish/ **c)** end
3. **a)** police
4. **a)** cheating
5. **b)** behaved
6. **d)** fight
7. **c)** negative
8. **d)** nursed
9. **c)** the
10. **c)** The
11. **a)** a
12. **c)** some
13. **d)** no article
14. **d)** a glass
15. **c)** The more
16. **d)** a

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **a)** clearing
18. **b)** global warming
19. **c)** reducing
20. **c)** leads to
21. **a)** environmental
22. **a)** produces gases like carbon dioxide
23. **c)** are already facing
24. **b)** Global Disasters

25. **Translate into English:**
   - We must work a lot and talk less. Hard work is the only way to raise the standard of living, and we must exploit all available economic resources without draining.

26. **Translate into Arabic:**
   - وجب على مصر أن تدعو إلى مؤتمر دولى يستهدف استقرار عملية السلام ومحاربة الإرهاب.

UNIT 5  Communication

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) recent
2. b) major
3. d) network
4. c) latest
5. a) power stations
6. c) devices
7. b) particular
8. c) task
9. a) Applications
10. d) communication
11. c) hacked
12. c) atmosphere
13. a) smart
14. d) accident
15. c) businesses
16. d) both a & b
17. c) check
18. c) enough
19. d) flexible
20. d) apps
21. b) electric
22. b) with
23. d) development
24. c) by accident
25. d) were capable of
26. b) imaginative
27. a) applicable
28. a) to/ c) for
29. b) contact/ d) communicate with
30. b) cooling/ e) freezing

Language Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) will turn
2. d) am going to watch
3. b) is going to crash
4. b) will probably work
5. a) will
6. a) will get
7. a) am going to
8. d) will be
9. b) is going to fall
10. b) am going to meet
11. b) will rain
12. b) will be sent
13. b) will get
14. b) is going to fall
15. c) am going to have
16. a) will cut
17. c) will be
18. d) is going to buy
19. a) will be
20. a) are going to score
21. d) would win
22. d) am going to watch
23. b) will pass
24. b) am going to be
25. a) would participate
26. d) timetable
27. b) request
28. c) will
29. c) Be careful or you are falling.
30. d) Mona will probably attend the party tomorrow.

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) communications
2. d) connected
3. a) Security
4. a) navigation
5. b) create
6. d) technology
7. a) hack
8. a) electric
9. c) to take
10. b) will enjoy
11. c) will get
12. d) will be
13. d) will
14. b) are going to fall
15. d) is going to wash
16. b) will get

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) food
2. c) only healthy and cheap food
3. c) tempt
4. b) vegetarians
5. b) hungry
6. c) important
7. c) less
8. b) more expensive than

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١. يقوم العلماء باكتشافات وإنجازات تساعدنا على مسايرة التغيرات فى عالمنا.
٢. فى السلام، يمكن استخدام الأموال لبناء مصانع جديدة وتحسين الرعاية الصحية وحل مشاكل الإسكان والمواصلات.
٣. تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا مهمًا فى تقدم الصناعة والزراعة والتعليم والطب والجراحة.

B) Translate into English:

1. Everyone should learn computer and internet skills because life has become basically dependent on them.
2. Television has become a means of spreading knowledge. Adults and children enjoy watching it alike.
3. Citizenship means that the people of the same country are equal in their rights and duties.

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) lock
2. a) link
3. d) ugly
4. d) details
5. b) changes
6. a) download
7. c) scam
8. a) recognise
9. c) Malware
10. c) Cyberbullying
11. d) horrible
12. c) data
13. d) Phishing
14. d) Click
15. b) antivirus
16. c) upgrade
17. a) skim
18. a) Posting photos
19. a) make
20. c) society
21. a) sociable
22. d) accountant
23. d) a & c
24. c) trick
25. b) for
26. a) on
27. a) bullying/ e) anyone to bully
28. b) complete/ d) fill in
29. b) serious/ e) unfunny
30. a) careless/ b) incautious

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) are camping
2. b) finishes
3. b) am meeting
4. a) leaves
5. b) opens
6. a) are having
7. b) leaves
8. a) is helping
9. b) am meeting
10. c) is giving
11. d) leaves
12. b) is flying
13. c) am travelling
14. d) will have
15. d) have arrived
16. d) to achieve
17. a) won't tell
18. a) am meeting
19. c) will go
20. c) are going to
21. b) is travelling
22. c) will win
23. c) will go
24. a) going to play
25. d) will climb
26. d) will stay
27. c) my sister is getting married next week
28. b) she is going to sleep soon
29. b) intention
30. c) prediction

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) change
2. a) support
3. c) hacking
4. b) antivirus
5. c) employees
6. d) password
7. c) allow
8. d) download
9. b) starts
10. a) are you meeting
11. a) will run
12. a) are going
13. d) is going
14. b) am going to go
15. d) is about to
16. c) or

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) three
2. d) old people
3. a) desires
4. c) hardworking
5. b) Youth
6. c) enjoy good and bad things
7. d) not many
8. c) Periods of life

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١. لقد أدى التطور الكبير فى الصناعة إلى زيادة كمية ثانى أكسيد الكربون مما أدى إلى تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحرارى.

٢. آثارنا التاريخية كنوز لا تقدر بثمن، وينبغى علينا أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لحمايتها.

٣. سيؤدى التعاون بين دول العالم إلى نشر السلام والأمن، وينبغى عليهم أن يساعدوا بعضهم بعضًا لتحسين الظروف المعيشية لشعوبهم.

B) Translate into English:

1. Country (Rural) life is considered more pure than city (urban) life because of its fantastic landscapes and clean air.

2. Man ,by nature, is a lover of nature and beauty. He searches for beauty in everything, even among strange things.
3. In any way, Man cannot dispense with water and air, and without them, all living creatures would perish.

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 5)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) spade
2. a) crazy
3. d) fight
4. c) realise
5. a) kneeled
6. b) leader
7. c) direction
8. c) allow
9. b) fresh
10. d) dangerous
11. a) for
12. d) voice
13. c) dead
14. b) flags
15. c) sails

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 5)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) minor/ d) secondary
2. c) every day/ e) daily
3. b) phishing
4. a) scam
5. b) personal
6. c) flexible
7. d) communications
8. b) illegally
9. a) leaves
10. a) are watching
11. c) are going to make
12. a) will fall
13. c) is going to perform
14. d) will be
15. c) are meeting
16. b) is going to be

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. c) Man's enemies
18. d) all the mentioned
19. a) children
20. b) reduce
21. c) the countryside
22. d) bad friends or companions
23. c) hunger is the cause of misery and anger
24. d) the circle of friends shows a man's character

25. **Translate into English:**

- Reading is considered one of the main and basic means for the renaissance of various peoples and civilisations. This is because it is closely related to the transmission of knowledge and sciences among different individuals.

26. **Translate into Arabic:**

- الفقر والبطالة قنابل موقوتة. لو لم نبذل جهودًا لاقتلاعهم، فإننا سنعانى كثيرا.

UNIT 6  Learning from literature

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) a & c
2. a) poet
3. c) capture
4. d) autobiography
5. c) In
6. b) literature
7. c) fields
8. b) case
9. d) island
10. a) popular
11. d) strange
12. c) Suppose
13. b) gravel
14. a) rhyme
15. b) rhythm
16. c) discuss
17. d) Pirates
18. a) issue
19. d) treasure
20. a) adventure
21. b) favour
22. b) keep the gravel walk
23. a) a while
24. c) variety
25. b) a success
26. d) with
27. b) came out/ c) was published
28. a) turned/ b) made
29. a) remote/ e) distant
30. a) familiar/ b) conventional

Language Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) to meet
2. c) doing
3. a) to join
4. a) sharing
5. b) to treat
6. c) to send
7. c) objected
8. d) coming
9. b) to buy
10. d) being
11. c) going
12. b) to fly
13. c) to help
14. c) to play
15. b) to apologise
16. b) sitting
17. a) to get
18. a) cleaning
19. c) doing
20. a) writing
21. c) denied
22. c) to studying
23. a) visiting
24. a) sailing
25. c) to phone
26. a) phoning
27. a) trying
28. b) to seeing
29. d) He objected to visit that frightening place again.
30. c) I recommend taking the train to Aswan.

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) locked
2. b) came out
3. c) kidnapped
4. d) all mentioned
5. b) dig
6. a) Currant
7. d) Hay
8. a) romantic
9. d) to joining
10. b) to building
11. d) to accept
12. b) going
13. d) enjoy
14. a) being
15. a) to go
16. c) reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** Its gravity.
2. **c)** We can't see it from earth.
3. **a)** The temperature.
4. **c)** A diary extracts.
5. **b)** The moon's gravity is weaker than the earth's.
6. **a)** Special clothes for astronauts.
7. **c)** 107-153
8. **d)** revolve

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١. يعرف الإنسان جيدًا أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل، والأمل واليأس، والسعادة والحزن، ولكن فى كل الأحوال يجب ملؤها بالإنجازات.

٢. زيادة الإنتاج وتحسين جودته هى السبيل الوحيد لزيادة دخلنا القومى الذى يساعد على رفع المستوى المعيشى.

٣. لكل طفل الحق فى أن يعيش حياة سعيدة، وعلى الحكومة أن تفعل كل ما هو ممكن للتأكد من بقاء الأطفال على قيد الحياة وتطورهم.

B) Translate into English:

1. Sports clubs play an important role in society, and provide great services to young people, and help them spend their free time in a useful way.
2. The government does its best to solve most of the society's problems and raise the standard of living for all citizens.
3. It is necessary to be fluent in speaking and writing English in order to get a chance for a good job, as it is the most spoken language in the world now.

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** fair
2. **b)** verses
3. **d)** narrator
4. **a)** narrated
5. **b)** grown-ups
6. **c)** hop
7. **a)** situation
8. **c)** summary
9. **d)** candlelight
10. **d)** rhymes
11. **d)** Rhythm
12. **c)** laid
13. **a)** toys
14. **d)** all mentioned
15. **c)** broken
16. **a)** activities
17. **c)** in brief
18. **d)** playing
19. **c)** for
20. **a)** went
21. **a)** differently
22. **c)** specifically/ **d)** particularly
23. **a)** dull/ **b)** boring
24. **b)** short/ **c)** compressed
25. **d)** describes/ **e)** details
26. **b)** successful/ **d)** a success
27. **c)** aged/ **d)** at the age of

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) swimming
2. a) to leave
3. d) to understand
4. c) to buying
5. d) to go
6. b) to answer
7. a) to have
8. c) making
9. a) breaking
10. a) parking
11. d) to sign
12. d) delivering
13. b) wasting
14. c) go
15. b) to eat
16. a) staying
17. a) trying
18. d) not helping
19. a) talking
20. d) going
21. a) to get
22. b) to get
23. b) studying
24. d) to tell
25. d) visiting
26. c) meeting
27. a) stopped eating a lot
28. d) I remember meeting Ahmed Mekky in Alex.
29. c) first I remembered, then I did my homework
30. b) my mobile isn't with me now

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) hop
2. a) activities
3. c) candlelight
4. a) toy
5. b) laid
6. a) dress
7. b) especially
8. d) brief
9. a) meeting
10. c) going
11. d) being taken
12. b) to fly
13. d) writing
14. c) not to waste
15. c) singing
16. b) fancy

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) Defeats.
2. d) One of the greatest football players.
3. a) more popular than
4. a) his bad behavior
5. b) have achievements in the game
6. a) crazy about
7. c) Asia
8. b) Maradona

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١. قناة السويس هى أكبر ممر مائى بين الشرق والغرب. لقد أصبحت مصدرًا هامًا للدخل القومى.

٢. تقدم لنا قراءة الأدب تجارب وثقافات الآخرين التى تختلف تمامًا عن ثقافاتنا.

٣. ينبغى علينا جميعا أن نعمل بجد فى جميع المجالات حتى تصبح مصر من أكثر الدول نموًا وازدهارًا.

B) Translate into English:

1. The press plays a major role in developing public awareness towards economic and social issues. It presents problems and provides solutions.

2. Egypt has many ancient archaeological sites and modern tourist resorts, and all of this makes it one of the most attractive countries for tourists.
3. The crises that Egypt faces at times show us that the Egyptians are one family and have a spirit of cooperation and friendship among them.

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 6)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) pirates
2. d) defend
3. d) contact
4. a) fired
5. c) well defended
6. b) including
7. d) advantage
8. c) prevent
9. b) cannon
10. a) attacked
11. d) reached
12. c) weapons
13. a) fort
14. b) take down
15. d) impossible

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 6)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) enhance/ e) develop
2. d) to/ e) from
3. d) hop
4. b) biography
5. b) other
6. a) alive
7. b) wishes
8. a) helpful
9. a) to take
10. a) playing
11. d) knowing
12. a) talking
13. c) seeing
14. b) to tell
15. a) to visit
16. b) to revise

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) scared
18. a) enjoyed
19. c) Sally's brother.
20. b) turned on the lights
21. a) couldn't stop
22. a) had been outside
23. a) were asleep
24. d) Sally's Brother's Trick

25. **Translate into English:**
   - The future of life on Earth depends on the success of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution. Pollution of all kinds leads to severe destruction of the environment and thus threatens our survival on Earth.

26. **Translate into Arabic:**
   - لقد أثبت الباحثون العلميون أن التجارب المبكرة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Units 4, 5 & 6)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** damaged/ **c)** crushed
2. **b)** prejudiced/ **e)** partial
3. **a)** kidnapped
4. **c)** adventure
5. **b)** character
6. **c)** mysterious
7. **a)** judge
8. **b)** for
9. **b)** is
10. **c)** used to sleep
11. **c)** hearing
12. **b)** During
13. **d)** has been to
14. **b)** have broken
15. **d)** watching
16. **a)** breaking

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **a)** Miss Farida's departure
18. **c)** the class teacher
19. **d)** a picture
20. **b)** exchanging emails
21. **d)** the gift for Miss Farida
22. **d)** help
23. **d)** One of the students.
24. **c)** her good qualities

25. **Translate into English:**
    - Travelling abroad has many benefits, including that it helps us learn a lot of the customs, traditions and cultures of peoples.

26. **Translate into Arabic:**
    - فى الوقت الحاضر، نواجه الكثير من الأوبئة التى تهدد حياتنا. فيروس كورونا هو أحد هذه الأمراض التى يجب على العلماء إيجاد علاج لها.



Treasure Island

Chapter (1) Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) swords
2. d) dare
3. b) grabbed
4. c) guard
5. a) scar
6. b) owes
7. b) inn
8. d) pale
9. c) island
10. b) cliff
11. d) blind
12. a) treasure
13. c) to go
14. d) towards
15. b) for

Chapter (2) Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) crew
2. a) clue
3. b) magistrate
4. c) servant
5. d) directions
6. b) head
7. d) rob
8. c) escape
9. b) sailors
10. a) buried
11. d) shout
12. c) cross
13. b) out
14. d) for
15. a) for

Chapter (3) Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) secret
2. d) frightened
3. c) pirates
4. d) mutiny
5. c) parrot
6. a) helpers
7. b) attacked
8. c) barrels
9. d) gang
10. a) destination
11. b) crutches
12. c) reach
13. d) for
14. a) after
15. b) after

Chapter (4) Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** whistle
2. **c)** trust
3. **d)** branch
4. **a)** relax
5. **d)** disease
6. **b)** marked
7. **a)** expression
8. **b)** coast
9. **c)** shore
10. **d)** as
11. **d)** mistake
12. **d)** onto
13. **c)** off
14. **c)** to
15. **a)** along

Chapter (5) Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** leader
2. **a)** sails
3. **b)** spades
4. **d)** fresh
5. **d)** bottom
6. **b)** voice
7. **c)** knelt
8. **b)** interested
9. **d)** allowed
10. **a)** dead
11. **c)** believe
12. **b)** burned
13. **d)** To
14. **c)** of
15. **a)** for

Chapter (6) Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** supplies
2. **c)** fired
3. **d)** cannon
4. **d)** defend
5. **a)** fort
6. **b)** contact
7. **c)** medicines
8. **d)** including
9. **a)** advantages
10. **b)** sank
11. **c)** prevent
12. **d)** alive
13. **a)** on
14. **b)** down
15. **c)** from



Gem

English

الصف ١ الثانوى

نماذج اختبارات الفصل الدراسى الأول

طبقًا للتعديلات الوزارية

2021 - 2022

Final Tests

Final Test 1

40

Choose Two of the Five options: 4

1. Hala was angry when she lost her mobile. The antonyms of the word "angry" are ....

   a) furious b) satisfied c) stingy d) cruel e) pleased

2. Modern means of transport make it easy to reach remote areas. The synonyms of the word "remote" are ....

   a) faraway b) nearby c) close d) distant e) near

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 14

3. Footballers often .... a lot of money because football has become the most famous sport.

   a) beat b) earn c) win d) gain

4. Each person should .... blood once a year at least.

   a) lend b) transplant c) donate d) transmit

5. She .... to London since last month. She is still there.

   a) has gone b) has been c) hasn't been d) hasn't gone

6. The .... of the ship consists of seven sailors and the captain.

   a) staff b) team c) band d) crew

7. Some animals live in very .... parts of the world.

   a) isolated b) insulated c) insulted d) installed

8. You bought me a theatre ticket yesterday, so I .... you some money.

   a) lend b) borrow c) owe d) own

9. While I was revising my lesson, my mother .... dinner.

   a) was preparing b) preparing c) is preparing d) prepares

10. A man .... by the company he keeps, so we have to choose our friends well.

    a) is known b) knows c) has known d) was known

11. We need to wake up early tomorrow. The train to Aswan .... at 6 a.m.

    a) is going to leave b) leaves c) will leave d) leave

12. Last night, I went to .... Indian restaurant. .... restaurant served good food.

    a) an/The b) a/The c) the/The d) the/a

13. My sister .... buy a new dress. She's already decided to do so.

    a) will b) would c) is going to d) can

14. We never allow .... at school. It has bad effects on children.

    a) bully b) bullying c) cyberbully d) to bully

15. The boy .... on the wall when he fell down.
    a) was walking b) walked c) walks d) was walked
16. During the exam, I .... a friend of mine cheating.
    a) was seeing b) was see c) see d) saw

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



Plants have been used for treating illnesses since primitive times. Paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs show that plants were being used by the Ancient Egyptians for medicinal purposes. Today, some modern drugs are still based on natural herbs. Aspirin, for example, is based on the bark of the willow tree.

Natural remedies are attracting increasing attention all over the world. The advantage of herbal medicine is that the whole of the plant can be used: the powerful substance in the plant cures the illness while the contents of the rest of the plant may help to prevent any harmful side effects. In this way, herbal medicines may be safer than chemical ones. Garlic is just one herb that has been used throughout the world as a cure for diseases as it is used to treat hair problems. Similarly, henna, which is known to be good for the hair, can also be used in the treatment of cancer.

If you pay a visit to a herbalist shop in Cairo, you will be struck by the different colours and smells. There are jars full of tree barks, roots, powders, oils and spices. The customer enters the shop and explains his symptoms to the herbalist, who will take notes, study medical reports and check his reference books before writing out a prescription.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Natural remedies are attracting attention because they ....
    a) are used in Egypt
    b) have side effects
    c) are exported from Egypt
    d) can treat a lot of diseases
18. Garlic is an example of ....
    a) natural remedies b) artificial herbs
    c) chemical medicines d) modern drugs
19. .... is a physical condition that shows you may have a particular disease.
    a) Prescription b) Property
    c) Symptom d) Remedy
20. A herbalist writes out a prescription .... checking his reference books.
    a) during b) after
    c) while d) before
21. The pronoun "his" in the last paragraph refers to the ....
    a) herbalist b) shop
    c) customer d) prescription

22 Herbal medicine is more effective than chemical medicine because ....
a) it's cheaper and cleaner
b) it's easily found and easily taken in
c) it cures and protects from side effects
d) many local people benefit from selling it

23 The antonym of the underlined word "advantage" is ....
a) demerit
b) advancement
c) disagreement
d) agreement

24 The main idea of the passage is ....
a) the herbal medicine benefits
b) the chemical medicine disadvantages
c) the Faculty of Medicine
d) the trees can cure

25 Which sentence is NOT correct about Natural herbs?
a) They're used for treating illnesses since primitive times.
b) They were used in the paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs.
c) They can be fried on fire to be served.
d) Some drugs are still based on natural herbs.

26 The bark of the .... is used to make aspirin.
a) bush tree
a) shadow plant
c) palm tree
d) willow tree

27 **Translate into English:** 3

كثير من الشباب متحمسون للمشاركة فى العمل الاجتماعى لكى يطوروا بلادهم. فالشباب هم أساس التطور لأى أمة لذلك تولى الدول المتقدمة اهتماما خاصا بالشباب.

....

....

....

28 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

Unemployment is a time bomb that threatens the security and stability of Egyptian society. The solution to this problem will be through new investments which provide more job opportunities.

....

....

....

29 **Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic:** 6

"The importance of charities in society"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 2



Choose Two of the Five options:



1. Science fiction films are boring. The opposites of the word "boring" are ....
   a) annoying b) interesting c) terrifying
   d) exhausting e) exciting
2. She looked after the patients during their illness. The synonyms of "looked after" are ....
   a) ignored b) cared for c) left
   d) nursed e) found about

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14

3. Germany is .... European country. It has an area of 357,021 square kilometers.
   a) the b) a c) an d) no article
4. Manal hasn't phoned us .... the summer holiday. It's unusual of her.
   a) ago b) since c) already d) for
5. We met a lot of our friends .... our stay in Austria.
   a) while b) in c) since d) during
6. We always .... to school when we were young as the school wasn't far from our house.
   a) walk b) walked c) are walking d) were walking
7. The police have so far failed to .... down the criminal.
   a) track b) tick c) trek d) truck
8. It's the first time we have .... been to Naples.
   a) ever b) never c) since d) yet
9. I don't know how to operate my tablet. Don't worry, I .... you.
   a) show b) am showing c) am going to show d) will show
10. Do you think the words "dine" and "fine"................?
    a) rhythm b) compose c) rhyme d) belong
11. My grandfather died .... 84.
    a) age b) aging c) aged d) ages
12. The bank lost a lot of money. They think their computer system had been .... into.
    a) baked b) caked c) backed d) hacked
13. Use your mind and don't take anything .... granted.
    a) at b) for c) with d) from
14. She certainly hasn't done anything that .... that cruel punishment.
    a) reserved b) deserved c) observed d) reversed

15. Mum used .... delicious meals before she started her job.
   a) cooking   b) to cook   c) to cooking   d) that cooking
16. We should avoid .... into troubles with people we love.
   a) to get   b) that get   c) getting   d) to getting

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 10

With the development of modern civilisation, life has become more and more complicated. As a result, the car, which was once considered a luxury, is now looked upon as a necessity. Doctors, engineers and businessmen cannot work without private cars. Moreover, the rapid growth of population in capitals and main cities has actually made the joy of possessing a car much less. Besides the problems of keeping a car in good condition and the lack of garages, there is the big problem of crowded streets.

Most people insist on having a private car to avoid the long wait at a bus stop. To get on or off the bus is a hard struggle. Going to places by taxi does not solve the problem as taxi drivers take passengers according to rules they set. They sometimes ask for more money than they deserve.

Cars could be a source of trouble. Many people have to leave their cars in the streets because garages are expensive and crowded. This exposes them to rusting or robbery. In rush hours streets are so blocked that it takes a driver age to get to his destination.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Taking a public bus is a problem because ....
   a) it is expensive   b) getting on and off the bus is difficult
   c) it is very slow   d) bus drivers drive carelessly
18. The pronoun "they" refers to ....
   a) taxi drivers   b) taxis
   c) buses   d) passengers
19. Most people insist on possessing a private car to keep .... the long wait at the bus stop.
   a) up   b) away from
   c) on   d) down
20. Possessing a private car is .... to doctors and engineers.
   a) unnecessary   b) kind
   c) indispensable   d) bad
21. The synonym of the word "complicated" is ....
   a) complex   b) simple
   c) easy   d) noncomplex

22. According to the writer, possessing a car can be a trouble because ....
    a) cars take a space in the garage
    b) cars have to be left in the streets
    c) drivers are careless
    d) traffic is incredible

23. The best title for this passage is "................".
    a) Traffic Rules
    b) Types of Cars
    c) Driving carelessly
    d) Transportation

24. According to the passage, it takes drivers a long time to reach their destination when ....
    a) the streets are empty
    b) it's the rush hour
    c) the drivers drive slowly
    d) the garages are full

25. According to the passage, some taxi drivers are ....
    a) greedy
    b) good
    c) honest
    d) funny

26. The sentence "it takes a driver age to get to his destination" shows that ....
    a) people don't know their destination
    b) GPS always misleads people
    c) drivers can't drive
    d) it takes long time

27. **Translate into English:** (3)

يجب أن يتعاون كل أفراد المجتمع لمحاربة التنمر؛ فهو مشكلة اجتماعية سيئة تنتشر بين الشباب وتهدد الناس فى كل مكان.

28. **Translate into Arabic:** (3)

To achieve your ambitions in life, you should have determination, courage, patience as well as a sense of responsibility.

....
....
....

29. **Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic:** (6)

"Some young children spend a great amount of their time practising sports. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of this. Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer."

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Final Test 3



Choose Two of the Five options:



1. My mother asked me to watch my little son till she comes back. The synonyms of the word "watch" are ....

   a) observe b) look for c) monitor d) see off e) collect

2. Doing sports increases his fitness. The antonyms of the word "increase" are ....

   a) support b) decrease c) reduce d) raise e) strengthen

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



3. The rich should .... money to charities to help the poor.

   a) donate b) steal c) rob d) take

4. Firefighters should wear .... clothes while facing fires.

   a) protection b) protected c) protective d) protects

5. My brother got his master's degree, so he is over the ....

   a) ground b) sky c) earth d) moon

6. Just as the dinner ...., my father was reading the newspaper.

   a) was preparing b) was being prepared
   c) was prepared d) is preparing

7. I .... living away from my family before travelling abroad.

   a) wasn't used to b) used to c) didn't use to d) is used to

8. Tourists will stop coming to Egypt if tourism is not ....

   a) tricky b) tiny c) sustainable d) boring

9. Ragab .... to the beach every summer when he was young.

   a) went b) goes c) go d) going

10. Most of the students feel .... when they start a new school as it isn't easy.

    a) happy b) glad c) stressed d) pleased

11. If you have a problem, you can .... me for advice by phone or email any time.

    a) contact b) conduct c) connect d) communicate

12. Mona doesn't mind .... to the cinema tonight as she is not busy.

    a) go b) to go c) going d) goes

13. The best thing to do when you are thirsty is to drink .... glass of water.

    a) no article b) a c) the d) an

14. I only bought my new car last week, but I .... 5000 km with it so far.

    a) already driven b) have already driven
    c) had already driven d) drove

15. My trousers .... well every week by the laundry. They are professional.
    a) are wash b) is washed c) are washed d) is washing
16. Our bus driver .... us to school on time. He is very punctual.
    a) always drive b) always drives c) drive always d) drives always

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



Advertising has become very specialised in modern times. In the business world of today, supply is usually greater than demand. There is great competition between the different manufactures of the same kind of product to persuade customers to buy their own particular make. They always have to remind the customer of the name and the quality of their product. They do this by advertising. The manufacturer advertises in newspapers and on posters. He sometimes pays for songs to be sung about his product on commercial radio programmes. He employs attractive sales girls to distribute samples of it. He organises competitions with prizes for the winners. He often advertises on the screens of local cinemas. Most important of all is on television. He has advertisements put into the programmes whenever this is possible. Manufacturers often spend large sums of money on advertisements.

We buy a particular product because we think that it is the best. We usually think so because the advertisements say so. Some people never pause to ask themselves if the advertisements are telling the truth.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Advertisements persuade us to buy things even if ....
    a) the product is good
    b) we don't need them
    c) supply is greater than demand
    d) we need them
18. One of the following is not mentioned and it is a way of advertising ....
    a) newspapers and TV b) posters
    c) cinemas d) trains
19. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to his ....
    a) advertisement b) factory
    c) product d) customer
20. The best title of this text is "..................".
    a) Ways of Advertising b) Competition
    c) A specialised activity d) Manufacturers
21. The antonym of the word "particular" is ....
    a) choosy b) unique
    c) selective d) common

22 Manufacturers spend so much money on advertising ....
a) because advertising needs lots of thinking
b) because there are lots of work to do
c) to persuade customers to buy their own particular make
d) to distribute the largest amount of flyers

23 According to the passage, advertisers use beautiful girls to ....
a) distribute products
b) deceive people
c) buy products
d) attract more workers

24 The main idea of the last paragraph is "................." .
a) The Power of Advertisements
b) How to Advertise in Newspapers
c) The TV Advertisements
d) The Good Marketing

25 Some manufacturers set competitions ....
a) to encourage people to be active
b) to sell their products
c) to advertise their products
d) to entertain people in the street

26 Some people don't care whether ....
a) the material is good or not
b) the prices are good or not
c) the advertiser is truthful or not
d) the TV is on or not

27 Translate into English:

3

إن مساعدة المعاقين هى مسئولية كل فرد فى المجتمع؛ لذا يجب علينا أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا كى نجعلهم يختلطون مع أفراد المجتمع الآخرين.

....

....

....

28 Translate into Arabic:

3

"Education is the principle of progress and development for all people and countries of the world all the same the advanced and the developing."

....

....

....

29 Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic:

6

"Your future job"

....

....

....

....

....

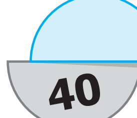
....

....

....

....

Final Test 4



Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1. My room is always messy because of my little son. The synonyms of the word "messy" are ....
   a) disordered b) disappointed c) tidy
   d) unhappy e) untidy
2. All my colleagues went to the laboratory. The class is empty. The antonyms of the word "empty" are ....
   a) confused b) busy c) pleased
   d) crowded e) delighted

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14

3. The horrible accident was the .... of high speed.
   a) cause b) result c) reason d) affection
4. Radi suffers from a heart disease. Doctors recommend an urgent heart .... operation.
   a) transmission b) transport c) transfusion d) transplant
5. Sara sent me .... SMS just now. She told me that our exams had postponed.
   a) a b) an c) the d) no article
6. ...., which is dried grape, is much used in cooking.
   a) Currant b) Currency c) Current d) Curtain
7. Your blue jeans .... hung in the wardrobe. You always forget.
   a) is b) have c) are d) was
8. **Amir :** I'm presently short of money.
   Samir: Don't bother about that. I .... you a loan.
   a) will give b) am giving c) going to give d) give
9. Unlike now, I .... black coffee. I only drank tea and fruit juice.
   a) use b) didn't use to c) used to d) wasn't used to
10. Be careful, the car .... hit you; it is very near!
    a) will b) would c) is d) is going to
11. He had a .... face as he had been working all day.
    a) tiring looking b) tired looking c) tired looked d) tiring looked
12. The little girl .... missing down town. Her mother was very worried about her.
    a) got b) went c) found d) came
13. I always use the .... "Kimo" for my little brother Kamal.
    a) pen name b) pseudonym c) nick name d) surname
14. Sara has enjoyed reading ever since she .... very young.
    a) was b) is c) will be d) has been

⑮ The manager is going to the mechanic because his car .... every month.

a) is repaired   b) is repairing   c) was repaired   d) repairs

⑯ The plumber managed .... the tap and apologised for our neighbours.

a) fixing   b) to fixing   c) to fix   d) he fixes

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



Many researchers, engineers and environmentalists are expressing deep concern about changes in the overall climate of the planet. Fossil fuels are being continuously used to produce electricity. The burning of these fuels produces gases like carbon dioxide, methane and nitrous oxides which lead to global warming. Desertification is also leading to warmer temperatures. The hazard of global warming is continuously causing major damage to the earth's environment. Most people are still unaware of global warming and don't consider it a big problem in the years to come. What most people don't understand is that global warming is currently happening and we are already experiencing some of its withering effects. It severely affects ecosystems and disturbs the ecological balance, therefore some solutions must be devised.

Alternative energy sources: solar, wind, hydro, geothermal, biomass need to be seriously pursued. Finding and using renewable sources is one of the methods to combat the ever-increasing global warming effectively since the continuous rise in the temperature of the planet is really upsetting. When sunlight reaches the earth 30% of the earth's sunlight is sent back into space, while the remaining is absorbed by oceans air and land. This heats up the surface of the planet. It is caused by anthropogenic activities.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

⑰ Desertification means .... a wide area of trees.

a) clearing   b) planting
c) irrigating   d) spraying

⑱ The underlined word "its" refers to ....

a) desertification   b) global warming
c) environment   d) CO_2

⑲ Scientists recommend .... fossil fuels in an attempt to solve the problem.

a) using   b) misusing
c) reducing   d) reusing

⑳ Burning fossil fuels .... global warming.

a) causes of   b) results of
c) leads to   d) results from

㉑ ....% of the sunlight is absorbed by oceans air and land.

a) 30   b) 50
c) 70   d) 90

22 The synonym of the underlined word "ecological" is ....

a) environmental b) biological c) chemical d) material

23 Using nonrenewable sources of energy is not safe because it ....

a) produces gases like carbon dioxide
b) can be stolen easily
c) can be flamed
d) can't be moved from a place to another

24 According to the passage, we .... the destructive effects of the global warming.

a) will face
b) faced
c) are already facing
d) have never faced

25 According to the writer, these problems are caused by ....

a) aircrafts
b) animal
c) humans
d) plants

26 The best title for this passage is ".................." .

a) National Disasters
b) Global Disasters
c) Trees and Nature
d) Anthropogenic Activities

27 **Translate into English:**

3

تضطر بعض الحيوانات إلى تغيير لونها بلون البيئة المحيطة لتحمى أنفسها من حيوانات أقوى. فكل حيوان له خصائص تعينه على الحياة فى بيئته الخاصة.

....

....

....

28 **Translate into Arabic:**

3

No one can avoid being old as aging is a natural process that gradually happens with the passing of time.

....

....

....

29 **Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic:**

6

"Different forms of pollution and how to fight them"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 5



Choose Two of the Five options:



1. Egypt does many giant projects nowadays. The synonyms of the word "giant" are ....

   a) huge b) generous c) delighted d) gigantic e) modern

2. Giza Pyramids are well-known all over the world. The antonyms of the word "famous" are ....

   a) celebrated b) nameless c) well-built d) unknown e) well-known

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



3. He felt lonely and .... after his mother had passed away.

   a) miser b) miserliness c) miserably d) miserable

4. Have you finished writing the essay ....? You are very quick!

   a) just b) yet c) ever d) already

5. His father .... him a good job as an accountant in a multi-national company.

   a) is finding b) founded c) found d) has founded

6. She ran up the .... road leading to the castle.

   a) gravel b) plot c) digging d) gravels

7. In .... time, I will travel to London. I will stay for 2 weeks there.

   a) two week b) two week's c) two weeks d) two weeks'

8. I .... lunch at home yesterday. My father invited me to have it outdoors.

   a) haven't b) used c) didn't have d) hadn't

9. It was not polite of him to interrupt what I ....

   a) was saying b) am saying c) will say d) says

10. Doctors .... after patients in hospitals. It is their job.

    a) lock b) looked c) looking d) look

11. You must protect the data on your laptop against ....

    a) hacks b) hack c) hacking d) hijack

12. You are no more than a .... who frightens people online.

    a) cyberbullying b) cyberbully c) phishing d) terror

13. Sports stars are .... for thousands of youngsters so they should behave well.

    a) role games b) role models c) role makers d) role players

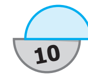
14. The accident is a .... of one that happened to her three weeks ago.

    a) reputation b) repetition c) revision d) religion

15. As soon as I .... the key, I will set off very fast.
 a) found b) had found c) was finding d) have found

16. I .... as a professor since I was 30, and this is the first time to see this theory.
 a) worked b) have worked c) was working d) work

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



Bullying can take a variety of forms, from the verbal-being called hurtful names – to the physical-being kicked – as well as indirect forms, such as being excluded from social groups. A survey I conducted with Irene Whitney found that in British primary schools up to a quarter of pupils reported experience of bullying, which is about one in ten cases was persistent. There was less bullying in secondary schools, with about one in twenty-five suffering persistent bullying, but these cases may be particularly rebellious.

Bullying is clearly unpleasant and can make the child experiencing it feel unworthy and depressed. In extreme cases, it can even lead to suicide, though this is thankfully rare. Victimized pupils are more likely to experience difficulties with interpersonal relationships as adults, while children who persistently bully are more likely to grow up to be physically violent and convicted of anti-social offences.

Until recently, not much was known about the topic, and little help was available to teachers to deal with bullying. Perhaps, as a result, schools would often deny the problem. "There is no bullying at this school" has been a common refrain, almost certainly all true. Fortunately, more schools are now saying: There is not much bullying here, but when it occurs we have a clear for dealing with it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Teachers .... know how to deal with bullying, but now they do.
 a) don't b) didn't
 c) had d) hadn't

18. Being .... is an indirect form of bullying.
 a) called hurtful names b) kicked
 c) excluded from social groups d) slashed

19. Children experiencing an extreme case of bullying may commit ....
 a) suicide b) theft
 c) tolerance d) violence

20. A recent survey found that in British secondary schools there was .... bullying than in primary schools.
 a) more b) less
 c) least d) much more

21. The pronoun "it" in the last paragraph refers to ....
 a) little help b) bullying
 c) school d) refrain

22 The synonym of the underlined word "conducted" is ....

a) performed b) attached c) linked d) ignored

23 When a school has a case of bullying ....

a) they neglect it
b) they make up between students
c) they deal with it strictly
d) they report it to the police

24 The the best title for the passage is "................" .

a) Bullying can be Treated
b) Students are Disrespectful
c) Schools Need Reform
d) Bullying as a Social Disease

25 Teachers .... to deal with bullying.

a) are ready b) are supported c) are not trained d) can't be trained

26 Being exposed to bullying, the child suffers from ....

a) over happiness b) depression c) creativity d) disrespect

27 **Translate into English:** 3

يجب عليك أن تبذل قصارى جهدك لكى تنفع نفسك وعائلتك وبلدك، فالعمل الجاد والاجتهاد هما السبيل الوحيد للنجاح فى الحياة.

....
....
....

28 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

Tourism is extremely necessary for Egypt because it creates job opportunities and brings hard currency to the country. So, we must all work together to develop it.

....
....
....

29 **Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic:** 6

"Someone you admire"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Final Test 6

40

Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1. My neighbour donated his old clothes to a charity in our neighbourhood. The synonyms the word of "donated" are ....

a) kept b) presented c) received d) asked e) gave

2. After a long discussion, they admitted their responsibility for the robbery. The antonyms of the word "admitted" are ....

a) denied b) regretted c) adapted d) concealed e) avoided

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14

3. He denied .... that bad thing. In fact, he was innocent.

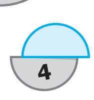
a) to do b) did c) doing d) do

4. .... are fully grown persons.

a) Children b) Old people c) Teenagers d) Adults

5. When I was young, I always .... before going to school.

a) crying b) cry c) cried d) was crying



6. When I heard the .... of the gun parts, I know the man was about to shoot.

a) direct b) object c) check d) click

7. We use .... friendly materials in ecotourism to keep the surroundings.

a) environment b) environmental c) environmentally d) environmentalist

8. He had lost his job, so he couldn't pay back the money he ....

a) owned b) earned c) gave d) owed

9. .... the flight, I was reading a book called "*For Whom the Bell Tolls*".

a) While b) During c) Just as d) When

10. My first computer didn't work, so they sent me a ....

a) replaced b) replacement c) replace d) replaces

11. Mona .... on holiday next Sunday. She's arranged to do so.

a) will go b) will have gone c) goes d) is going

12. There is plenty of meat, but there is not .... bread.

a) plenty b) many c) much d) a lot

13. Decision .... needs knowledge and experience.

a) doing b) having c) making d) saying

14. I have passed this test ....

a) already b) yet c) just d) so far

15 The lesson .... at 10 o'clock, so we can have breakfast together.

a) will start b) starts c) is going to start d) is starting

16 While ...., me sister fell off the bed and got injured.

a) sleep b) she was slept c) slept d) sleeping

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



"Necessity is the mother of invention" is a famous common proverb which means that our needs always motivate our minds to create new things in order to manage well with a world full of speed changes.

Man's needs have often directed him to discover the natural resources around him, and to make with his own hands the things he wants.

Thus, he made tools to cultivate the land and get its crops. Those tools played an important part in establishing civilisation. Food, clothing and shelter are still considered to be man's basic needs. The progress of technology has enabled man to satisfy all these needs. It has helped him to take wide steps in developing agriculture, industry and public services.

Thus, we are now enjoying the blessing of modern civilisation. When civilisation developed and man lived in organised societies, he found himself in need of more than his necessities; Education is next to food in importance because it is the only way to acquire experience and the qualifications necessary to earn a living.

Education changed our style of living and led to higher thinking levels. He invaded space. He invented the computer. No wonder that man has great abilities which will enable him to create more inventions in the future.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The underlined word "acquire" has a similar meaning to ....

a) require b) demand
c) obtain d) contain

18 According to the passage education is of great importance because ....

a) it gives us experience and making a living
b) it is pre to food in importance
c) it is natural resource before us
d) the tools played a role in our civilisation

19 Man needed more than his necessities when he ....

a) needed tools b) lived in organised societies
c) discovered natural resources d) made the things he wanted

20 "He made tools to cultivate the land" another word for "cultivate" is ....

a) ignore b) destroy
c) plant d) abandon

21. According to the passage, the need for collecting the crops led man to ....
    a) plant huge areas of land b) invent agricultural tools
    c) buy machines d) rent peasants to help him
22. In the last paragraph, invading the space and inventing the computer is an evidence that ....
    a) man spends a lot of money b) man has extraordinary abilities
    c) science is obtainable d) the space exploration is not impossible
23. The main idea of the passage is "................." .
    a) Necessities can be postponed b) Conditions create inventions
    c) The needs are motivated by possibilities d) The agriculture and civilisation
24. The word from the passage that means "run" is ....
    a) manage b) discover c) means d) enable
25. Man invented the computer because ....
    a) it was easy b) the education led to this
    c) the internet was free d) sending emails was a necessity
26. Which sentence is NOT mentioned in the passage?
    a) Man created new things in order to manage well with the world.
    b) Man made tools to cultivate the land and get its crops.
    c) Man made wars which destroyed the planet.
    d) All of us are enjoying the blessing of modern civilisation.

27. **Translate into English:** 3

عندما تعطى وعدًا لشخص فلا يجب أن تخلفه، ولا تقل غير الصدق، ولا تخف أن تقول الحقيقة فهذه قوة، ولا تمدح شخصًا لمجرد المدح.

....

....

....

28. **Translate into Arabic:** 3

When you give a person a quality education, you not only revive a nation, but also you help him to think and create to be a good citizen.

....

....

....

29. **Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic:** 6

"Donation and charities"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 7



Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1. Maya likes wearing fashionable clothes. The synonyms the word of "fashionable" are ....
   a) old b) clean c) stylish
   d) expensive e) cool
2. Your question isn't clear. Can you clarify what you want? The antonyms of the word "clear" are ....
   a) ambiguous b) pure c) bright
   d) complicated e) obscure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14

3. It is important to respect the .... of opinions and ideas, even if they are different from yours.
   a) leader b) friendship c) diversity d) punctuation
4. **A:** We have not got any sugar.
   B: I know, I .... some this evening.
   a) won't buy b) am going to buy
   c) will be buying d) will have bought
5. He has been doing three jobs to get out of ....
   a) debit b) doubt c) count d) debt
6. The countryside is mainly .... by farmers and their families.
   a) populated b) population c) unpopulated d) pollution
7. We all recommended .... that book.
   a) that read b) that he read c) to read d) to reading
8. What is the correct plural of the word "belief"?
   a) Believes. b) Beliefs. c) Beliefes. d) Believe.
9. Finally, my mother .... how to use the internet. Now she can send e-mails.
   a) learns b) has learnt c) had learnt d) was learning
10. A/An .... is someone who is legally responsible for looking after someone or something.
    a) biologist b) guardian c) hunter d) admirer
11. There are .... differences between people in Upper Egypt and those in the Delta.
    a) culture b) cultural c) cultured d) culturally
12. Do not open the door until I .... you.
    a) told b) had told c) tell d) was told
13. My grandfather was a great .... When we were children we would listen to his stories for hours.
    a) storyteller b) poet c) playwright d) dancer
14. My uncle arrived on .... Sunday, after my birthday.
    a) a b) an c) the d) no article

15 I've .... many countries but I like Egypt the most.

a) been b) been to c) gone d) gone to

16 I bought .... mp3 which can be connected to the car via Bluetooth.

a) a b) an c) the d) no article

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

10

It was just before bedtime. Sally was reading a hair-raising ghost story. She loved the excitement of scaring herself before a good night's sleep. She was reading the story halfway when she suddenly heard the squeaky opening of her front door. She was surprised by the scary sound. She felt something was wrong. Sally gently pushed the warm blanket aside and slowly crept out of her bed. She walked down the stairs. Even her very own footsteps on the creaky stairs scared her. She heard the soft sound of footsteps in the kitchen and she stopped to listen. It was surely a ghost from the past since everyone she knew was in their beds fast asleep at this hour.

The darkness also frightened her, but she wanted to find out what was making the strange noise. She turned to enter the kitchen where the noise seemed to be coming. Suddenly, she walked right into a dark figure. The dark figure stretched out a hand and quickly turned on the bright kitchen lights. It was Sally's elder brother Ken! He couldn't help laughing at poor Sally. He had gone out late that night with his friends and had just returned home. Sally felt silly to have thought it was a ghost. She had a good laugh too.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The strange sound, the creaky stairs, the darkness and the dark figure .... Sally.

a) screamed b) scared
c) cared d) cracked

18 Sally .... reading ghost stories.

a) enjoyed b) did not enjoy
c) feared d) avoided

19 Who does the underlined phrase "The dark figure" refer to?

a) The strange noise. b) Sally.
c) Sally's brother. d) The ghost.

20 Sally realised it was not a ghost when her brother ....

a) stretched his hand b) turned on the lights
c) walked down the steps d) laughed

21 "He couldn't help laughing" couldn't help means ....

a) couldn't stop b) couldn't breathe
c) couldn't give a hand d) couldn't sleep

22 Ken .... when Sally started reading the story.

a) had been outside | b) had been on the roof
c) hadn't entered the house | d) had hidden under the bed

23 Sally thought it was a ghost because all of her family ....

a) were asleep | b) got out
c) went shopping | d) didn't like tricks

24 The best title to this passage is "................".

a) Reading is important | b) Scary Tales Effects
c) Ken is coward | d) Sally's brother's trick

25 What kind of texts is this passage?

a) A Letter. b) A short film. c) A short story. d) An Email.

26 The word from the passage which means "discover" is ....

a) turn on b) walk into c) find out d) push

27 Translate into English: (3)

إن القراءة وسيلة لتنمية الثقافة وتحصيل المعرفة النافعة فى وقت الفراغ، وممارسة الرياضة تساعد فى الحفاظ على اللياقة البدنية وتجديد النشاط.

28 Translate into Arabic: (3)

Building good citizens and creating a creative society are the main aims of education. This will teach them self-reliance.

29 Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic: (6)

"The advantages of teamwork"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Final Test 8

40

Choose Two of the Five options:



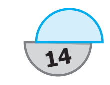
1 Wild flowers grow along the sides of rivers. The antonyms of the word “wild” are ....

a) fierce b) harmful c) tame
d) domestic e) legal

2 Our car broke down and we had a long trek. The word “trek” here is a synonym of ....

a) fishing b) hike c) losing
d) fabricating e) journey

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



3 As an ...., you should travel in a way that shows respect to nature.

a) ecotourism b) ecotourist c) ecosystem d) eco-friendly

4 .... emails usually targets your bank accounts.

a) Fishing b) Phishing c) Cyber d) The internet

5 He was a great .... who wrote many poems.

a) novelist b) author c) poet d) illustrator

6 You should have your sight .... regularly.

a) checked b) shocked c) choked d) shook

7 Families should .... their children’s internet activity.

a) meet b) click c) monitor d) scam

8 My friend keeps .... photos all day.

a) logging in b) posting c) lighting d) connecting

9 While Roqaya was cooking lunch, her brother ....

a) slept b) sleeping c) was sleeping d) has slept

10 .... anybody need help?

a) Do b) Does c) Is d) Are

11 I haven’t seen him since he .... a child.

a) is b) has been c) been d) was

12 He doesn’t have .... money.

a) many b) few c) a lot d) much

13 Next week, she .... 16 years old.

a) is going to be b) going to be c) will be d) is being

14 He is looking forward to .... his friends.

a) meet b) meets c) met d) meeting

15 Physics .... my favourite subject. I like Newton and Einstein very much.

a) is b) are c) have been d) is being

16 I .... my aunt eagerly last Friday. I can't stand waiting for the next month.

a) have visited b) has visited c) visited d) visit

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

10

Dangerous substances discharged by factories cause toxic or poisonous air pollution. The emissions have serious effects on public health. Needless to say, exposure to high levels of these toxic emissions will cause a lot of human suffering through chest ailments and diseases.

Toxic chemicals, which do not break down easily in the atmosphere have been known to travel great distances and come down to earth. Moreover, pollutants emitted from automobiles, cars and other means of transport and dry cleaners are considered very dangerous. In this way, a huge quantity of cancer-causing chemicals are released into the air.

Benzene is known to cause leukemia in humans. This is a serious problem which is serious to human health. The World Health Organisation "W.H.O." reaffirms that the gap of the ozone layer has been widening. Two thirds of the layer that protects the globe have been completely destroyed. Ozone absorbs the harmful ultraviolet rays that cause skin cancer and damage eyesight.

Many countries are now taking action to reduce pollution. But this pollution problem may solve itself when the world oil wells have run out. Then we hope that alternative sources of energy will have been found.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The ozone layer, being widened by pollutants, ...

a) prevents ultraviolet rays from coming down to earth

b) protects the globe

c) allows ultraviolet rays to come down to earth and cause human suffering

d) absorbs the harmful pollutants

18 Toxic chemicals ....

a) break down easily in the atmosphere

b) do not break down easily in the atmosphere and don't come down to earth

c) come down to earth because they do not break down easily in the atmosphere

d) are emitted from the atmosphere and come down to earth

19 Toxic emissions sometimes cause ....

a) ultraviolet rays to break down easily b) chest ailments and other diseases

c) ultraviolet rays d) the reduction of pollution

20 A suitable title for the passage is "................".

a) Ultraviolet rays b) Toxic air-pollution

c) Leukemia in humans c) The World Health Organisation

21 .... of the layer that protects the globe is remaining.

a) Two thirds b) One third c) Three fifths d) Half

22 The ozone layer is important because ....
a) it wraps the earth
b) it prevents the harmful rays from reaching the earth
c) it protects the space from the sun
d) it protects the other planets from the earth

23 The industry is responsible for polluting the environment because ....
a) factories don't pay taxes
b) factories discharge dangerous substances
c) many people work in industry
d) building new factories takes a lot of water

24 When the petrol runs out from the world, ...
a) there will be a big problem in energy price
b) the pollution will disappear
c) there will be an energy crisis
d) the deserts will fade

25 The antonym of the underlined word "toxic" is ....
a) healthy
b) creepy
c) unhealthy
d) weak

26 According to the last paragraph of the passage, all countries ....
a) ignore the case
b) want to solve the problem
c) dig more oil wells
d) create solar panels

27 Translate into English:

3

لقد لعبت المرأة المصرية دائمًا دورًا حيويًا فى تحسين المجتمع ونمو الاقتصاد المصرى من خلال اهتمامها بأسرتها ووظيفتها فى نفس الوقت.

....

....

28 Translate into Arabic:

3

Egypt hosted the last Africa Cup of Nations in 2019 and the Algerian National Team won the Cup for the second time.

....

....

29 Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic:

6

"Pollution"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 9

40

Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1. There is a major problem with parking in London. The antonyms of the word “major” are ....
   a) minor   b) trivial   c) fundamental
   d) remarkable   e) tremendous
2. “Exotic birds are seen here in winter.” In this sentence, the word ’exotic’ is a synonym of ....
   a) native   b) unusual   c) unconventional
   d) foreign   e) original

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14

3. Children like to .... new games and movies from the internet.
   a) upload   b) download   c) downside   d) destroy
4. .... has made the world a smaller place.
   a) Any plane   b) Planes   c) The plane   d) The planes
5. Luxor is considered a main .... for most tourists.
   a) location   b) cooperation   c) destination   d) foundation
6. .... I started my profession, I have met a lot of excellent students.
   a) On   b) Before   c) After   d) Since
7. The money saved for buying clothes .... on that table.
   a) was   b) were   c) has   d) had
8. Although he looks smart, he has a .... across his forehead.
   a) scar   b) scarce   c) scared   d) scare
9. .... I was talking on the phone, the doorbell rang.
   a) Since   b) During   c) While   d) After
10. The .... set the prisoner free when he realised that he was innocent.
    a) master   b) manager   c) magistrate   d) servant
11. You should avoid .... friends with such bad people.
    a) to make   b) making   c) makes   d) to making
12. Wicked young people and media fans sometimes try hard to .... the accounts of famous men.
    a) pack   b) hack   c) mock   d) highjack
13. Good people never .... or tell lies. They are respected characters.
    a) behave   b) beat   c) cheat   d) wear
14. Twenty years from now, I think my city .... a fantastic place to live in.
    a) is   b) is being   c) is going to be   d) will be

15 The coach advised me to practise .... more to get fit shortly.

a) jogging b) to jog c) to jogging d) jog

16 Have you cleaned your room ....?

a) just b) till now c) yet d) never

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

10

Octopuses are extremely intelligent. They have even learnt a few tricks to get them out of sticky situations. For example, they are afraid of a predator. As octopuses don't have teeth or sharp claws to defend themselves, they hide in the sand on the bottom of the ocean floor. Do you want to know how they do that? Well, the octopus is like a chameleon because it can change the colour of its skin to match the sand. This colour change happens in less than a minute.

Some octopuses like to stay in more shallow water where there are rocks and coral. However, octopuses can squeeze themselves into small spaces between the rocks to get out of reach of predators. Another way an octopus can hide is by shooting ink. An octopus uses a part of its body called a siphon to shoot ink into the water. The ink forms a cloud that hides the octopus. It's like a magician doing a vanishing act.

If an octopus is being attacked, it can actually make itself look like a venomous sea snake. It will bury itself in the sand, keeping two arms visible. It will change the colour of those arms to match a sea snake.

If an octopus is in trouble, it can break off one of its arms. The arm will then change colours and squirm around the water to distract the predator while the octopus swims away to safety. Don't worry though. The octopus's arm will grow back.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 A .... is an animal that attacks and kills octopuses.

a) prey b) predator
c) chameleon d) magician

18 When an octopus is in a sticky situation, that means it's ....

a) easy b) dangerous
c) covered in stick d) unable to move

19 The synonym of the word "intelligent" is ....

a) smart b) dangerous
c) venomous d) visible

20 The octopus and the chameleon are similar as both ....

a) swim in the same way b) eat the same food
c) catch small fish d) can change their skin colour

21 The octopus can separate one of its arms to ....

a) distract the predator b) renew it
c) catch a prey d) lay eggs

22 Octopuses can squeeze themselves into small spaces between the rocks to ....
a) defend themselves
b) eat small fish
c) attack their predator
d) sleep

23 The octopus can shoot ink into the water which ....
a) kills the attackers
b) helps it hide from the attackers
c) pollutes the water
d) attracts preys

24 Octopuses don't have teeth or sharp claws to defend themselves ....
a) so, they are eaten easily
b) however, they have other ways to keep enemies away
c) moreover, they are not brave
d) that's why they are about to extinct

25 The best title for this passage is ....
a) The Magician Octopuses
b) The Sea World and the Predator
c) The Seabed
d) The Sea Ink

26 The octopus has a remarkable advantage which is its ability to ....
a) swim in the sea
b) kill small fish
c) renew its arms
d) breath underwater

27 Translate into English:

3

لقد فاز المنتخب الأوليمبى المصرى لكرة القدم بكأس الأمم الإفريقية وأسعد الكثير من المصريين. ونحن نهنئ مصرنا الغالية من أعماق قلوبنا.

....

....

....

28 Translate into Arabic:

3

There is no doubt that education is the backbone of scientific progress. Without teachers, people will suffer from the darkness of ignorance.

....

....

....

29 Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic:

6

"The different forms of pollution and how to fight them"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 10

40

Choose Two of the five options:

4

1. Voluntary work is of a great importance. The antonyms of the word "voluntary" are ....
   a) optional b) exceptional c) obligatory
   d) compulsory e) obligation
2. "I admire your idea." In this sentence, the word 'admire' is a synonym of ....
   a) praise b) approve c) disapprove
   d) appreciate e) prove

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14

3. Some people's .... in money gets them to do illegal things.
   a) interesting b) interested c) interests d) interest
4. He got his degree in economics from .... university in Finland.
   a) a b) an c) the d) these
5. We should leave for work early, or we might get .... in the traffic jams.
   a) struck b) stock c) stuck d) through
6. He felt exhausted as he isn't used to .... such hard work.
   a) do b) did c) doing d) done



7. He always listens to his father's advice. He usually takes it for ....
   a) grants b) granted c) granting d) grant
8. If you want to connect to the internet, ... on this icon.
   a) kick b) click c) clock d) block
9. Nader wishes he had studied for his exams. He regrets ....
   a) to study b) to studying c) studying d) not studying
10. His colleagues and teachers like him as he is ....
    a) behaves politely b) usually polite c) usual politely d) usually politely
11. Before the operation, the doctor should check the blood .... of the patient.
    a) pleasure b) treasure c) pressure d) measure
12. Money .... to Egypt by the tourists, so we should keep our country clean and safe.
    a) brings b) is bringing c) is brought d) are brought
13. .... the last two weeks, we have prepared for our graduation party.
    a) Since b) At c) For d) While
14. Now and then we ask our parents .... advice on what we should do.
    a) of b) about c) to d) for

15 .... children don't like schools because they want to play all the time.

a) Lots b) Lots of c) A lot d) Any

16 Samy is a fantastic boy. I think he .... the record of the other class.

a) won't break b) isn't going to break c) is going to breaking d) will break

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

10

Dear Mr. Reda,

I hope everything is Ok with you. Yesterday, I had a night party with my friends, so I had to stay up very late. Let me tell you that the party was amazing. We had lots of fun there. The food was tasty and fresh; those people are excellent at hosting guests. However, I don't like fish at all; they should have asked me what to eat. Never mind! The video games were up-to-date and I beat them all. My friend's father loves sports, so we enjoyed playing tennis table and volleyball. But let me tell you that all of them liked my outfit. They laughed out loud once they saw me with my fascinating orange shoes, red trousers and checked-colourful shirt. Ahmad and Amgad threw tissues at me. I am always fashionable as you know. At the end of the day, we had many pictures which you can find in the attachments below. I couldn't find any transportation, so I requested a ride. It cost only half the price of my sunglasses which costs 150 pounds. When I got home I realised that I had forgotten my wallet at my friend's, but my mum solved the problem and the driver was understanding. Anyway, I'm writing to inform you that I will not show up today because I haven't done any task yet and I'm tired a little bit because of the dancing. See you soon, my manager.

Best regards,

Anas

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 What kind of passages is this one?

a) A short story. b) An email. c) A letter. d) A diary.

18 To whom is this speech written?

a) Anas. b) Amgad. c) Ahmad. d) Reda.

19 The writer thinks that his friends ....

a) didn't like his appearance b) liked his appearance

c) made fun of his appearance d) were ashamed of his shoes

20 The underlined word "up-to-date" means ....

a) old b) ancient c) modern d) fast

21 The house, where the party was held, is ....

a) narrow b) vast c) boring d) old-fashioned

22 What is the purpose of this passage?

a) The writer wants to tell a story. b) The writer is not going to work.

c) The writer is proud of his mum. d) The writer is showing his abilities.

23 According to the passage, the writer is ....

a) careful b) punctual c) careless d) hard-working

24 How much did it cost the writer to go home?

a) 150 pounds. b) 300 pounds. c) 75 pounds. d) 225 pounds.

25 The writer sent .... in the attachment.

a) his tasks b) his shoes c) his photos d) nothing

26 How could the writer pay for the ride?

a) He paid by a visa card.
b) He asked the driver to return to his friend's house.
c) His mum paid for him when he reached home.
d) The driver didn't take money.

27 Translate the following into English: 3

تعتبر السياحة البيئية مصدرًا مباشرًا من مصادر الدخل القومى فى مصر؛ فمصر تمتلك الكثير والكثير من الأماكن الطبيعية المعزولة التى يرغب السياح فى زيارتها.

....

....

28 Translate the following into Arabic: 3

Some youth spend a long time on the internet nowadays unaware of the potential dangers there. They are vulnerable to many kinds of crimes.

....

....

29 Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic: 6

"Friendship is a precious thing."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Gem

English

الصف 1 الثانوى

إجابات نماذج اختبارات الفصل الدراسى الأول

2021 - 2022

Answers To Final Tests

Final Test 1

Choose Two of the Five options:

1. b) satisfied / e) pleased
2. a) faraway / d) distant

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. b) earn
4. c) donate
5. a) has gone
6. d) crew
7. a) isolated
8. c) owe
9. a) was preparing
10. a) is known
11. b) leaves
12. a) an/The
13. c) is going to
14. b) bullying
15. a) was walking
16. d) saw

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. d) can treat a lot of diseases
18. a) natural remedies
19. c) Symptom
20. b) after
21. c) customer
22. c) it cures and protects from side effects
23. a) demerit
24. a) The herbal medicine benefits
25. c) It can be fried on fire to be served
26. d) willow tree

27. **Translate into English:**

A lot of youth are keen on taking part in social work to develop their country. Young people are the basis of the development for any nation, so the developed countries pay special attention to youth.

28. **Translate into Arabic:**

إن البطالة قنبلة موقوتة تهدد الأمن والاستقرار للمجتمع المصرى وحل هذه المشكلة سوف يجلب استثمارات جديدة والتى ستوفر المزيد من فرص العمل.

29. **Student's own answer.**



Final Test 2

Choose Two of the Five options:

1. b) interesting / e) exciting
2. b) cared for / d) nursed

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. b) a
4. b) since
5. d) during
6. b) walked
7. a) track
8. a) ever
9. d) will show
10. c) rhyme
11. c) aged
12. d) hacked
13. b) for
14. b) deserved
15. b) to cook
16. c) getting

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) getting on and off the bus is difficult
18. a) taxi drivers
19. b) away from
20. c) indispensable
21. a) complex
22. b) cars have to be left in the streets
23. d) Transportation
24. b) it's the rush hour
25. a) greedy
26. d) it takes long time

27. **Translate into English:**
All members of society should cooperate to fight bullying as it is a bad social problem spread among youth and threatens people everywhere.

28. **Translate into Arabic:**
لتحقيق طموحاتك فى الحياة يجب عليك أن تمتلك الإصرار والشجاعة والصبر بالإضافة إلى الشعور بالمسئولية.

29. **Student's own answer.**

Final Test 3

Choose Two of the Five options:

1. a) observe / c) monitor
2. b) decrease / c) reduce

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. a) donate
4. c) protective
5. d) moon
6. b) was being prepared
7. a) wasn't used to
8. c) sustainable
9. a) went
10. c) stressed
11. a) contact
12. c) going
13. b) a
14. b) have already driven
15. c) are washed
16. b) always drives

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) we don't need them
18. d) trains
19. c) product
20. a) Ways of Advertising
21. d) common
22. c) to persuade customers to buy their own particular make
23. a) distribute products
24. a) The Power of Advertisements
25. c) to advertise their products
26. c) the advertiser is truthful or not

27. **Translate into English:**
Helping the disabled is the responsibility of every one in society so we should do our best to make them mix with other members of society.

28. **Translate into Arabic:**
إن التعليم هو أساس التقدم والتنمية للشعوب ودول العالم على حد سواء المتقدمة والنامية.

29. **Student's own answer.**

Final Test 4

Choose Two of the Five options:

1. a) disordered / e) untidy
2. b) busy / d) crowded

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. b) result
4. d) transplant
5. b) an
6. a) Currant
7. c) are
8. a) will give
9. d) wasn't used to
10. d) is going to
11. b) tired looking
12. b) went
13. c) nick name
14. a) was
15. a) is fixed
16. c) to fix

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. a) clearing
18. b) global warming
19. c) reducing
20. c) leads to
21. c) 70
22. a) environmental
23. a) produces gases like carbon dioxide
24. c) are already facing
25. c) humans
26. b) Global Disasters

27. **Translate into English:**
Some animals have to change their colours to match their surroundings to protect themselves from stronger animals. Each animal has characteristics that help it live in its own environment.

28. **Translate into Arabic:**
لا أحد يستطيع تجنب كبر السن لأنه عملية طبيعية تحدث تدريجيًا بمرور الوقت.

29. **Student's own answer.**

Final Test 5

Choose Two of the Five options:

1. a) huge / d) gigantic
2. b) nameless / d) unknown

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. d) miserable
4. d) already
5. c) found
6. a) gravel
7. d) two weeks'
8. c) didn't have
9. a) was saying
10. d) look
11. c) hacking
12. b) cyberbully
13. b) role models
14. b) repetition
15. d) have found
16. b) have worked

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) didn't
18. c) excluded from social groups
19. a) suicide
20. b) less
21. b) bullying
22. a) performed
23. c) they deal with it strictly
24. d) Bullying as a Social Disease
25. c) are not trained
26. b) depression

27. Translate into English:

You must do your best to benefit yourself and your country. Hard work and diligence are the only way to succeed in life.

28. Translate into Arabic:

إن السياحة ضرورية جدًا لمصر لأنها تخلق فرص عمل وتجلب العملة الصعبة للبلد؛ لذلك يجب أن نتعاون جميعا لتنميتها.

29. Student's own answer.



Final Test 6

Choose Two of the Five options:

1. b) presented / e) gave
2. a) denied / d) concealed

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. c) doing
4. d) Adults
5. c) cried
6. d) click
7. c) environmentally
8. d) owed
9. b) During
10. b) replacement
11. d) is going
12. a) much
13. c) making
14. d) already
15. b) starts
16. d) sleeping

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. c) obtain
18. a) it gives us experience and making a living
19. b) lived in organised societies
20. c) plant
21. b) invent agricultural tools
22. b) man has extraordinary abilities
23. b) Conditions create inventions
24. a) manage
25. b) the education led to this
26. c) Man made wars which destroyed the planet

27. Translate into English:

When you make a promise, you shouldn't break it, don't say nothing but truth, don't afraid to say the truth and don't praise someone for just praise.

28. Translate into Arabic:

عندما تعطى شخصًا تعليمًا قيمًا فأنت لا تنعش الأمة فقط، بل أيضًا تساعده على التفكير والإبداع ليكون مواطنًا صالحًا.

29. Student's own answer.

Final Test 7

Choose Two of the Five options:

1. c) stylish / e) cool
2. a) ambiguous / d) complicated

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. c) diversity
4. b) am going to buy
5. d) debt
6. a) populated
7. b) that he read
8. b) beliefs
9. b) has learnt
10. b) guardian
11. b) cultural
12. c) tell
13. c) storyteller
14. d) no article
15. b) been to
16. b) an

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) scared
18. a) enjoyed
19. c) Sally's brother.
20. b) turned on the lights
21. a) couldn't stop
22. a) had been outside
23. a) were asleep
24. b) Scary Tales Effects
25. c) A short story
26. c) find out

27. **Translate into English:**
Reading is a means to develop culture and getting knowledge in spare time and doing sport helps to keep fit and renew energy.

28. **Translate into Arabic:**
إن بناء المواطنين الصالحين وخلق مجتمع مبدع هى الأهداف الأساسية للتعليم وهذا سيعلمهم الاعتماد على النفس.

29. **Student's own answer.**

Final Test 8

Choose Two of the Five options:

1. c) tame / d) domestic
2. b) hike / e) journey

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. b) ecotourist
4. b) Phishing
5. c) poet
6. a) checked
7. c) monitor
8. b) posting
9. c) was sleeping
10. b) Does
11. d) was
12. d) much
13. c) will be
14. d) meeting
15. a) is
16. c) visited

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. c) allows ultraviolet rays to come down to earth and cause human suffering
18. c) come down to earth because they do not break down easily in the atmosphere
19. b) chest ailments and other diseases
20. b) Toxic air-pollution
21. b) One third
22. b) it prevents the harmful rays from reaching the earth
23. b) factories discharge dangerous substances
24. b) the pollution will disappear
25. a) healthy
26. b) want to solve the problem

27. **Translate into English:**
The Egyptian woman has played a vital role in improving society and developing the Egyptian economy through her interest in her family and job at the same time.

28. **Translate into Arabic:**

استضافت مصر كأس الأمم الإفريقية الأخيرة عام ٢٠١٩ وفاز الفريق الجزائرى بالكأس للمرة الثانية.

29. **Student's own answer.**

Final Test 9

Choose Two of the Five options:

1. a) minor / b) trivial
2. b) unusual / c) unconventional

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. b) download
4. c) The plane
5. c) destination
6. d) Since
7. a) was
8. a) scar
9. c) While
10. c) magistrate
11. b) making
12. b) hack
13. c) cheat
14. d) will be
15. a) jogging
16. c) yet

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) predator
18. b) dangerous
19. a) smart
20. d) can change their skin colour
21. a) distract the predator
22. a) defend themselves
23. b) helps it hide from the attackers
24. b) however, they have other ways to keep enemies away
25. a) The Magician Octopuses
26. c) renew its arms

27. Translate into English:

The Egyptian Olympic football team won the African Nation Cup and pleased a lot of Egyptians and we congratulate our dear Egypt from the bottom of our hearts.

28. Translate into Arabic:

بلا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقرى للتقدم العلمى وبدون المعلمين سيعانى الناس من ظلام الجهل.

29. Student's own answer.



Final Test 10

Choose Two of the Five options:

1. **c)** obligatory / **d)** compulsory
2. **a)** praise / **d)** appreciate

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. **d)** interest
4. **a)** a
5. **c)** stuck
6. **c)** doing
7. **b)** granted
8. **b)** click
9. **d)** not studying
10. **b)** usually polite
11. **c)** pressure
12. **c)** is brought
13. **c)** For
14. **d)** for
15. **b)** Lots of
16. **d)** will break

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** An email
18. **d)** Reda
19. **b)** liked his appearance
20. **c)** modern
21. **b)** vast
22. **b)** The writer is not going to work
23. **c)** careless
24. **c)** 75 pounds
25. **c)** his photos
26. **c)** His mum paid for him when he reached home

27. Translate into English:

Ecotourism is considered a direct source of national income in Egypt as Egypt has more and more isolated natural places that tourists desire to visit.

28. Translate into Arabic:

يقضى بعض الشباب الكثير من وقتهم على الإنترنت هذه الأيام ولا يدرون المخاطر الكامنة هناك. فهم عرضة للعديد من أنواع الجرائم.

29. Student's own answer.